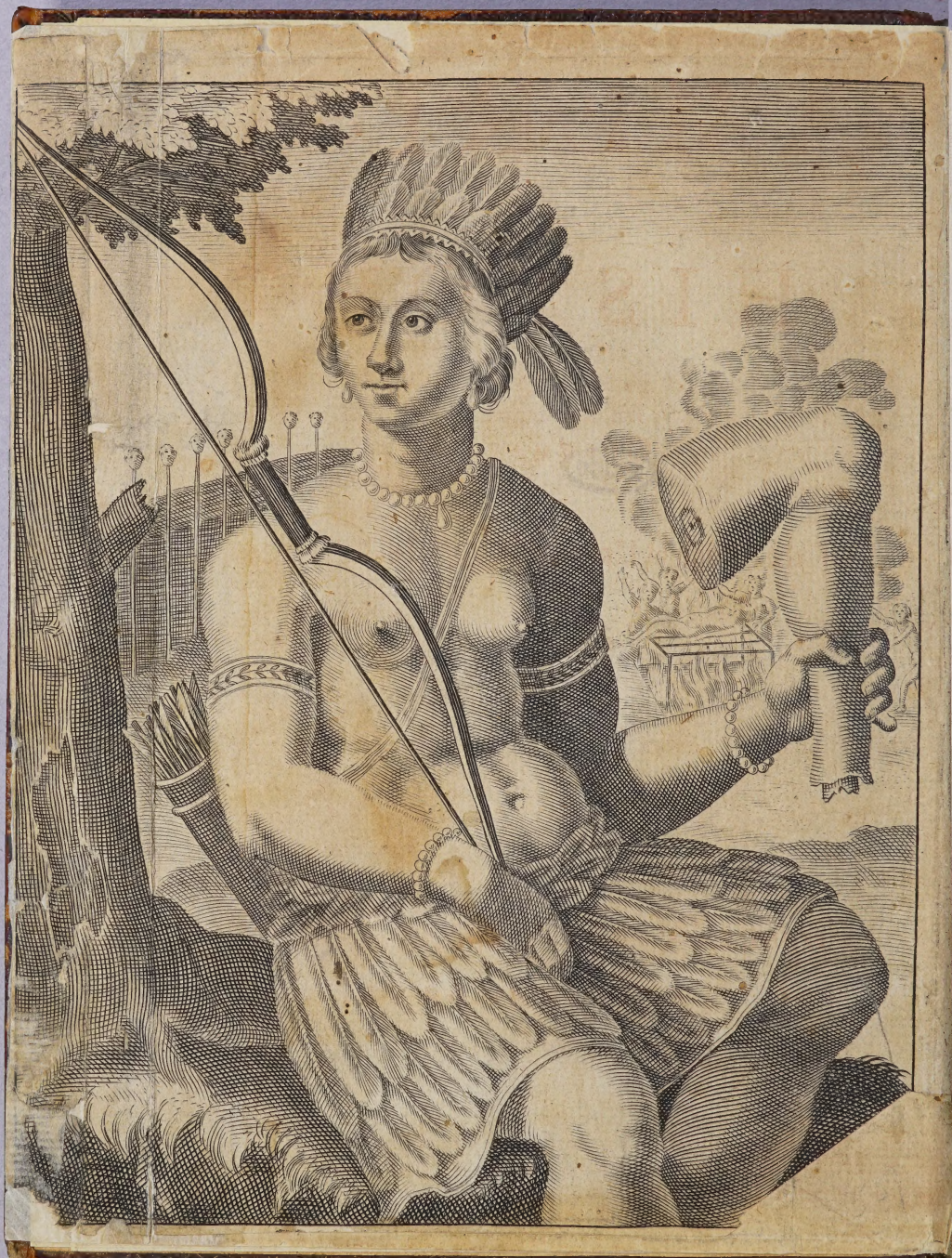
AMERICA.

T'is I, in tempting diuers, for to try
By sundry meanes, t'obtaine me, caus'de them dye
And, last discouer'd, vndiscouer'd am:
For, men, to treade my Soyle, as yet, are lame.



AMERICA

Painted to the Life.

THE TRUE

HISTORY

OF

The Spaniards Proceedings in the Conquests of the *INDIANS*, and of their Civil Wars among themselves, from COLUMBUS his first Discovery, to these later Times.

AS ALSO,

Of the Original Undertakings of the Advancement of Plantations into those parts;

With a perfect Relation of our English Discoveries, shewing their Beginning, Progress and Continuance, from the Year 1628. to 1658. Declaring the Forms of their Government, Policies, Religions, Maners, Customs, Military Discipline, Wars with the *Indians*, the Commodities of their Countries, a Description of their Towns and Havens, the Increase of their Trading, with the Names of their Governors and Magistrates.

More especially, an absolute *Narrative* of the North parts of *America*, and of the Discoveries and Plantations of our English in

Virginia, New-England, and Berbadoes.

Publisht by FERDINANDO GORGES, Esq;

A Work now at last exposed for the publick good, to stir up the Heroick and Active Spirits of these times, to benefit their Countrey, and Eternize their Names by such Honorable Attempts.

For the Readers clearer understanding of the Countreys, they are lively described in a compleat and exquisite Map.

Ovid. *Auri sacra fames quid non*——

London. Printed for Nath. Brook at the Angel in Cornhill. 1659.

To The JUDICIOUS READER.

I should have attempted but an imperfect design, ingenious Reader, in publishing this relation of my Grand-Father Sir Ferdinando Gorges (which was left unfinisht, in regard both the late Wars put a great stop, and afterwards his own death, an utter end, to those Noble and generous undertakings, of which he had laid so fair and hopefull a foundation) had I not my selfe supplied this defect, by adding both out of the choicest Authors as Davity, Jean de laet, Anthony Herrera, Oviedo; Francis Ximenes, Champlain Sparbot and others, by selecting from them that which was most materiall in each of them, as also from the relations, and discourse of those that have been Governours and Planters in those parts, as Mr. Edward Godfrey, Mr. Robert Gorges and others, a more exact and compleat account of that Country then hath been hitherto made publick, and particularly of the Province of Main, of which my Grand-Father was Lord and cheife Governour by a Patent from the late King, upon the description of which Province I have insisted the more largely, as well for that it hath not been particularly mention'd by others, as for the peculiar interest I my selfe have

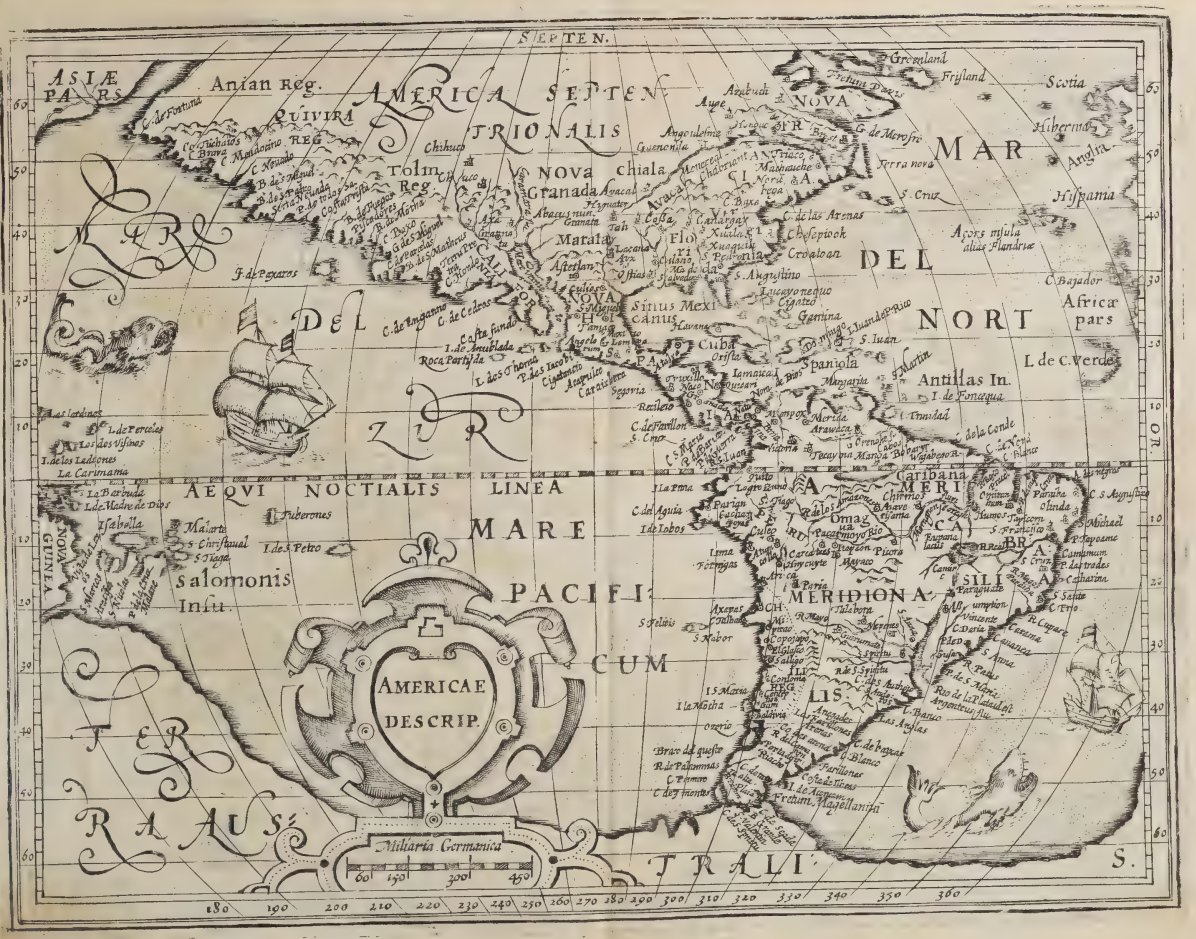
in it as legally descending to me by right of inheritance, nor do I doubt, though my just claim be unjustly opposed by those of the Matachusets Bay, *but when the matter comes to be decided by a legall hearing, it will be seriously pondred, with what indefatigable paines and vast charges, my* Grand-Father *undertook the promoting of this Plantation, notwithstanding the powerfull oppasition he met with both from the* Virginia Company, *and from the* French Embassadour *who laid a powerfull claime to that Country in the behalf of the* King *his Master; so that both law and equity require, that the heir should possess that which his ancestors have acquired with so much industry and hazard moreover the care, the vigilance, the losses the dangers of those that had the management of affaires since his death, have been such (as may appeare by the writings here with publish't, of Mr.* Edward Godfrey, *who was one of the cheifest of them, and whose long travail, experience and integrity render him a person truely capable of such like imployments) that our adversaries can take no advantag against us, through any default or miscarriage on our parts, but not to dwell any longer upon a matter which concernes my self only the consideration of what great honour and advantage to this nation our forrain Colonies and Plantations have been, is a matter of too great concernment to be past by all the Colonies that have been setled these latter ages, with how much the more perill and difficulty they have been performed(as what great attempt hath not danger following the heeles) then those ancients, so much the more glorious and advantagious they have been to the undertakers, at least to their Country in general, at the prosperity of which all generous spirits do aim. For if we look upon those ancient Colonies*

of

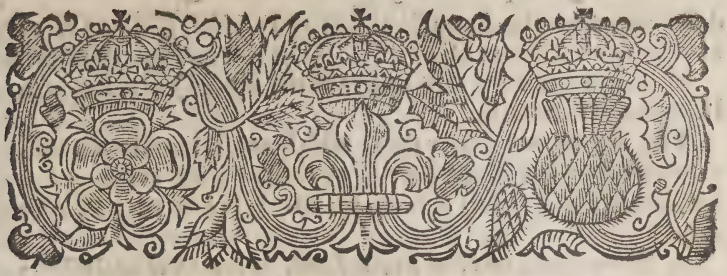
of Assyrians *in the reign of* Nimrod *their first monarch, into* Media, Scythia, Moscovia *and other parts, and afterwards into Germany under* Trebeta *the Son in law of* Ninus, *from whome as some say the City* Triers *first took its denomination, or of the* Lydians *under* Tyrrhenus *the Son of* Atys, *and brother of* Lydus *into that part of* Italy *which from his name was afterwards call'd* Tirrhenia, *or of the* Paphlagonians *and the* Heneti (*from whom the* Venetians *are said to deduce their original*) *into another part of* Italy *which lies upon the* Adriatick *Sea, it is no hard matter to conjecture, that as their journies however to places remote were yet free from any great inconveniences, for they had no enemies that we can heare of to hinder their passage having the wide world before them, to pick and choose where they pleased, no wide tempestuous Seas to imbark upon which if he who venters on never so little away, be said by* Iuvenall *to be only* digitis, a monte remotus, quatuor aut septem, *what hazard do they run that lanch forth into the wild vast ocean through unknown undiscovered, unfrequented waies, and if at last they chance to discover land and set foot on shore are for the most part afflicted with diseases or famin through the extremity of the climat or scarcity of provision, or exposed to the cruelty of the Barbarous Savages, as their passage I say was free from those difficulties that attend our long voyages by Sea, so their designe was onely to disembogue their numerous multitudes which before crouded and prest one another for want of room, into more spacious and convenient habitations, but those parts we possess in* America *as they were atcheived with much difficulty & the losse of many lives, so the purchace of them had nobler aims and conduced to a much greater and more universall profit, for*

in the discovering of them, we as it were restored a new portion of habitable Earth to the world which before was given for lost, and a ne plus ultra *fixed many hundreds of leagues on this side, we have also had the opportunity by these discoveries of spreading the Christian Religion, in the primitive purity thereof as it is by us professed at this day, into those remote parts which before never heard of it, thereby retriving those poor soules to the power of* God *from that bondage of* Satan, *and those clouds of darknesse wherein they were involv'd, as also by improving traffick and commerce by importing from thence commodities of a very great value, of the peculiar growth of those Countries, had we onely intended, the deducing of Colonies into such an Empire as half* Europe *and none except* Adams *to subsist of it self without any other, as they may do, any forrain parts of the known world, as how many vast portions of the Earth, and perhaps sufficiently fertile are there remaining to this day uninhabited; nay if we consider the vast extent of* China, *East India,* Tartary, the North parts of Asia, *called* Terra Polaris incognita *and how slenderly these parts of the Earth are known, it may be questioned whither as large discoveries may not be made by land as have been by Sea; had this I say been our utmost design, there are many Nations at this day so Barbarous & so ill appointed at arms, that even the conquest of them might have been performed with lesse expence of blood & treasure then these have been discovered. I have the more largely insisted upon the worthy actions of our ancestours, that all ingenuous persons of this age may be spurr'd on by their example; either to improve what they have so nobly begun, or to set on foot such enterprises as may be of equall Glory and profit, nor should I be the least forward, if once I perceive a unanimous consent in persons capable to undertake handsome things, to manifest my zeale to any design, that design that might tend to the Glory of* God *and Publick Welfare.*

Ferdinando Gorges.


SEPTEN.
ASIÆ PARS
Anian Reg.
AMERICA SEPTENTRIONALIS
QUIVIRA REG.
Tolm Reg.
NOVA Granada
chiala
Mataly
Flo RI DA
NOVA HISPANIA
Sinus Mexicanus
Cuba
Spaniola
Antillas In.
NOVA GRANADA
MAR DEL NORT
MAR DEL ZUR
AEQUI NOCTIALIS LINEA
MARE PACIFICUM
TERRA AUSTRALIS
Salomonis Insu
Caribana
AMERICA MERIDIONALIS
BRASILIA
Africæ pars
Scotia
Hibernia
Anglia
Hispania
Frisland
Greenland
Terra nova
Açores insula
AMERICAE DESCRIP.
Miliaria Germanica
60 150 300 450

in the a
bitable
plus ul
had the
Religio
this da
by retri
of Sata
also by
commo
Countr
an Emp
self wi
world, a
ly ferti
consider
parts o
these pa
large d
this I s
day so B
them m
sure the
sted upo
sons of
prove n
as may
if once
take ha
that m



A DESCRIPTION OF New-England.

Mr. Hartlib

BEfore I deſcend to the particular deſcription of *New-England*, I have thought it expedient to præmiſe ſomthing in generall, concerning the whole continent of *America*, both for the obſerving of a more exact Order and Method, and for that after the other parts are laid open to view, the deſcription of that one part will be the more delightfull and the eaſier to be conceived, and it will be the more plainly demonſtrable how it lies ſituated in reſpect of the reſt of the *New World*.

America is bounded on the Eaſt with the *Atlantick Ocean* called *Mar del Nort*; on the South, with the *Magellanic Iſlands* diſtinguiſh't by an interflowing Bay; on the Weſt, with the *Pacific Sea*, called alſo *Mar del Zur*, but the North part is yet ſcarcely known to the *Europæans*.

It is reputed to be in length between the ſtreights of *Anian* and *Magellan*, 2400. *German* Miles in breadth between *Cabo*

de Fortuna near the *Anian* Streights and *Cabo de Bretor* in *Nova Francia* 1300. *German* Miles.

It is (as the other three parts of the World) divided into Islands and continent.

The Islands are either those which are situated in the Sea, commonly called *Mar dell Nort*, or those which are found in in *Mar dell Zur*. The Chief Islands lying in *Mar dell Nort* are,

1. *Terra Nova* or *New-Found-Land*, lying over against the Gulfe of St. *Laurence*; it was first discovered by the *English*, and in the year 1583. Sir *Humphrey Gilbert* took possession of it for the King of *England*, and in the year, 1608. the *English* under the Command of *John Glay* of *Bristow*, built severall habitations upon it: it is a Mountanous and Wooddy Country of a healthfull Air and hath divers commodious Ports & Havens, it lies between the 46th. and 53d. degree of the *North Poles Altitude*; beyond this, is a little Island called by the *French*, *Isle de Sable* or *the Sandy Island*, and another on the West of *Terra Nova*, called *Isle de Bretons* or *the Island of* St. *Laurence*, besides severall little scattered Islands in the Gulfe of St. *Laurence*, as *Menego*, and *the three Islands of Birds*, in which are found a kinde of Amphibious *Animal*, called by the *French*, *Walrus*, by the *Russians*, *Morsh*, somewhat like a *Sea-Calf*, but more monstrous.

2. The next considerable Island which lyeth in the mouth of the River *Canada*, was first discovered by *Quartier*, and by him called *the Island of the Assumption*, by *John Alphonso*, *the Island of the Ascention*, by the Natives, *Natisscotec*; it extends it selfe from the 48th. to the 50th. degree between the South-East and North-West; *Quartier* makes mention of a strange kinde of Fish, found in the River of *Canada*, like unto a *Sea-Hogg*, but having the head of a *Hare*, it is called by the Natives *Adhothuys*.

3. The *Bermuda's* or *Summer Islands*, they are situated in 32. *degrees* and 25. *minutes* of Northern Latitude, some say they were so termed from a *Spanish Ship* called *Bermudas*, which was there cast away carrying *Black Hoggs* to the *West-Indies*, that swam a shoar and there increased: But the first *English Man* that was ever in them, was one *Henry May*, who in the year 1591. comming from *Spain* was cast away upon the

Smith's Travails,

the North-West of the *Bermudas*, they are remarkable for divers sorts of Plants unknown in other parts, as the *Prickle Pear*, the *Poyson-Weed*, the *Red-Weed*, the *Purging-Bean*, the *Costive-Tree*, *Red-Pepper*, the *Sea-Feather*, also several strange Birds, as the *Egge-Bird*, the *Cabow*, the *Tropick-Bird*, the *Pemlico*, which presageth stormes: Mr. *Richard More* was the first that planted a Colonie there in the year 1612. which was afterwards supply'd by divers others.

4. *Hispaniola* which was anciently called by the Natives *Aiti & Quisqueia*, it was first discovered by *Columbus* in his first navigation in the year 1497. and lyeth between the 18th. and 20th. degree of the North Poles Altitude, the Chiefe Town is called S. *Domingo*, but it hath many other considerable Towns and Villages, and great number of Sea-ports, Capes and Bays, *Diego de Arana* was first left Governour in this Island by *Columbus*, afterward *Nicholas de Obando*, who put to death in a most barbarous and cruell manner the *Cassique* or Governour of the Province of *Xaragna*, with his Sister *Anacoana*, the animals peculiar to this island are, 1. a little Beast called *Hutias* not much unlike our *Conies*, 2. *Chemi*, almost of the same form, but a little bigger, 3. *Mohuy*, a Beast somewhat lesse than the *Hutias*, 4. a Beast called *Coxi*; there is also a sort of Vermin called *Niguas* very hurtfull to Men, also a kinde of beetle called *Cucuyo*, whose eyes shine so cleer by night, that a Man may see to write or read by them, among fish, that which is called *Manati* is there of most esteem, the figure of which is to be seen in *J. de Laet*, the Plants and fruits it produceth are, 1. *Auzuba* a fair large Tree, the fruit whereof is called *Pinnas*, resembling a *Malecotoon*, of this Tree there are three sorts, *Jaima*, *Boniama*, *Jaiqua*, 2. *Quauconex*, 3. *Axi*, of which there are also several sorts, as *Carive*, *Huarabuac*, *Axiblanco*, *Acafran-Axi*, and *Axi coral*, 4. *Yuca*, the root of which serves in stead of Corn, 5. certain Trees called *Guaibes*.

5 The Island of St. *Jean Porto Rico*, anciently call'd *Boriquen*, it was discover'd by *Columbus*, in the year, 1493. It lies between the 18th and 19th degree of the *North Poles elevation*, the trees peculiar to this Island are, 1 *Tabernaculo*, or *Taborucu*, 2 *Maga*, 3 that which is call'd the Holy tree, 4 the tree called *Higillo Pintado*, 5 a tree called by the natives

Guao, by the *Mexicans Thetlatian*, 6 *Macanillo* being hurtful to men and beasts, there is also a Poisonous herb called *Quibei*. This Island was first inhabited by the Spaniards in the year 1510, under the command of *Jean Ponce de Leon*, afterwards *Baldwin Henry Burgemaster* of *Edam* and Generall to the *East-India* Company of the United Provinces attempted to take it but was beaten back.

6 *Cuba* about 10 leagues distant from the continent of *America*, it was first conquered by *Diego Velasquo* by the meanes of *Gassique Hatuey* a *Fngitive* of *Hispaniola*, who notwithstanding was burnt a live, the trees which grow in this Island different from those of other Countrys are *Xagua* and *Caninga*, here is also the Bird *Flamengo*, and another sort of Birds called *Bambyayas*: there are likewise in this Island Trotoises of that vast bignesse, that one of them is able to bear five men upon its shell, the principall town of this Island is call'd *Havana*.

7 *Jamaica* situated according to *Herrera*, and *Oviedo* between the 17 th and 18 th degree of the *North-poles elevation*, the chief towns are called *Sevill* and *Oristan*, in the year 1591. It was conquered by the *English* under the command of Sir *Anthony Sherly*, but they held it not long ere they forsook it of their own accord, yet at this present it is again possessed by us.

8 On the *North* of *Hispaniola*, and *Cuba* there are a number of little *Islands* called *Lucayes* every one of which are by name particularly described by *John de Leat*.

9 On the *East-side* of St. *Jean Porto Rico* lye the Islands called *Canibales* or *Caribes*, which are also severally named by the above mentioned Author, * the last of which toward the *East* called *Barbados* or *Barbudos*, was possest by a Colony of *English-men*, in the year 1627. The people of these Islands have been reported to feed upon mans flesh, whence the Islands were named *Canibales* bnt they are called by some *Antillæ* or *Camarcanæ*.

* as *Santta Crux Virgin Gorda, Blances, Anagada, Sombrito, &c.*

10 *Margarita*, or the Island of Pearls it lieth eleven degrees Northward from the line, and was discovered by *Columbus* in the yeare 1498. in his third voyage to *America*.

11 Between the Island of *Margarita* and the firm land of *America* is a little Island call'd *Cubagua*, which produceth a very strange kind of thistle described by *Charles de Peclufe* in

in his book of *Exotiques*, and in some places there issueth out oft he Earth a certain Aromatic liquor floting upon the top of the water much used in Physick.

12 About 4 leagues distant from *Cubagua*, there is an Island called *Coche* lesse then the former, it was discovered in the year 1529. these three last Islands are considerable by reason of the great fishing for Pearle which is there used.

13 About 8 degrees Northward or there about distant from the line lyeth an Island called by the Spaniards *La Trinidad*, where Sir *Water Rawleigh* in the year 1595. sometimes lay at Anchor, the inhabitants are called by one common name *Cairi* or *Carai*.

14 About 7 or 8 leagues *Eastward* distant fro the Isle of *Trinidad* lyeth the Island heretofore called *Tabago*, now new *Walachia*, it is 11 degrees and 16 scruples *Northward* from the line. It produceth the trees call'd *Bannanes* and *Papaia*, with severall other strange sorts whose figures and descriptions are to be seen in *John de Laet*, but the names of them are not mentioned among Plants that is in chief esteem, which we call *Slijptongen*, there is a sort of Beasts here called *Pacquires*, somewhat like to a Hog, but having the Navel on the top of the Back.

There are severall other small Islands as *Martins Vinyard*, *Long Island*, *Angola*, *St. Martins Eustas*, *St. Christophers*, *Nivis*, *Monserat*, *Antego*, *Dominica*, *Sant alusa Desiada*, *Matinina*, *Dolos*, *Sanctos*, *&c.* But these are not considerable to afford matter of discourse in so short a survay as this.

The Islands of the South sea, otherwise called the *Pacifique* Sea or *Mar dell Zar* are,

1 The *Magellanique* Islands anciently taken for the continent, but they are divided from it by the straights of *Magellan*, and the straights *Le Maire*, however *De Leat*, makes no mention of the *Magellanic* Islands, but onely of the Province of *Magellan*.

2 *Terra del fuego*, so called from the frequent flashes of fire and aboundance of smoak appearing to the first discoevrers thereof, it is also called *Terre Australe* or the Southern Land, and is devided by certain chanells into a great many of little small Islands, as *De Leat* affirmes, but it remaines yet so undiscovered that it cannot be certainly affirm'd either continent or Islands.

3 About 38 degrees and some odde scruples Southward from the line, lyeth the Island of *Mocha*, some of our English, as Sir *Francis Drake* and *Thomas Candish* have had commerce with the Natives, but had not so good usage among them as *Oliver de Noort*, and *George Spilbergu*, Low-Country men.

4 The Islands of *Jean Fernandez*, by whom they were first discovered called *Jsola de Fuera*, and *Jsola de Tierra*, and lying about 33 degrees and 48 scruples Southward from the line, also *Bartholomeo Leonardo de Argensola* of *Jean Fernandez*, which are at this present St. *Felix*, and St. *Ambor*, but they cannot be the same with them now mentioned, for as much as these ly not above 25 degrees and 20 scruples Southward from the line.

5 There is one of the townes belonging to the Government of *Chile*, which is also an Island called *L'Isle de St. Marie*, which as saith *Piedro de Cieca* was formerly named by the *Salvages Lucengo*, in this Island there are a sort of *Crevices* called *Choros*, in whose heads there are found Pearles of the bignesse of hempseed.

6 The Island of *Maragnan*, of which see more in the description of *Brasile*.

Thus much of the *American* Islands the continent is divided into the Northpart and Southpart of *America*, the Southpart is either that which lyeth toward *Mar del Nort*, *the North Sea*, or toward *Mar del Zur*, 1. *The South Sea*, that part which lies toward the South Sea, is called by the *Spaniards Peruana* and *Tierra Firma*, and is devided into these following Provinces.

1 *Castilla del Oro*, or Golden *Castile*, and by some *Panama*, which is the more modern name, it is in length between *Cartagena*, and the Castle of *Veragua* about 90 leagues, it produceth the herbs called *Cabuia* and *Henechen* or *Nequen* described by *Oviedo* of both these herbs the Salvages use to make cordage for nets and other things the chief towns are *Nombre de Dios*, the town of *Panama*, *Porto Belo*, the town St. *Philippe*, and St. *Jago de Nata*, all particularly described by *Juan Baptista Antonelly* the chief River of this province is called by the Salvages *Chagre*, by the *Spaniards Rio de Lagartos*.

2 On the right side of the Gulf of *Uraba* lyeth the Province

vince of *Darien* so called from a River of the same name, among the fruit trees of this province the cheif are *Gomara Mameya*, *Guanabo*, *Hovo* or *Horio*, and *Guyava*, the descriptions of which are to be seen in *de Laet*, *Monardes*, and *Gomara*.

3. *Cartagena* being in length from the great River of *Magdalene*, to the Gulf *Uraba*, and the River *Darien* 24 *leagues the chief Citys are Cartage* or *Cartagena* from whence the whole province derives its name, it was built in the yeare 1532. by *Pedro Heredia* who was the first that subdued the Salvages of these parts, but it was afterwards taken by the English under the command of Sir *Francis Drake*, *Tolu* whence there used to be brought a most excellent sort of Balm, St. *Cruz de mopax*, and *Baranca de Malambo*.

4. *Sancta Martha*, which is in length from *Cartagena* to the River of *La Hacha* toward the East 70. Leagues, the Chief City is of the same name with the Province, the other Towns are *Teneriffe Tamalamá*, called by the *Spaniards*, *Villa de las Palmas*, *Cividad de los Reyes*, where the fruit called *Xaguas*, of which they make bread, and the Herb *Scorzonera* abound, *Ocanna & la Ramada*, about 30. Leagues from St. *Martha*, lies the Town and Government of *Rio de la Hacha*, anciently called by the *Spaniards*, *Nostra Sennora de la Nieves*.

5 *Nova Granada*, or *the New Kingdome of Granada*, 130. Leagues in length, and bordered on the East with the Government of *Venezuela*, on the North with that of St. *Martha*; it was first discovered and conquered in the year 1536. by *Gonsalvo Ximenes de Quesada* Lievetenant to *Ferdinand de Lugo* Generall of the *Canarie* Islands, about which time also came *Sebastian de Belalcazar* and *Nicholas Vredeman* into those parts, the Chief City is St. *Fe de Bogota*, the rest are the Town of St. *Michael*, *Tocayana* and *Tunia*, there are bordering upon *Granada* the Provinces *Mulos* and *Celymas* in which are the City of *Trinidad*, and the village of *Palma*, among the Trees of these Provinces are *Quaoque*, *Lariuros Guaiac*, *Xagua*, *Hobo* and *Aguapa*, there are also certain beasts called *Guatinaias* somewhat resembling our *Hares*.

6. *Popayan* about 130 leagues in length, between the Province of *Quito* and the Government of *Cartagene*, one of the Discoverers and Governours of these parts was *Pizarro*, after him

Sebastian

Sebastian de Belalcazar, the Metropolis or chief City of this Province is of the same name with the Province it selfe, the rest are called *Antiochia*, *Caramanto*, *Anzerma*, S. *Juan de Palto*, *Guadajara de Buga*, S. *Sebastian de Plata*, S. *Juvan de Truxillo*, called by the Savages *Yscance*, the City of *Madrigal* called by the *Indians Chiapancia*, *Agreda* otherwise called *Malaga*.

7 *Peru* which is in length from the Province of *Quinto* under the line, to that of *Chili*, near the Tropic of *Capricorn* 600. Leagues, there are two sorts of Puls in this Province, the one called *Purutu* the other *Chuy*, among their Plants are *Papas*, *Oca* and *Annus*, the roots of which serve instead of *Mayz* to make bread with, there is a Plant called *Coca* or *Cuca*, described by *Monard*, *Blaire*, *Valera* and *Garcilasso*, being of that great vertue that under the Empire of the *Ingas* it was not permitted to any to use it without license from the King or his Officers : the Flowr called *Cresses* of *Peru* hath been long since brought over, and made to grow in these parts, the *Indians* call it *Mexixguilitt & Petor Chilli*, there is also an Herb called *Matecllu* of great vertue for the eyes, anong their fruits the chief are *Rucma*, *Chacos*, *Mulli*, *Leucoma*, & a fruit call'd by the natives *Manior Blanco*, among the Beasts of *Peru* the chief are *Pacollama*, *Huanacullama*, *Pacos*, *Vicunnas* and *Tarugas*, among Birds *Nunnuma*, *Quenti* called by the *Spaniards Tominejos*, *Suyuntu*, *&c.* and of Fishes one which the *Indians* call *Challna*. This Province is divided into three Parlaments as they are called, the first is *Quito* having a Metropolis of the same name, the other townes are *Rhiobamba*, *Cuenza*, St. *Jacob de Guayaquil*, the stately Pallace of *Thome bamba*, *Zamorre*, *&c.* The second is *Lima* or *Los Reyes* so called from its chief City, being of the same name, the rest are miraflores, St. *Juan de la Frottera*, S. *Jago de los valles*, S. *Francisco de la Vittoria*, S. *Mignel de la Ribera Castrovi reina*, *I. Juan dell Ora &c.* The third is called *Charcas*, *whose Chiefe townes are La Plata*, *Potosi*, *and Arica*.

8 The Government of *Chile* extending in length between the vally of *Copiapo* and the mouth of the straights about 500 leagues, there is in this part of *America*, a little Beast called *Chincilla* much esteemed for its skin, of fruit trees that which is most Peculiar to this Country is termed by the

Natives

Natives *Nuni*, by the Spaniards *Martilla*; the chief Towns are *La Serena*, *Conception*, *Imperiale*, *Villa nueva de los Infantes*, *Valdivia*, *&c.*

The South part of *America* which lyeth toward the North-Sea, is divided into these Provinces.

1 The Province of *Magellan* which some call the *Magellanic Islands*, although by the Maps it doth not appear to be any other than continent, it extendeth it selfe from the Government of *Chile* being the 44th. degree of the Antartick Poles Elevation, as far as the Streights of *Magellan*, being in the 53d. degree of the same Elevation; the first of the Spaniards that sailed through these Streights, was Captain *Ladrillero* at the command of *Garcias Mendosa*, next him *Pedro Sarmiento* sent by *Don Francisco de Toledo*, *Viceroy* of *Peru*, but Sr. *Fr. Drake* had past them before into the South-Sea, and after him *Candish* and *Hawkins*, and in the yeare 1598. the *Dutch* began their Navigation through them, under *James Mahu* and *Simon de Cordes*, the next year under *Sebald de Weert*; in these parts they found a certain sort of Birds called *Penguin*. *Sarmiento* was the first that perswaded *Phillip* the second to fortifie the passages of the Streights, to which end *Diego Flores de Valdes* was sent, who placed a Colony thereabout; a good way more southerly are the Streights of *Le Mair*, so called because they were discovered in the year 1615. by *Isaac Le Maire* of *Antwerp*, accompanied with his Son *James*, and *William Cornelius Schoute*.

2 The Province of *Rio de la Plata*, so called from a great River of that name first discovered in the year 1525. by *Juan Dias de Selis*, afterward *Sebastian Cabo* sailed a great way up into the River, in the year 1525. *Diego Garsias a Portughes* follow'd the same trace, lastly *Pedro de Mendosa* and his Lievtenant *Juan de Ayola* discovered many more places thereabout, in the year of *Christ* 1608. *Alvaro Nunnez Cabeca de Vaca* was sent chiefe Governour in these parts for the King of *Spain*, the Metropolis of this Province is called *Nustra Sennora del Assumption*, the other chiefe Towns are *Nustra Sennore de Bnenos Ayres*, *Ontiveras* called by the *Indians Guayra*, S. *Salvador &c.* to this Province are adjacent two

 others

others of lesse note, *Tic man* and S. *Cruz de la sierra.*

3 The Province of *Brasil*, the Longitude of it is between the 29th. and 39th. degree, it was first discovered for the King of *Spain* by *Vincent Jannez Pincon*, and next by *Diego Lepe* in the year of Christ 1500. afterwards for the King of *Portugall* by *Cabral*, it being possessed to this day by the *Portugheses*, among the Beasts peculiar to this Province are *Pacas*, *Agoutis*, *Pagues*, *Caragues*, but two more strange than the rest, one called *Tatu* by the Natives, *Armadillo* by the Spaniards, *Encubertado* by the *Portugheses* being covered almost all over with scales, there are also severall sorts of Serpents, as *Giboya*, *Guirarupiagoara*, *Boytimapua*, *Guaytiepua*, *Boycupecanga*, here is also a sort of Insects mentioned by *De Lery* called *Tonga*, which seemes to be the same with *Nigua* before mentioned, among Birds the chief are some sorts of *Perroquets*, as *Araras*, *Mocaos*, also those little Birds called by the Natives *Guainomby*, by the Spaniards *Tominejos*, the *Guiranbeangeta*, the *Guirapanga*, with divers others mentioned by *De Laet*, *Thevet de Lery* and *Johnstonius* in his History of Birds, among their Fruit Trees *Acaious*, *Ombu*, *Jacapucaya*, *Araticupana*, *Japuticaba*, *Pequea* of two kindes, they have also fruits called *Murucuges*, *Aracas*, the Coco of which they make Chocolate, the Trees called *Guaberiba*, *Cupayba*, *Ambayba*, *Ambaitinga*, *Igbucamici*, *Ibirapitanga*, *Ayri* whose Trunc is all over beset with Prickles *Vbebebasou Penoabsou*, *&c.* also certain Shrubs as *Hivourae*, *Choine*, *Pocoaire*, among their Herbs & smaller Shrubs, the chief are *Mandioca*, of whose root they use to make bread, *Nana*, *Pacobe*, or the Fig of *Adam*, *Murucuca Manmaras*, *Iticucu*, resembling Mechoacan, *Igpecaya*, *&c.* there hath been found moreover in this Country a monstrous kinde of Spider of an extraordinary bulk of body, and having 4 joynts in every legge besides that which joynes the legges to the body, among the Fishes taken upon this coast the chief are *Camurupi*, *Piraembu*, *Warakapemme* which the Portugalls call *Dorada*, *Jerepemonga*, *Vbirre* which some call *Mucu*, *Awabkattoe*, *Pira utoewab*, *Panapana*, with divers others of very strange formes, of which you may see more in *Rondeletius*, *Aldrovandus* and other

other Authors that have writ of this subject. *Brasil* is divided into severall Governments called by the *Portugheses Capitanias*, as S. *Vincent*, *Rio Jennero*, *Spiritu sancto*, *Porto Seguro*, *Pernambuco*, *Paraiba*, *Rio Grande*, *&c.* the chief Cities of this Province are S. *Vincent*, S *Sebastian*, the town of *Spiritu sancto*, S. *Amaro*, *Glinda*, the town of *Paraiba* or *Philippi*, *Potengi siara*, *&c.*

There is also an Island belonging to the Province of *Brasil*, called *Maragnan*, which produceth several sorts of strange Plants, as the trees called *Bannanna*, *Ovaieroua*, *Janipaba*, *Acoutitreva Touconuue*, *Caranauue*, *Copouich-ouessou*, *Copouichaieup*, *Yacaranda*, *&c.* Also these herbs, *Anana*, *Carouata*, *Yrammacatu*, *Commandaou-ssou*, *Taya-ouassou*. The cheife birds peculiar to this Island are *Ouyra-ouassou*, *Ouvirata-oviran*, *Moiton*, *Toucan* and others, the rivers of *Maragnan* afford great store of fish, as the *Camauroupni*, *Ouatoucoupon Cambouriouassou*, *Tinmon ouassou*, and others; there are also bred here severall sorts of strange beasts, the cheife whereof are called Tamandoua, Janouara, Souassou-varan, Unan a creature of a monstrous shape whose figure is described by *Charles de L'Ecluse*, the chiefe Towns of this Island are Timpohu, Jtaparij, Carnoupiop, Euayne, Jraenclave, Arosove-leuve.

4 *Guaiana*, which lyeth at the most within 2 or 3 degrees of the line, and hath been termed by some *Le* province *del Orado*, it is said to have been discovered by *Francisco de Orellana* and afterwards in the year, 1560. was visited by *Pedro de Orsua*, it is divided into 3 parts. 1. *Rio de las Amazones*. 2. *Guiana* properly so called, or *Rio de Wiapoco*. 3. *Voronoque*, whose cheife Towns are *S. Thomas* and *Manoa* the plants peculiar to this Country are Ademonie Totock, a tree whose fruit incites very much to *Venus*: Anoto, Colliman, Barratta, Pira Timinere, or Letter-hout, their chiefe Birds are *Ouakare Rapanne*, Covaka, of their fish the chiefe Accaren & Aymaren, of their beasts Maypuries, Baremo, Abi-hera and Waricarij, the first Englishman that made an expedition into these parts was Sir *Water Rawleigh* in the yeare 1595. and the year after Captain *Laurence Keimes*, and *Thomas Marsham*.

5 The province of *Nova Andalusia* otherwise called *Cumana*

lying over against the famous cape called *Punta de Araja* where the renowned Salt pits are; it is divided into *Andaluzia* properly so called (which containeth the Cityes *Cumana or* new *Corduba* and Comanagotta) and Venezuela whose chiefe City is Coro, the rest Nostra Sennora de Carvalleda Nova Valentia, Tucago, and Laguna, about the Government of this province there was a very high dispute between *Hieronymo de Ort. l*, and *Antonio Sedenno*, but *Venezuela* is thought to have been first discovered by the Germans, Ambrose Alfinger, *Hierome* Sailer and *George Eviger* managing affaires in behalfe of Velsers de Auspurg to whom *Charles* the 5 th ingaged that Province, on the utmost borders toward the East is a great lake called the lake of *Maracapana*, there is also another lake called *Maracaybo* 24 leagues in *Circuit*.

The North part of *America* usually call'd *Mexicana* is also divided into that part which lieth toward *Mar del Nort* or the North Sea, and that which lieth toward *Mar del Zur* or the South Sea.

That part of Northern *America* which lieth toward *Mar del Zur*, or the South Sea, is distinguished into these Provinces.

1 *Nova Gallicia* which is subdivided into other lesser Provinces, as First *Guadalajara*, so called from its Capitall City of the same name built by *Nunno de Gusman* the two other principall towns being called *Villa del Espiritu Sancto*, and *Sancta Maria de Los Lagos*. Second *Xalisco* whose chiefe City is called *Compostelle* built by the same *Nunno*. Third *Chiametla* into which *Francisco de Ybarra* first brought a Colonie of *Spaniards* which he named St. *Sebastian*. Fourth *Culvacan* which was first discovered and subjugated in the year 1531. by *Nunno de Gusman* who built a City in it called St. *Miguel* upon the river *de Los Mugeres*. Fifth *Cinaloa*. Sixth *Los Zacatecas* where the rich mines of *Avinno* were discovered by *Francis de Ybarra* in the veare, 1554. *Lewis de Velasco* being *Viceroy*.

2 *Nova Biscaja* having also in it very rich Mines, this Province was likewise discovered by *Francis de Ybarra* there borders upon it another little Province called *Topia* the chiefe townes of it are S. *Joannes*, *S. Barbara*, and *Ende* where the Silver Mines are.

3 *California*

3 *California* which extends it selfe from New Spaine and *Galicia* West-ward, as far as the Streights of *Anian*, though it be represented an Island in some old Map, yet *J. de Laet* makes a Question whether it be Island or Continent, it began first to be discovered in the year 1534 by *Hernando Cortes*, afterwards *Francisco de Ulloa* * sailed into the Gulfe of *California*, but returned back without doing any great matter.

* *Hernando de Alarcon & Juan Rodrigue Cabrillo.*

4 *Cibola* into which there were expeditions made by severall, as *Frier Marc de Niza*, *Francisco Vazquio de Cornado*, and others.

5 *Quivira*, into which severall expeditions were made by *Fr. Vasquio*, *Garcias Lopes de Cardenas*, *Fr. de Benavides*, *J. de Padilla* and others.

6 *Nova Albion*, which was first discovered by Sr. *Fr. Drake* in the Voyage which he made about the Earth.

7 *Nova Mexico*, into which *Augustin Ruiz* a Monk went first to preach the Gospell, afterwards *Antonio de Espejo* made an expedition into those parts, and discovered severall Countries thereabout.

The north part of *America* which lyeth toward the North Sea, is divided into these Provinces.

1 *Guatimala* subdivided into 13 lesser Provinces, whereof the chief are, *Guatimala* specially so called, and by the Indians *Quatuemallac*, in which there growes a little Tree called *Xiouiquilitt Pitzabuac*, whose leaves are of an excellent blew colour; *Chiapa* in which is the City of *Cividad Real*; *Honduras* in which *Christopher Olid*, *Pedro de Alvarado*, and several other Spanish Captaines made expeditions at the appointment of *Hernando Cortes* by whom most of these parts were first discoverd, the chief towns of *Honduras* are *Valladolid*, *Gratias a Dios*, and S. *Pedro*: *Soconusco*; *Verapaz*, in which there is plenty of *Liquid amber*, *Anime*, and *Xuchicopal*; *Nicaragua* which produceth a tree called by the Natives *Canochitli*, by the Spaniards *Arbol de Soldaduras*, because the leaves of it applyed to broken bones quickly soder them up again, the chief towns are *Leon de Nicaragua*, *Granada*, *Sigovia*, *Jaen*, *Costa Rica*, whose chief towns are *Aranjuez*, *Cartego*, and

Castro d'Austria, Veragua first discovered in the year 1511 by *Christopher Columbus*, the chief towns are *la Conception, la Trinidad*, S. *Fe*, and *Carlos*

2 *Mexico* so called from the chief City, being of the same name, but termed by the Inhabitants *Tenoxitla* or *Tenuchtitla* and is distant from the line Northward about 20 degrees and some od minutes, being situated in the mid'st of a great lake, which is 8 leagues long and 5 broad, * there are adjoyning to *Mexico* other lesser Provinces, as *Acapulco*, having in it a Town and Port of the same name, *Panuco*, containing 3 chief Towns or Spanish Colonies, S. *Stevan del Puerto*, S. *Jago de los valles*, S. *Lodovic de Tampice*, *Tlascal*, the Metropolitan of which is called *Puebla de los Angeles*, the other chief town is of the same name with the Province, there is here produced great plenty of *Cochinille* and *Liquidamber*, *Tepeaca* where *Cortez* built a City called *Segura de la Frontera*, there is found in this Province a miraculous little Bird called *Huitzitzil*, of which see *Ximenes*, *Eduse*, *Johnson*'s History of Birds and others ; *Guaxaca*, whose chief Towns are *Antequera*, S. *Illisonso de los Zapotecas &c.* there is here produced a certain Shrub called *Huitzpacotl*, of great vertue in Phisick, mentioned by *Charles l'Eduse Ximenes* and others ; *Mechoacan* whose chief Cities are *Valladolid* called by the natives *Guayangaero*, S. *Michael*, S. *Philippe*, *Conception de Salaya*, there are here produced severall sorts of Plants, as the shrubs *Maripenda*, *Charapeti*, and the 4 sorts of *Xechicopalli*, mentioned by *Ximenes* and others ; the Herbs *Curnizeti*, *Acuitzechuarita*, *Tlalamaltl*, the animals peculiar to this Province, are the Beasts called *Theotlalmazames*, in which is found the *Bezoar* Stone, *Adibes*, and certain Birds called *Aures* ; *Yucatan a Peninsule* first discovered by *Fr. Hernandes de Corduba*, the chief Towns of it are *Merida*, *Valladolid*, *Campeche* and *Salmanca* ; *Tabasco* where the Spaniards have a Town called *Villa de Nustra sennora de la Vittoria*.

* This City after a long siege, was taken by *Hernando Cortez* a Spanish Captain in the time of *Montezuma*.

3 *Nova Hispania* the chief part of Northern *America* extending it selfe East-ward from *Jucatan* to *Mechoacan* 400 leagues in length, of this Country *Mexico* is reckoned a

part

part with the other Provinces above mentioned, it produceth excellent sorts of Gummes and Aromatique Liquors, most of which are commonly used by us in Medicines, also divers kindes of Fruit Trees, as *Achiotl*, by some called *Changuarica*, *Amicoztic*, *Quaubayohuatly*, *Quautlalatzin*, *Xalxocotl* called by the Spaniards *Guayabo*, *Mitzquitl &c*, the figures of many of them may be seen in *de Laet*, this Country above all others aboundeth with a number of admirable Flowres particularly those which grow upon a certain Tree called *Floripondio*, there is also another Tree called by the Natives *Xuchinacaztli* bearing a sort of flowre which the Spaniards call *Ilor de Oreja*, from the resemblance to an Ear, there are also certain Herbs whose Natures & Vertues are very considerable, as *Yeuinpatli* called by the Spaniards *Ceuadilla*, *Tlilxochitl*, *Chichimecapatli*, *Mecaxuchitl*; the famous Nut *Cocao* groweth here in great abundance, of which there are 4 sorts, *Cacahuaquahuitl*, *Xuchicacahuaquahuitl*, *Tlalcacahuaquahuitl*, and another sort of the same name and bignesse with the first, among divers sortsof Pretious Stones which this Country produceth, the 3 kinde of Jaspers of great value and vertue.

4 *Florida* being a hundred leagues in length from North to South, and lying over against the Island of *Cuba*, it was first discovered in the yeare, 1512. by *Juan Ponce de Leon*, afterwards several expeditions were successively made by the *Spaniards*, under divers great Captains as *Lucas Vasquez de Aion*, *Pamphile mervas Hernando a Sota*, *Luis de Moscoso de Alvarado* by the French under the conduct of *Jean Ribauld Rene de Laudoniere Dominique de Gurgues* and others; among their plants there is a tree, described at large by *Ximenes*, of whose leaves the *Indians* make an excellent drinke called *Cacine*, of their Herbs, there is one very much esteemed, which they call *Apoyomatly* or *Phatzistranda*, the two cheife fortified townes of this Province are St. *Augustin*, and St. *Matthieu*, this Province was discovered on *Palm-Sunday* which in Spanish is called *Pascua de Flores*, whence it took the name of *Florida*.

5 *Nova Francia* lying between to 40 th and 50 th degree of the Arctic-poles Altitude, to which on the North side belong

those

Eſtotiland Terra de Laborador, Terra Cortereales.

thoſe Countries that lye by the river Canad * together with Terra Nova and ſome other Iſlands already deſcribed in the North Seas, on the South ſide lies that province which is called Accadia, wherein is that famous *Pemptegout* which ſome think to be the ſame with *Norumbegue* the chieſe port towne is called portroyal, the firſt Colonie that was brought into the North part of Nova Francia by the French was under the command of James Quartier ſent by Francis the firſt in the yeare, 1534. afterwards in the yeare, 1603. Peter da Gua Lord of Monts brought another Colonie thither, and obtained the title of Viceroy, after him in the yeare 1606. *Pourtrin-court* made a voyage into the South part, but that part called Cadie came afterwards to have the title of new Scotland, and under that name was given by King James to *Sir* William Alexander.

6 Virginia or all that part of America which extends it ſelfe from Norumbegua to Charuvoc and which began firſt to be diſcovered by Jean Verazza-mao Florentine who was imployed by Francis the firſt, King of France, to diſcover the North parts of America; it containeth New-England new Netherlands, and Virginia it ſelfe commonly ſo called, this part was firſt diſcovered by *Sir* Walter Rawleigh and afterwards *Sir* Humphrey Gilbert in the yeare, 1583. having attempted a Plantation in ſome of thoſe parts and periſhing in the deſign, *Sir* Richard Greenvill about two yeares after took a voiage thither and Landed his men, but returning for England for ſupplies, when he came back thither again, he could heare no newes of the Colony he had left there, nor was it ever known what became of them, the like miſcarriage alſo hapned to thoſe men which were left at Hatorask by Mr. *Jo. White* in the yeare, 1687. The firſt Colony that took firm poſſeſſion in thoſe parts was ſetled there in the year 1606. under the conduct of Captaine Bartholmew Goſnol and Captain Chriſtopher Newport, yet they ſuffered many troubles and miſeries for a great while till at length in the yeare, 1609. they received ſtrong ſuplies out of England which came along with *Sir* Thomas Day, *Sir* Thomas Gates, Lord de la Ware and other eminent Perſons, and now divers parts of the

Country

Country are well peopled, and great profit is derived from the commodities which *Virginia* produceth, the chiefe of which are Pitch, Tarre, Soapashes, Rosen, Flax, Cordage Wainscot, Glasse, and such like; The fruits peculiar to this Country are Putchamines, which are a kind of Damesines; Messamines which are a kind of Grapes; Chechinquamins, a sort of fruit somewhat resembling Chesnuts; * Rawcomens somewhat resembling a Goosberry, there groweth also a Berry somewhat like unto Capers, which they call Ocoughtanamnis, they make their bread of a Plant called Mattowna, which groweth like our Bents, having a seed like Rie, there is also a kind of Strawberry called Moracock; Their roots are Tockawoughe, being very good to eate, Wichsacan of great vertue in the healing of wounds, Pocones which asswageth swellings and aches, Musquaspen wherewith they paint their mattes and targets, * they have in great request a sort of Pulse called Assentamen, here are also divers sorts of Beasts different from those of other Countrys, as Aroughcun resembling a Badger, Assapanick which we call a flying Squirrell, *Opassum* a certain Beast having a bagg under her belly, wherein she carrieth and suckleth her young, *Mussascus* which smelleth strong of musk, and resembleth a water Rat, *Utchunquois* a kind of wild Cat. In this Country there are five great Navigable Rivers, which descend toward the left hand, from that large gulfe found out by Captain *John Smith*, vulgarly called the Gulfe of *Chesapeack*, the first river is named *Pawlatan*, by which name the Cassique of that Province through which it runs is called, with whom Captain *Smith* and the *English* had many great transactions, this River receiveth into it divers lesser rivers, as *Quiyoughcohanock*, (about which inhabit the *Waraskoyakis*) *Nandsamund*, *Chickahamania*, and the bay of *Kecoughtan*, the next chiefe river is *Pamaunke*, on the right hand of which lyeth *Werawocomoco*, the chiefe residence of their grand Cassique, the third River is *Toppahanock*, which descends from the Mountaines called *Mannahoacks*, the fourth River is called *Patawomeke*, and the fifth *Pawtunxunt*. The supream of all the Cassiques was called *Powhatan*, to whom the smaller Cassiques

* *Macocque* a kind of apple, *Lobe d Wingandecaw* described by *Charles de L'ecluse*, *Muttaquesunnau.k*, or *Indian* figges.

* *Openawk*, *Kaistucpenauck*, *Tsinaw*, *Cascushaw* & *Habascon*.

siques called *Werowances* were subordinate, the places first discover'd by the *English* were *Croatan*, the Isle of *Roanoack*, *Hatorask*, and *Secotan*, their chiefe Townes are *James* town, where the Colony was first planted, and *Henry-town*. The chiefe towns of the Natives were *Pomejock*, *Weapemeock*, and *Secota*. On the west side of the great *Virginia Bay*, there lyeth a Province called *Maryland*, on the North side of the River *Patomuck*, and divided from *Virginia* by the said River.

In that part of the continent of *America* which lyeth between *Virginia* and *New-England*, the *Dutch* have a Plantation called *Novelle Belgique* or *New-Netherlands* which was first discovered by *Henry Hudson* an *English-man*, who was sent by the *East India* company of the united Provinces to finde out a passage towards *Tartarie* and *China*, it begins at *Cape Malebar* and extends it selfe Westward as far as *Cape Corneille*, among the Plants of this Country the cheife, are a sort of Turquiebeanes having an admirable variety of colours, the grand river of this Country is *Manhattes*, the chiefe Townes are *New-Amsterdam*, *Hellegat*, *Fort Orenge*, and others.

Thus having briefly toucht upon all the other parts of *America*, I come now to that which was primarily designed, namely a description of the first Discovery, and also of the present state of *New-England*.

A Description of NEW-ENGLAND, *and particularly of the Province of* MAIN.

THat part of Northern *America* which we call at this day *New-England*, is between the 41 and the 45 degree of Latitude, in the year 1606. this Country began to be possessed of *English* by publick Authority, there being a grant made by

by King *James* to certain Gentlemen and Merchants, to bring their Colonies both into the Northern and Southern parts, onely it was injoyn'd them to leave a hundred miles of void ſpace between one company and the other, and not to incroach any nearer then the bounds preſcribed. Into the North parts *Henry Chalon* was firſt ſent, who was taken by the *Spaniards*, about the ſame time *Thomas Haman* was ſent by Sir *John Popham* Lord chiefe Juſtice of *England* toward the river of *Sagadehoc* to the ſuccour of *Chalon*, but not finding him, after he had ſcowr'd the coaſt all about, he return'd back again to *England*, afterwards at the expence of the ſaid Sir *John Popham* a hundred men were tranſported to ſettle a Colonie at *Sagadehoc* who ſeated themſelves in a peninſule, which is at the mouth of this river, where they built a fortreſs to defend themſelves from their enemies, which they named St. *George*, the Commander of this Company was *George Popham*, and the Maſter of the Ship *Rawleigh Gilbert*, they attempted to diſcover the river, and met with a wood which was near unto an Iſland, where they eaſily went on ſhore, this place was diſtant from the line about 45 degrees and ſome odde ſcruples, the ſoile is not very fruitfull, although there are many woods, and thoſe full of Oakes, the *Salvages* live much after the ſame faſhion as thoſe in other parts, they are much tormented with an evill ſpirit, which they call *Tanto*, whom they rather fear then honour, in the year 1608. the Governour of the Colonie deceaſing, and a little after him the Lord chiefe Juſtice, who had been the chiefe that had furniſht them with freſh ſupplyes, they abandon'd the Colonie and returned for *England* in thoſe Ships that had been ſent them with ſuccours, at which unexpected return, the Patrons of the deſigne were ſo offended, that for a certain time they deſiſted from their enterpriſes, in the mean while the *French* making uſe of this occaſion, placed Colonies in divers places, untill ſuch time as *Argall* coming from *Virginia* diſturbed their deſignes, overthrew their Colonies and brought away Priſoners all he could lay hold on; not long after Captain *Hobſon* and others were ſet out with very great preparations, and with them two *Salvages* which had

been detained for some time in *England*, whom they thought to make use of, the better to draw the rest of the Natives to their commerce, but in regard that a little before their arrivall, a certain *English-man* named *Hunt*, had brought away from that place 24 of the *Salvages* whom he had by treachery, and under pretence of friendship inticed into his Ship, and as it came afterwards to be known, had sould them to the *Spaniards* in the streights of *Gibraltar*, the *Salvages* from thence contracted so great an animosity toward the *English*, that Captain *Hobson* was constrained to return without doing any thing. In the year 1614 Captain *John Smith* was sent (to fish for Whales, and to seek for Mines of gold and silver) who landed upon the Island of *Monahiggan*, he found some store of Whales, but not those kinde of Whales which afford so much profit by reason of their Oile; the next year being sent again, he fell into the hands of *French Pirates*, who detain'd him Prisoner for a certain time, nevertheless one of the *Salvages* which *Hunt* had sold to the *Spaniards*, hapning to fall into the hands of the *English*, they again conceived new hopes, and having with much difficulty obtain'd a new Patent from the King, they a little after brought a new Colonie into those parts. But before I proceed to the farther mention of the perfecting of this plantation, It will not be amisse to acquaint you with the occasion of the aforemention'd Captain *Chaloungs* being sent upon this voyage; after the universall peace concluded between King *James* and all the neighbouring Princes; divers resolute spirits who wanted imployment hunted after adventures abroad, and among those not a few were eager to make farther discoveries into the new World, about which time there hapned to come into the harbour of *Plymouth*, one Captain *Waymouth*, who had been imploy'd by the Lord *Arundel* of *Warder* for the discovery of the North-west passage, this Captain *Waymouth* brought five of the Natives along with him into *England*, of whom great use was made toward this intended designe; My Grand-father Sir *Ferdinando Gorges*, who at that time commanded in the Fort and Island of *Plymouth*, took these Natives into his custody, and having kept them full three

yeares

yeares, he made them capable to inform him of all things that were of concernment to the furthering of his designe, and to set him down what great rivers ran up into the Land, what men of note were seated on them, of what power they were, and how ally'd, upon these credible informations which the Natives had given him, he sent away a Ship furnisht with men and provisions convenient for the service intended under the command of Captain *Henry Challoung*, with whom he sent two of the Natives to make good the informations they had given him, upon which he grounded his Instructions to the Captain and the Master of the Ship, strictly injoyning them not to swerve from them, but the Captain falling sick of a Feaver, they were forc'd to put in at *S. J. de Porto Rico*, where they staid till his recovery, after which going on in their intended course, they were taken by the *Spanish* Fleet coming from *Havana*, so that this voyage was overthrown and the two Natives lost. But Captain *Prinne* whom my Lord chiefe justice *Popham* dispatch't away from *Bristow*, soon after the sending of Captain *Challoung*, arrived happily in those parts, and brought back with him at his return the most exact discovery of that Coast that ever had been gain'd till then, whereupon my Lord chiefe Justice and divers other Lords speedily procured his Majesties Authority for the setling of a Plantation in that part of *America*, which was to be undertaken by divers Gentlemen and Merchants of the West of *England*, as the Plantation of *Virginia* was undertaken by those of the City of *London*, it was about the year 1607 when my Lord chiefe Justice and his associates of the west Country, sent from *Plymouth* three Saile of Ships under the command of Captain *Popham* President, Captain *Rawleigh Gilbert* and divers other eminent persons, as I have already mention'd, you have also heard how that after the death of Captain *Popham* their President, and of the Lord chiefe Justice *Popham*, which was soon after, those of the Plantation were so discourag'd, that notwithstanding the fresh supplyes which had been sent them, they all with one consent returned back for *England*, to the great discontent of the chiefe Promoters of the designe. My Grand-father

(notwithstanding all these disasters) was so constant to his first resolutions, that he became owner of a Ship himselfe, which he sent into those parts for further trade and discovery, with Mr. *Vines* and severall others of his own servants; and this course he held for some yeares together, at length there came to him one Captain *Harly*, and brought along with him a Native of the Island of *Capawike*, called *Erpenow*, by which meanes he conceived new hopes of reviving this long languishing designe, especially having recover'd *Assacumet* one of the *Salvages* formerly sent with *C. Chaloung*; upon which encouragements, he took care to dispatch away *C. Harly*, with necessaries convenient for such a voyage, the Earl of *Southampton* favouring the designe, and furnishing him with some Land-souldiers under the command of Captain *Hobson*, who by reason of *Erpenow*'s escape, and other disasters which befell, was (as I have intimated) before constrained, to return back without effecting any thing of moment. In the year 1615. Sir *Richard Hakings* undertook a voyage into those parts by Authority from the Councell of the second Colonie, but by reason of the great Warres among the Natives, his observations could not be such as might give us any farther light, then what had already been received; but not long after Captain *Dormer* being disappointed of his meanes to come from the *New-found Land* to *New-England*, took shipping for *England*, and came to my Grand-father at *Plymouth*, giving him an accompt what his hopes were to be able to doe him service, if he pleased to imploy him; whereupon he dispatch't him away in his own Ship with the company he had gotten together, appointing him first to meet with Captain *Rocraft*, who had been sent to *New-England* a little before, but hearing that *Rocraft* was gone to *Virginia*, he immediately directed his course thither, thinking to have met with him there, but *Rocraft* being dead, and all lost that should have supply'd him, he soon made his return, and coming to *Capawike*, he set himselfe ashore there with all his people, where *Erpenow* the *Salvage* that had formerly made an escape, seeing him, conspired with some of his fellows to take him Prisoner, which they had

had effected, had he not defended himselfe with great valour and resolution, nor did he come off without being wounded in fourteen or fifteen severall places, and those wounds so dangerous, that he was forc'd to goe to *Virginia* to be cured of them, where he fell sick and dyed; After he had made so many tryalls of the state and commodities of the Country, and of the nature of the people, he thought it expedient to use the like care and order for affaires in this Northern Plantation, as the *Virginia* company had done for the Southern, and thereupon he imparted his desires to some of the Lords of the privy Councell, by whose favours and meanes, he obtained his Majesties Royall Charter to be granted according to his warrant to the Sollicitour Generall, the Copie of which is set down at large in his own relation; This patent was no sooner past under the great seal, but certain of the company of *Virginia* took great exceptions thereat, as conceiveing it to be a matter which tended very much to their prejudice, in so much that they made severall complaints to the King, and the Lords of the Councell, who notwithstanding after many serious debates, found no cause why there should be any thing revoked of what had been granted, yet they still prosecuted the businesse so far, that it was brought to a hearing the next Parliament that sate, where my Grand-father being summoned to appear three or four severall times, he still made answer to all such objections as were made by the House against him in behalfe of the Company of *Virginia*, wherewith he made no question, but he had sufficiently satisfied the most part of the House, for as much as they forbade the Lawyers to speak any more, but his opposites used such powerfull meanes, that when the Houses presented the publique greivances of the Kingdome, that of the patent for *New-England* was the first, and which gave him a farther trouble, the Count of *Tilliers*, Embassador for the King of *France*, laid claim to those Territories, in behalfe of the King his Master, whereunto he made so full a reply, that there was no more heard of that claime, the *Dutch* also began to trade with the Natives in *Hudsons* river, and stood so peremptorily upon their tearmes, had not

speedy

speedy complaint been made to the States, who utterly disown'd the businesse, that their designe of intruding upon us, was clearly to be discerned; During this controversie between my Grand-father and the *Virginia* company, divers Families that had retired themselves into *Holland* for liberty of conscience, being invited by the said company to become Enterprizers in this Plantation, and willingly accepting the occasion profer'd, they were scarcely well setled in the Country ere they perceiveing that the Authority which they had from the *Virginia* company, could not warrant their abode in that place, which they found so prosperous and so agreeable to them, they made their application immediately to my Grand-father, desiring him to mediate for them to the Councell of *New-Englands* affaires to settle them in that Plantation, which was accordingly performed to their great satisfaction, which place was afterwards called *New-Plymouth*, about this time my Uncle Captain *Robert Gorges*, was imployed by the Councell of *New-Englands* affaires, as their Leiftetenant Generall to regulate the abuses of divers fishermen and other Interlopers, who without order or licence frequented those Coasts; for which his good service, he had assigned unto him by a patent from the Councell, all that part of the main Land commonly called *Messachusiack*, scituate upon the Northeast side of the bay of *Messachusett*; Leiftenant Collonell *Norton* likewise undertaking to settle a Plantation upon the river of *Agomentico*, if my Grand-father pleas'd to bear a part with him, upon which motion he was contented that I my selfe should be nominated, together with him and the rest, whereupon at his intercession to the Lords, we obtained a patent among us, of twelve thousand Acres of Land upon the East side of the river *Agomentico* to my Associates, and twelve thousand more upon the West side to my selfe, the Leiftenant Collonell going over with some of his Associates to take possession of their territories, there was sent over in my stead, my Couzen, Captain *William Gorges*, who had been my Grand-father's Leiftenant in the Fort of *Plymouth*, with divers Workmen for the building of Houses, Mills, and all things necessary for the settlement of

our

our designes, and we had the more hopes of a happy successe of these affaires, by reason that not far from that place, there had been settled some yeares before, Mr. *Richard Vines* a servant of his, of whose care and diligence he had formerly made much triall in his affaires, after the breaking up of the Parliament, by reason of some discontents between the King and some of the Members, severall persons that were disaffected to Episcopall Government made application to the Counsell of *New-England* affaires for the setling of a Colony within their limits; whereupon my Lord of *Warwick* writ to my Grand-Father then at *Plymouth*, to give his consent that a patent might be granted to such as then sued for it, which he did, so far forth as it might not be prejudiciall to the Interest of his Sonne *Robert Gorges*, whereupon a Grant was passed by his Majesty, and confirmed under the Great Seal of *England*, by the authority of which, the undertakers went on so prosperously, that in a short while great numbers resorted of all sorts of People, so that what he had laboured to bring about before with so much paines and so little successe, was now effected in a high measure, but the greatest inconveniencie was, that this Country proov'd a receptacle for divers sorts of Sects and Schismes which contemn'd the Ecclesiasticall Government of this Kingdome as it stood at that present, whereupon it was ordered that none should be suffered to passe into *New-England*, but those that should take the Oaths of Supremacy and Allegiance, however, daily reports were still brought over of their continued opposition to the Authority that was then in being, insomuch that at last my Grand-Father with some others were taxed as the Authors of all these disorders, to which he alleadged that although he had earnestly sought the planting of those parts, yet these things happened very much contrary to his expectation, which answer though it served for the present, yet it could not wipe away the jealousie that was entertained of him, whereupon according as he was advised he moved those Lords that were the chief actors in the businesse that they might resign their Grand Patent to the King, and passe particular Patents to

 themselves

themselves of such parts of the Country along the Sea-Coast as might be sufficient for them to this motion, there being a generall assent given by the Lords, and a day appointed for the conclusion thereof, an Act was made for the resignation of the Patent, allotting to each particular Man their severall bounds, from the uttermost West-part began the limits of the Lord of *Mongrave*, and ended at *Hudson's* River, to the Eastward of which River for the space of 60 miles in length, was placed the Duke of *Richmond's* assignment, next to him was setled the Earle of *Carlile*, next him the Lord *Edward Gorges*, next, the Marquesse *Hamilton*, then Captain *John Mason*, and lastly my Grand-Fathers bounds extended from the middest of *Merimeck* to the great River *Sagadehock* being 60 miles, and so up into the Main Land 120 miles; this Province being thus confirmed to him as you have already heard by Patent, he called it by the name of the Province of *Main*, of which I shall give you a particular description after I have finisht that of *New-England* in generall, of which you have already had a brief account of the whole progresse of affaires from the first discovery of it, and what attempts have been made for the plantation of it untill this last Age, in which it is grown to be a prosperous and well peopled Colonie.

But before I come to the more exact description of the Country and the commodities thereof, it wil be convenient to prosecute the remainder of the History, and to give a breif account of all the most materiall passages that have hapned within these few yeares last past. In the yeare 1628. after a perfect discovery had been made which was cheifely effected by my Grandfathers vast charges, and his unwearied paines, & travaile in the businesse, and that a large gap was opened to the free possession of that Country. People of all sorts flocked thither in great numbers, especially such as were discontented at the form of Church Government then setled in this Nation, and had retired to *Holland* for liberty of conscience, as hath been before specified; the *Indians* about that time beheld to their great amazment that blazing

blazing Comet (ſomuch noted in *Europe*) which appear'd after Sun-ſetting in their Horizon South-weſt for the ſpace of 30 ſleeps, (for ſo they reckon their daies) after which uncouth ſight, they expected ſome ſtrange things to follow, the whole Nation of the *Maſſachuſetts* having been a little before that affrighted with the arrivall of a ſhip of ours in their bay, wondring exceedingly what ſtrange creature it ſhould be, when they beheld a great thing moving toward them upon the Water, eſpecially when having let fly their arrows at it out of their Canons, thinking to have kill'd it, the Maſter cauſed a peice of Ordnance to be fired, whereby the the poor *Indians* ſtruck with a Pannick feare haſted to the ſhore, but when our men appeared and produced their copper Kettles, they were by degrees invited to trade with us for Beaver skins; the Summer after the blazing ſtar (which moved from the Eaſt to Weſt) even a little before the *Engliſh* removed from *Holland* to *Plimouth* in *New-England*, there befell a very great mortality among the *Indians*, the greateſt that had ever hapned in the memory of man, or been taken notice of by tradition, laying deſolate the Eaſt, and by the Northern parts the County of *Pockanckie*, *Agiſſawamg*, the *Abarginny* men conſiſting of *Wippanaps*, *Tarantines* and *The Sagamore-ſhips*, or petty Kingdoms of the *Mattachuſetts* the *Nianticks*, *Narrowganſſitts*, & *Pecods*, their Powwows or Doctors were amazed to ſee their Wigwams or ſtreets lie full of dead bodies, and neither *Squantam* their good, nor *Abbamoch* their bad God could help them, which very much facilitated the landing of the *Engliſh* not long after in *Plimouth* Plantation, who comming but with a handfull of men found little or no reſiſtance, being onely ſent to keep poſſeſſion for the brethren who arrived Eight daies after, when the Natives appearing with their bows, and arrows let flye their long ſhafts among them; but one Captain *Miles Standiſh* with his fowling peice ſhot the ſtouteſt *Sachem*, among the *Indians* upon the right arm as he was reaching an arrow from his quiver, whereupon they all fled away with great ſpeed through the woods and thic-

kets, the same yeare the Marchant Adventurers in *England* sent forth store of Servants to provide against the wants of that desert place, amongst whom came over a mixt multitude, who settled themselves in the bosome of Cape *Anne*, now called *Glocester*, and with them came over Mr. *John Indicate* as Governour in that place, they immediatly began to build a town which is now called *Salem*, where in the yeare 1629. a Church was built and one Mr. *Higginson* ordained Minister, the next yeare being 1630. a new supply of men, women and children, with all necessary provisions arrived on the Northside of *Charles* river neare *Noddells* Island, up this river there were some other small plantations as at *Gibbions* his Creek, *Blaxtons* Point, and neere *Thomsons* Island; the first Court was held aboard the *Arabella*, a ship which the Company purchast in the Honour of the Lady *Arabella* wife to *Isaac Johnson* Esquire, Mr. *John Wintrope* was chosen Governour for that yeare, *Thomas Dudly* Deputy Governour and *Simon Broadstreet* Secretary, the first station they took up was *Charles-town*, where they built small Hutts and pitched some tents of cloath, after this long voyage many of the people were troubled with the Scurvey, and some of them died, about the same time also died Mr. *Isaac Johnson*, whose death was much bewailed; from this place many passed over to the South side of the river where the Governour, Deputy, and Assistants held the second Court and where they afterwards erected some other towns, still holding correspondency with *Charles-town* which is built on the North side of the river *Charles*, the form of this town in the Frontispeice of it resembleth the head, neck, and shoulders of a man, through the right shoulder whereof runs the Navigable river of *Mistick*, which by its near aproach to *Charles* river in one place make the cheife part of the town a *Peninsula*, it consists of about a hundred and fifty dwelling houses, many of them beautified with pleasant Gardens and Orchards: near the water-side is a large Market-place, forth of which issue two faire streets, and in it stands a large and a well built

Salem.

Charles-town

built Church, over againſt the Iſland neare the Sea ſide ſtands *Dorcheſter*, a Frontire-town, water'd with two ſmall rivers, built in form of a Serpent turning its head Northward, it conſiſts of one hundred and forty dwelling houſes with Orchards and gardens full of fruit trees. *Dorcheſter.*

The fourth town is *Boſton* the Center and Metropolis of the reſt, built in form of a heart, and fortified with two hills on the frontice part thereof, the one having great ſtore of Artillerie mounted thereon, the other having a ſtrong batterie built of whole Timber and filled with Earth, at the deſcent of the Hill, lies a large Cave or bay, on which the cheiſe part of this towne is built, over topped with a third Hill, all three like overtopping Towers keeping a conſtant watch to fore-ſee the approach of forraign dangers, the cheifeſt part of this City-like town, is crouded upon the Seabanks, and wharfed out with a great induſtry and coſt, the edifiesc large and beautifull, whoſe continuall inlargement preſageth ſome ſumptuous City. *Boſton.*

Between *Boſton* and *Dorcheſter* is ſituated the town of *Roxbury*, watered with coole and pleaſant Springs iſſuing forth the Rocky Hills, and with ſmall freſhets watering the vallies of this fertile town, the form of it reſembleth a wedge double pointed, entring between the two above mentioned towns, and in the roome of thoſe ſwamps and tearing buſhes which were there before, they have now goodly Fruit-Trees, fruitfull Fields and Gardens. *Roxbury.*

Between *Salem* and *Charles-Town* is ſituated the Town of *Lynne*, near to a River whoſe ſtrong freſhet at the end of Winter filleth all her banks, and with a violent torrent vents it ſelfe into the Sea, this town is almoſt ſquare, conſiſting of above a hundred dwelling houſes, having alſo an Iron Mill in conſtant uſe, the Church being on a levell Land undefended from the North-Weſt-Wind is made with ſteps deſending into the Earth. *Lynne.*

The 7th Town is called *Water-Town*, ſituated upon one of the branches of *Charles*-River, watered with many pleaſant Springs and ſmall Rivilets running like veines *Water-town*

throughout her body, this town begau by occasion of Sir *Richard Saltingstall*, who arriving with store of Cattell and Servants wintered in these parts, it consisteth of 160 Families; in the year 1631 *John Winthrop* Esq; was againe chosen Governour, and *Thomas Dudly* Esq; Deputy-Governour, and the number of Free-Men added was about 83 all which honoured persons were now in place of Government, in the absence of bread, the People fed upon fish, the Women resorting once a day as the Tide gave leave, to gather *Mussels* and *Clambankes*, about this time the *Indians* that lived among them fled to them, for feare of the *Tarratines* a sort of cruell and savage Caniballs, and neer the Town of *Lynne* then called *Saugust*, in the very dead of the night, one Lievetenant *Walker* of a suddain hearing a great noise, and presently after was shot through his Coate and his Buffe Jacket with two Indian Arrows, that night they stood upon their Guard, the next morning they sent word to other parts who gathered together, and taking councell how to quit themselves of these *Indians*, they agree'd together to discharge their great Guns, whose redoubling noise rattling in the Rocks, caus'd the *Indians* to betake themselves to flight, the *Autumn* following, the *Indians* (who till then had held a good correspondency with the *English*) began to quarrell about the bounds of their Land, but a great Mortality breaking out among the *Indians* who died in great numbers of the disease commonly called the *Small-Pox*, put an end to that controversie, there died among the rest one of the chief Sagamores of the *Mattachusets* called *Sagamore John*, who before his death was instructed in the Christian Faith, and toook care that his two Sons should be nurtured therein.

In the year 1633 the Governours before mentioned still governing, there was erected between *Charles-Town* and *Water-Town*, a Town called *New-Town*, since named *Cambridge*, in forme like a list of Broad-Cloath, reaching to the most southerly part of *Merimeck-River*, it hath comely and well ordered streets compleated with the fair building of *Harver Colledge*, this Town was appointed to be the Seat of Government,

Government, but it continued not long : In the year 1634 *Thomas Dudly* Esq; was chosen Governour, and Mr. *Roger Ludlow* Deputy Governour, the Free-Men added to the Government were two hundred and four.

The 9th town called *Ipswich*, is situated on a faire and delightfull River, Issuing forth from a very pleasant Pond, and afterwards breaking its course through a hideous swamp of large extent, it lies in the *Sagamoreship* or *Earldome* of *Aggawan*, now by the *English* called *Essex*. *Ipswich.*

Twelve miles from *Ipswich* near upon the Streames of *Merrimeck-River* is situated the 10th Town called *Newberry*: In the year 1635 Mr. *John Haines* was chosen Governour and Mr. *Richard Bellingham* Deputy-Governour, the number of Free-Men added to this little Common-Wealth, were about 145. This year there arrived severall ships with great plenty of provisions and many persons of good quality came in them, among whom were Sir *Henry Vain*, *Richard Saltingstal* Esq; Son to the above-named Sir *Richard Saltingstal*, Mr. *Roger Harlackenden*, *&c.* this year the People of *Cambridge* other wise called *New-Town*, hearing of a fertile place upon the River *Canectico* removed thither, and being out of the *Mattachusets* Patent they erected another Government, called by the Indian name *Canectico*, being encouraged thereto by the Lord *Say* and the Lord *Brooks*, who built a forrest at the mouth of the river and called it *Say-Brook* forrest, passing up the river they built a town which they called *Hartford*, divers others from severall parts comming into the Roomes of those that departed from Cambridge town. *Newberry.* *Hartford.*

The 12th Town seated upon a faire fresh river (whose rivulets are filled with fresh-marsh, and her streames with fish, it being a branch of that large river of *Merimeck Allwives*) is built in the Inland country and called Concord, it consisteth at present of above 50. families, their buildings are for the most part conveniently placed on one streight stream under a Sunny-bank, in a low levell, the People that first set forth to build this town sustained great hard-ship and misery by reason of the uncouth *Concord.*

waies

waies and extremity of the weather, it being the firſt Inland town that was built South-Eaſt of *Charles-river*, upon the Sea-coaſt, is ſcituated the town of *Hingham*, the form is ſomewhat intricate to deſcribe by reaſon of the Seas waſting crookes where it beats upon a moultring ſhore, yet in ſome places the ſtreets are compleat, it conſiſteth of about 60. families. In the yeare 1638. Sir *Henry Vaine* was choſen Governer and *John Winthrop* Eſq; Deputy Governer the number of Freemen added about eighty three.

Hingham.

The 15th town is in *Plimouth* Government ſcituate upon the Sea-coaſt firſt named *Dukes-Bury* afterward *Sandwich*, this yeare there was a great controverſy between the Churches of *New-England* and a ſort of ſectaries called *Gortenifts*, In the year 1637. *John Winthrop* Eſquire was choſen governor, and *Thomas Dudly* Eſquire Deputy Governor, the number of Freemen added 125. by the way I have thought fit in this place to give a breif account of the civill and eccleſiaſticall Government of this Country; the cheiſe Court and ſupream Power of the Commion-wealth conſiſts of a mixt Magiſtracy part *Ariſtocracy*, part *Democracy*, which are yearly choſen by the Major vote of the Freemen throughout the Country, they have hitherto had about 12. or 13. Magiſtrates in the Colony of the *Mattacuſets*, the other Colonies have not above 5. or 6. they have hither to been volunteers Governing without pay from the people oncly the Governer of the *Mattacuſets* hath ſome years 100*l*. allowed him ſome years leſſe out of the ſeverall townes their Deputies were choſen whoſe number was ordinarily between 30 and 40 for their particular officers, theſe are the cheiſe. Auditer Generall for the County, Treaſurer for the County, Secretary for the County, Clark of the Deputies, Survayour General of the Armies. for the Church Government it conſiſts, partly of Presbyterian diſcipline, partly of the congretionall way commonly called Independency.

Dukes-bury or Sandwich.

About this time a cruell and Barbarous Nation of the *Indians* called *Peaquods* lying to the Southweſt of the *Mattacuſets* were

were discover'd within some few miles of *Hartford* town, by one of the *English*; their comming struck a great terrour into all that inhabited the parts thereabout, but they onely took three Women and return'd, one of them making a violent resistance, had her braines beaten out, the other two they carried away with them, not offering to abuse their persons, (as was supposed they would,) for they esteemed their own shews being black beyond our women, their chiefe designe was to learne of them to make Gun-powder, which seeing they could not tell, they looked on their prize as nothing so pretious as they imagin'd; a little after, another *Indian* war threatning the *English*, they resolved together to send an Embassage to *Cannonicus*, chiefe Sachem of the narrow ganset *Indians*, thereby indeavouring to prevent him from confederating with the *Peaquods*, who, as they had intelligence, were about sending to him to that purpose, *Cannonicus* being grown old, had resigned the Government to his Nephew *Miantinemo*, a stern Man, and of a cruell nature.

The Embassadours arriving at his Court, which was about 80 miles from *Boston*, the *Indian* King gathered together his chiefe Councellours, and having entertain'd them magnificently, and feasted them royally, gave them audience in his State house, where the Sachem to manifest the greater state, lay along upon the ground, with all his Nobility sitting about him, with their legges doubled up, and their knees touching their chin; the *English* Interpreter having made his speech in the name of the rest, both *Cannonicus*, and the young King returned very discreet answers, signifying their resolutions to keep a fair correspondency with the *English*, and yet not to fall with the *Peaquods*, who a little after making also their addresses to the same King, he dissuaded them by many reasons from making war with the *English*, and to deliver into their hands those persons that murthred any of them, the *Peaquods* nevertheless though they seemed inclinable to his councell, yet they acted as enemies, for when the *English* sent a company of Souldiers into their Country, to treat with them about delivering up the murtherers, they made shew of willingnesse, but spying

their advantage, they betook them to their heeles, and as soon as the *English* were returned home, the *Peaquods* not onely insulted over them in a most reviling manner, but also blasphemed their God, whereupon they raised fresh Souldiers for the Warre, to the number of fourscore out of the severall towns in the *Mattachusets*, and with some *Indian* guides they came to their Fort, within which they had pitcht their wigwams, the entrance being on two sides, with intricate Meanders to enter, at which were placed *Indian* Bowmen, and shot the formost of the *English* on the shulder, yet they quickly dispatcht them, and rushed in through the winding ways, and placing themselves round the wigwams, they made a shot with the muzzles of the musquets down to the ground, on which the *Indians* lying asleep, were rouzed with very great terrour, and defeated with very little adoe, most of them being either wounded, killed, or taken; the *English* being thus posseſt of the first victory, send their prisoners to the pinnaces, and prosecute the Warre in hand, to the next *Battalia* of the *Indians*, which lay on a hill about two miles distant, where they gave them a second overthrow, slaying many more of their enemies, the rest flying to a very thick inaccessible swamp or bogge, were therein besieged by the *English*, and skulking up and down, as they saw their opportunity, they would make shot at them with their arrows, and then suddainly fall flat along in the water, at last the *English* finding out a passage into the swamp, utterly defeated them, and put an end to the war, with the losse of few mens lives, and but few wounded.

The same year there was a Synod conventedby the Divines of *New-England* at *Cambridge* town, it being the first Synod that had been ever called in this Country, it consisted of 25 Divines, besides divers other eminent Persons, who met together for the suppressing of errours and schismes, a Catalogue of the severall errours that had been spread in *New-England*, being there producˈt to the number of 80, and liberty given to any man to dispute *pro* & *con*; and none to be charged to be of that opinion, unlesse he declared himselfe so to be.

About

About this time a new supply comeing over into these parts, and not finding in the *Mattachusetts* government any commodious place to settle in, they after much search took up a place somewhat more southwardly near the shalles of *Lapecod*, where they found a commodious harbour for shipping, and a fit place to erect a Town in, which they built in a short time, with very fair Houses, and compleat Streets, and shortly after severall others, among which they erected a new Government, which from their first frontier Town was called *Newhaven*. *Newhaven.*

The fourteenth Town in the goverment of the *Mattacusetts* is called *Dedham*, being an Inland town scituate about ten miles from *Boston* in the County of *Suffolk*, well water'd with many pleasant streames, and abounding with Gardens and fruit-trees, it consists of about a hundred Families, being generally given to Husbandry. *Dedham.*

The fifteenth Town of this government is called *Waymouth* batter'd on the East with the Seas briny waves, on the Southwest rocks and swamps make it delightfull to the Deer, as the plowable Medow-lands are to the Inhabitants. *Waymouth.*

In the year 1638, *John Winthrop* Esquire was chosen Governour, *Thomas Dudley* Esquire Deputy governour, the number of Freemen added 130. Printing was also brought over into *New-England* about the same time, and about six miles from *Ipswich* Northeastward was erected another town called *Rowly*; The fourth day of *June* about two a clock in the afternoon, a generall Earth-quake hapned throughout all the *English* Plantations, it came from the Western parts, and went the direct course Eastward; The civill government proceeding to the censure of severall Hereticks and erroneous persons banisht them to a place more Southward, some setling themselves in the Island of Providence, others in an Island about sixteen miles distant, called *Rode* Island; about this time severall well minded people began to erect a Colledge at *Charles* town, to which one Mr. *John Harverd* was very assistant, and at his death gave a thousand pound toward it, whence it was call'd *Harverd* Colledge. *Rowly.* *Harverd Colledge.*

In the year of our Lord 1639 *John Winthrope* Esquire was

chosen Governour, and *Thomas Dudly* Esquire Deputy Governour, the number of Freemen added were about 83, about this time began the town of *Hampton* in the County of *Norfolk* to be built, it is scituate neare the Sea-coast, not far from the river of *Merimeck*, the great store of salt marsh there did intice the people to set down their habitations there. Nor far from this town of *Hampton*, was erected another town called *Salsbury*, seated upon the broad swift torrent of *Merrimeck* river, it lyeth on the Northern side over against the town of *Newberry*, the river between them being about halfe a mile broad, but hath an Island in the midst thereof, which makes it the more easily passable, the scituation of this town is very pleasant, the branches thereof abounding in fair and goodly Meadows, with good store of stately timber in many places upon the Uplands.

Hampton.

Salsbury

In the year 1640 came over a fresh supply of people into *New-England*, and finding no place to setle in within any of the former erected Colonies, they repaired to a place called *Long-Island*, severed from the continent of *Newhaven*, about sixteen miles of the salt Sea, being about 120 miles in length, yet but narrow, here the people erected a town called *Southhampton*; the same year also the town of *Sudbury* began to be built in the Inland Country, it is furnisht with great store of fresh marsh, but lying very low, it is much endammaged with Land-flouds, about this time there was built at Mount *Wount Wollestone* by some old Planters, and certain Farmers of the great town of *Boston*, a town named *Braintree*, being the twentieth town built within the *Mattachusets* Government, it is well peopled, and hath great store of land in tillage, this year also was laid the foundation of another Colledge at *Newtown*, otherwise called *Cambridge*, being situated upon a spacious plain, near a fair navigable river, and environed with many neighbouring towns of note, it is at present inlarged by the purchase of neighbour-houses, having a fair hall, convenient studies, and a good Library; the chiefe Benefactour was one Mr. *John Harnes*, who expended about 500 pound towards it, besides a yearly revenue for the maintenance of a Ferry passage, between

Long Island.

Southampton.

Sudbury.

Boston

Boston and *Charles* town; the first president of this Colledge was Mr. *Henry Dunstar*, an able proficient both in the *Hebrew*, *Greek*, and *Latine* tongues, and a man prudent in all things that belong to the well ordering and bringing up of youth.

In the year 1641. *Richard Bellingham* was chosen Governour, and *John Endicut* Esq; Deputy Governour, the number of Freemen added, were about 503. the one and twentieth Town erected in the *Mattachusets* government, was upon the Northern cape of the bay, called *Cape Anne*, at first peopled with Fisher-men, till one Mr. *Richard Blindman* coming from green harbour, a place in *Plymouth Patten*, with some few people of his acquaintance settled here, built a Town, and named it *Glocester*; there is also scituate upon *Puscataque* river, to the Northeast of *Boston*, a town called *Dover*, the people whereof being out of any of those Colonies mention'd, hearing of the prosperity of the *Mattachusets* Patten, desired greatly to submit themselves to their protection and government; they have here a good quantity of Meadow land, and good ground for *Indian* corn. *Glocester.* *Dover.*

In the year 1642. was erected the three and twentieth town, called *Wooburn*. *John Winthrop* Esquire was chosen Governour, and *John Endicut* Esquire Deputy Governour, the number of Free-men added, were about 1232.. *Wooburn.*

The year following, being the year 1643. the same Governours were again chosen, the number of Free-men added, were about 87. this year the four Colonies, namely the *Mattachusets*, *Plimouth*, *Canecticu*, and *New haven*, taking into consideration the many Nations that were on all sides of them, as the *French*, *Dutch*, *Jewes*, and Native *Indians*; as also how the three first were to lay claim to lands they never had any right to, and the last to be continually quarrelling and contending, where they saw any hopes of prevailing, and likewise how that though there were four severall Colonies, yet Religion had already united them, hereupon by Commissioners sent from the severall Colonies, they concluded a firm confederation to assist each other in all just and lawfull Wars, this confederacy being ended, there came in certain *Indian* Sachems, and submitted to the *English* government,

vernment, as *Pomham*, *Soccananocoh*, *Miantonemo*, and *Uncus*, but between these Princes arose a very hot quarrell, which the *English* sought by all meanes to quench, but could not, it being fomented, as is suppos'd by some vagabond *English*, who for their crimes were banisht from their complices at *Rode* Island, the Ringleader being one *Samuel Gorton*, the broacher of those heresies before mention'd, these *Gortonists*, as is said lent *Miantonemo* a corselet for safeguard of his Person, *Uncus* was Prince of *Forr*, whose life *Miantonemo*, though a much more potent Prince, and a very austere man, sought to take away by Treachery, hiring a young man of the *Peaquod* Nation to murther him, as the following story renders suspected; for one dark evening, this Sachem passing from one *Wigwam* to another, was shot through the arm with an arrow, but yet recovering the palace, he had the arrow pul'd out, and his wound cured, they young man who was suspected, was examin'd how he came by that great store of *Wampumpeage* which he had, and not being able to give a good account, and immediately flying to *Miantonemo*, it increased the suspition, which caused *Uncus* to complain to the *English* at a generall Court, which they held at *Boston*, hereupon the young man was examin'd in the presence of *Miantemo*, who came thither with his attendance, but the young man tutour'd, as is suppos'd before hand, by *Miantemo*, pretended that *Uncus* had injoyn'd him to faigne that he was hir'd by *Miantemo* to kill him, but they not beleiveing this tale, upon farther examination of him in private, concluded he had done the fact, nevertheleſſe they let him depart with *Miantemo*, advising him to send him home to *Uncus*, but he instead of returning him, cut off his head, and forthwith gather'd an Army of a thousand men, to fight with *Uncus*, who met him with halfe the men, the battell being joyn'd, the *Narroganſets*, though far the greater multitude, were beaten by the *Mawhiggins*, through the valour of *Uncus* their Prince, who sought to perfect his victory by possessing himselfe of the person of their Prince, which he effected, putting his life guard to flight, and taking hold of the Sachem himselfe, carried him victoriously away to the town of *Hartford*, desiring

firing to have advice of the united Colonies, what to doe with his Prisoner, but the Commissioners having had proofe of *Miantonemo*'s treachery toward this Prince, and of falsifying his word with them, advised *Uncas* to put him to death, but not to exercise that barbarous cruelty, which is usuall among them in such cases, the Sachem upon this advice, not many yeares after pretended to remove *Miantemo* to a safer place of custody, and by the way caus'd him to be executed, his subjects and kindred were troubled at his death, but the lesser Princes his neighbours over whom he had tyrannized, rather rejoyc'd at it; about this time some *English* that inhabited those parts among the *Indians* by their permission, desired to have the benefit of the *Mattachusets* government, as they of *Dover* had done before, and upon the governments condescending, they had designed to have setled there, and to have built a Town, but the *Gortonists* forbidding them to plant there, and doing them certain injuries, they complained to the Governour and Deputy, who yssuing out their warrants, summoned them to appear, but they refus'd, and contemned their authority, after this they sent two messengers on purpose to perswade them, but *Samuel Gorton* the ringleader of them, gave the Messengers a peremptory refusall, and as soon they were gone, he writ a pamphlet full of deriding expressions against the Government, mocking also at the Sacraments, and at the mysteries of the *New Testament*, whereupon at length the Governours sent a party of men well armed to apprehend him, and the rest of his company, they stood it out as long as they could, but at last they were taken, (all but two or three that ran away,) they stood peremptorily to what they had written, but their greatest purishment was to be confind to certain towns for a few months, and afterwards to be banisht.

In the year 1644. *John Endicut* Esquire was chosen Governour, and *John Winthrope* Esquire Deputy Governour, the number of Freemen added, was about 145. there was also ordained one Generall Officer in time of War, under the name of a Major Generall, the first that was chosen to this office was *Thomas Dudly* Esquire; about this time *Reading* the

the four and twentieth Town of the *Mattachusets* was built, it is well water'd and scituated about a great pond, having two Mills, a saw Mill, and a corn Mill, which stand upon two severall streames, a little after was built the six and twentieth Town in this Colonie, called *Wenham*, scituate between *Salem* and *Ipswich*, it is very well water'd, as most Inland Towns are, and the people live altogether upon Husbandry.

In the year 1645. *Thomas Dudly* Esquire was chosen Governour, and *John Winthrop* Esquire Deputy Governour, the number of Freemen added was 56. also *John Endicut* Esqu re was chosen Major Generall for this year, about this time was built the town of *Havervill* upon the river of *Merimeck*. This year the sons of old *Cannonicus*, their Father being dead, began to fall into hot contentions with their neighbours, and being forbidden by the united Colonies, they did not stick to threaten wars to the *English* also, whereupon the Commissioners raised an Army of horse and foot out of the Colonies, and made Major Generall *Edward Gibbons* Commander in chiefe over them, but the *Indians* hearing of this preparation, sent some of their chiefe Nobility to the Commissioners of the united Colonies, who were assembled at *Boston*, to treat about a peace, to which the Commissioners agreed, upon condition they should pay part of the charges of the war intended, and that they should send four of their Sons for Hostages, till the whole sum was paid, and the hostages being sent back before the *Wapom* was all paid, the two Princes *Pesicus* and *Mexanimo* upon the sending a company of armed men to demand it, sent the remainder of the money.

About this time one Mr. *Pinchin*, having out of desire to improve his estate by trading with the *Indians*, setled himselfe in a place very remote from any of the towns of the *Mattachusets* Colonie, yet under their government, and great store of people still resorting to him, they at last erected a town upon the river *Canectico*, calling it *Spring-field*, being the seven and twentieth Town of the *Mattachusets* government, it is very fitly seated for a Bever trade with the *Indians*, in

in regard it is ſituate upon this large Navigable River, and upon ſome Rivulets of the ſame.

In the year 1646 *John Winthrop* Eſquire was choſen Governour, *Thomas Dudly* Eſquire Deputy Governour, the number of Free-Men added 72. This year the General Court of the *Mattachuſets* Government taking into conſideration the many hereſies that were daily broached, a ſecond Synod was convented by them at the Town of *Cambridge*, wherein ſeverall diſputations were held about Religion, by which having agreed on all matters with a full concurrence of the aſſembly they were ordered to be put in Print. About the latter end of this year, appeared two *Parelij* or Images of the Sun, with ſome other ſtrange Apparitions of Light about them like a Rain-Bow with the heele up-ward: This yeare the General Court appointed a Committee of divers Perſons to draw up a body of the laws for the well ordering this Common-Wealth, and to the end that they might be moſt agreeable to the Rule of Scripture, in every County there was appointed two Magiſtrates, two Miniſters, and two able Perſons from among the People, who having provided ſuch a competent number as was fit, with thoſe formerly enacted, new amended, they preſented them to the General Court, where they were again peruſed and amended, and then another Committee choſen to bring them into form, and preſent them to the Court again, who in the yeare following paſs'd an Act of confirmation upon them, ſo that in the yeare 1648 they were Printed.

In the year 1647 *John Winthrop* Eſquire was choſen Governour, *Thomas Dudly* Eſquire Deputy-Govrenour, *John Endicut* Eſq; Major Generall, the number of Free-Men added was about 85. This year divers perſons of quality ventured their eſtates upon an Iron work which they began at *Braintree*, which profited the owners little, but rather wasted their ſtock, in the price of labor was double or triple to what it was in *England*.

In the year 1648 the ſame Magiſtrates were againe choſen, the number of Free-Men added was about 94. This year was founded the Town of *Haverhill*, about a mile or *Haverhill.*

two from the place where the River of *Merimeck* receives its branches into it selfe, hard upon the River *Shawshin* which is one of her three chiefe heads. Not long after the Town of *Malden* was built by certain people that came out of *Charles-Town*, these two Towns being severed the one from the other by the large River of *Mistick*, also at the town of *Boston*, by reason of the popularity thereof, being too many to meet in one assembly, they built another Church or Meeting-House, the North-East part of the Town being separated from the other by a narrow stream cut through a neck of Land by industry, whereby that is become an Island.

Malden.

These were all the Town's of any account that were erected in *New-England* from the first beginning of that Plantation untill the year 1648. It will not be a miss now to acquaint you with the manner of their proceeding in the erecting of their Towns, which was thus; Every Town that was to be built had its bounds fixed by the General Court, the Grant was to 7 Men of good and honest report, upon condition that within two year they build Houses for habitation thereon, and so go on to make a Town thereof upon the act of the Court, these seven Men have power to give and grant Out-Lands unto any persons who are willing to take up their dwellings within the said Precinct, and to be admitted to all common Priviledges of the said Town, giving them such an ample portion both of Meadow and Up-Land, as their stock of Cattell and Hands were like to improve, yet such as were any way unfit for civill Society were not admitted to injoy any Free-Hould, untill they did mend their manners; These 7 Men ordered and disposed of the Streets of the Town as might be best for improvement of Land, they refus'd not Men for their Poverty, but according to their ability, were helpfull to the poorest sort, in building up their Houses and distributed to them Land accordingly, the poorest had six or 7 Acres of Meadow, and about 25 of Up-Land. As for their Military Affaires, the Governour and Magistrates for the time being, are the Standing Councell as well for War as Peace, and

and either they or the General Councell, may appoint any one whome they shall think fit, to the office of Major Generall of the four Counties, namely *Suffolk*, *Middlesex*, *Essex*, and *Norfolk*, into which the Government is divided, each hath a Regiment belonging to it, over whom the chief Commander is onely a Sergant Major, so that to every particular City or Town there belongeth a band or company of Souldiers, moreover this Country aboundeth at present, with all things necessary for the commodiousnesse of humain life, and through the Blessing of *GOD*, and the Industry of the Inhabitants, that Soile bringeth forth all sorts of Graines which are usual among us, and in as great plenty, likwise all kindes of Trades and Manufactures have been there of late very much improv'd.

There are in *New-England*, 25. considerable Havens, many of which are capable of above 500. Ships, some of a thousand, the principall seat of the *Salvages* is near *Penobscot* toward the North, along the Southern coast lie *Macadacut*, *Segocket*, *Pemmaquid*, *Sagadahoc*, *Nusconcus*, *&c.* where severall Nations of them inhabit, the cheife of which are *Segetago*, *Pabtiuntanuck*, *Pocopassum*, *Taughtanacognet*, *Nassaque*, *Masbecosqueck*, *Wawrigueck*, *Passaranack* & their *Allies* the *Aucocisco*, *Accominticus* *Passataquack*, and others all which differ very little one from another in language & manners, and although they are divided into many provinces and particular Lordships, yet the *Bessabees*, which are seated along the banks of the river *Penobscot*, are the most considerable of all the rest. The *Matabanes* inhabit two Islands full of Gardens and pleasant fields, about a League distant from the continent. The *Massachusets* inhabiting the middle of the Country, are a people of a very large size, and differ from the rest of the *Salvages* both in language; customes and manner of commerce, they have among them great plenty of *Beavers*, and *Otters*. On the Eastern coast are the *Tarentines* being Allies to the *French*, and having continuall Warres with the *Bessabees*, which inhabit on the other side, a little farther the Cape *Traghizanda*, otherwise called *Champlain*, St. *Louis*, and by the Natives *Wyngaerdshoeck*,

 shoots

shoots it selfe into the Sea by a long neck, before which lie three Islands vulgarly called *Turkes-heades*, from the fishing of this Country a great revenue may be drawn; in the Months of *March*, *April*, *May*, *Iune*, there are caught great quantites of Codfish, and in *May*, *Iune*, *Iuly*, and *August*, as great a number of Sturgeons, and likewise an incredible multitude of Herrings. The Earth brings forth of its own accord divers sorts of trees, as *Oakes*, *Cedars*, *Pines*, *Pitch-trees*, *Aromatick-Canes*, *Sassafras*, *&c.* and among their fruit trees, the cheifest are Mulberries, Wallnuts, Filberds, Damsins, Chesnuts, Vines, Raspiffs, Goosberries, Strawberries, of those Fruits that grow from the seed, Melons, *Ginny* Beanes, Pease, and Maiz, also a sort of *Hemp*, of which the Natives make their nets; likewise besides that kind of Grain which the *Savages* were wont to sow, those that have been brought over from these parts, thrive very well in that soyle, the Merchants also make very great profit of a certain precious Grain named *Alkermes*, which they sell at a very high price; this Country is very commodious for Saltpits, and for Birds and Beasts, there is no Country in the World that yeilds, either better or in greater abundance; these Birds which are there in greatest numbers are Turkycocks, Partridges, Swans, Cranes, Geese, Ducks, and especially when Strawberries, begin to be ripe. Of Harts and other the like sort of beasts there are a great number, which bring forth sometimes 3. or 4. Fawnes which is a remarkeable sign of the goodnesse of the Ayr and the soile.

There is a certain kind of Beast, frequent in these Countries, which the *Savages* call *Mosse*, of the bignesse of an Oxe having the head of a Hart with large Horns, which they change every yeare, the neck like that of a Hart, the hair short from the neck all along the back, a loose skin hanging under the throat, the legges long with great feet after the manner of Cows, the taile a little longer then the taile of a Deer, the flesh is of a very good tast which the *Savages* keep a long time dried in the wind

the

the hide of it is as thick and solid as the hide of a beef being profitable for many uses, these Beasts are found in great aboundance in an Island near the firm land called by the English Mount *Mansel*, where the *Savages* take them in this manner ; after they have kindled a great many fires, they beset the Woods, and chace them towards the Sea, into which they cast themselves of their own accord, then they pursue them with their Canow's and kil them ; there is no doubt but this Beast might be made very serviceable to man with a little paine sand industrie, heare are divers things besides, which yeild great profit by way of traffick, as severall sorts of fish the skins of *Beavers*, *Otters*, black *Foxes*, *Martins*, and such other like Beasts ; also *Hemp*, *Flax*, *Iron*, *Boards*, and all sorts of materialls, as also *Pitch*, both hard and liquid, which is there made, is a very profitable commodity, in fine we have not any thing brought either out of *France*, or *Germanie*, through the sound of *Denmark*, which may not be had here with a little labour ; it is not unknown that Amber-greece, hath been sometimes found there upon the Seashore, and there is no small hopes, also of the finding of Pearle.

This Country being scituate in the midst of the temperate zone, in the space between the Artick circle, and the Tropick of *Cancer*, one would think it should injoy the same temperature of Ayr, as *France*, and some part of *Italy*, but we find the contrary, for that part which borders upon the Sea, is of coulder Ayr, partly by reason of the nearnesse of the Sea, the mounting of whose waves, break the reflexion of the Sun beames, partly by reason of the abundance of vapours, which mounting upward abate the ardour of them, but the more inland parts of the Country are indifferently warme, and hath been found by certain experience that those Countries which look toward the rising of the Sun, are colder then those which lie toward the West or Sun-setting, and those which have the evening windes on them are warmer then those which have the morning windes, which being so, it fol-

lowes that the temperature of the Ayr in those regions is most proper and peculiar to the bodies of those of our Nation, who being accustomed to a climate somewhat temperate, are neither able to indure extremity of cold, nor immoderate heat, and thus much I thought fit to publish concerning *New-England*, in discourse, besides the relation of all my Grand-Fathers proceedings for the effecting of what he so long aim'd at, namely the setling plantations in those parts, I have likewise given a very exact account of the Country, described both the scituation, the temperature of the climate the fertility of the soile, the nature and qualities of the people, the traffick and commodities the Country affordeth, in a more exact and methodicall manner, then hath hitherto been performed by any others, I shall now proceed to a breife description of the provinces of *Laconia*, and *Main*, which is that of *New-England*, which fell to my Grand-Fathers share among the rest of the Patentees, wherein though I have already given a survey of the whole region in Generall, yet they being a considerable part of it ; I shall not want matter to speak something materiall concerning these two provinces in particular.

A Breife Description of *Laconia*, a Province in NEW-ENGLAND.

AMong divers Plantations of the English happily founded in *New England*, is a province to the Landward named *Laconia* so called by reason of the great lakes therein, but by the ancient inhabitants thereof it is called the Country of the *Troquois*. It

It lies between the latitude of 44. and 45. degrees having the rivers of *Sagadebock* and *Myrameck* on the Sea coast of *New England* Southerly from it, into each of which rivers there is a short passage frequented by the *Savages*, inhabiting neare the lakes, also it hath the great lakes which tend towards *California* in the South Sea on the West thereof, on the North East is the great river of *Canada*, into which the said river disgorgeth it selfe by a fair large river well replenisht with many fruitfull Islands; the Ayr thereof is pure and wholsome, the Country pleasant having some high Hills full of goodly forrests and faire vallies and plaines fruitfull in Corn, Vines, Chesnuts, Wallnuts, and infinite sorts of other fruits; large rivers well stored with fish, and invironed with goodly Meadows full of Timber trees.

One of the great lakes is called the lake of *Troquois* which together with a river of the same name running into the river of *Canada* is Sixty or Seventy leagues in length.

In the lake are 4 fair Islands, which are low and full of goodly Woods and Meadows, having store of game for hunting, as Stagges, Fallow-Dear, Elkes, Roe-Bucks, Beavers, and other sorts of Beasts which come from the Main Land to the said Islands, the Rivers which fall into the lakes have in them good store of Beavers, of the skins of which Beasts, as also of the Elkes, the Salvages make their chiefest Traffique.

The said Islands have been inhabited heretofore by the Savages, but are now abandoned by reason of their late wars one with another, they contain 12 or 15 leagues in length, and are seated commodiously for habitation in the midst of the lake, which abounds with divers kindes of wholsome Fish.

From this lake run two rivers South ward which fall into the Eastern and Southern Sea coast of *New England*.

Into this lake there went many years since certain French of *Quebeck* who sided with the *Algovinquins* with the help of their Canow's, which they carried the space of 5 miles over

over the impoſſible falls, to fight a battaile in revenge of ſome former injuries done by the *Troquois* to the *Algovinquins* who had the victory, for which cauſe the French have been ſo hated ever ſince by the nation of the *Troquois*, that none of them durſt ever appear in any part of that lake, but their Beavers and other trade ſaid to be 16000 Beavers yearly, is partly ſould to the Dutch who trade with the weſt end of the ſaid lake over land by Horſes, from their Plantation upon *Hudſon*'s River, and another part is conceived to be purchas'd by the *Hiroons*, who being Newters, are friends both to the one and the other, and theſe *Hiroons* bring down the greateſt part of all the River of *Canada*. The way over Land to this great lake from the Plantation of *Paſcataway*, hath been attempted by Captain *Walter Neale* once Governour, at the charges of my Grand-Father, Captain *Maſon* and ſome Merchants of *London*, and the diſcovery wanted one days journy of finiſhing, becauſe their victualls were ſpent, which for want of Horſes they were enforced to carry with their armes, and their cloathes upon their backs, they intended to make a ſettlement for trade by Pinnaces upon the ſaid lake, which they reckon to be about 90 or 100 miles from the Plantation over Land.

The People of the country are given to hunting of Wilde Beaſts, which is their chiefeſt food.

Their armes are bows and arrows, their armour is made partly of Wood and partly of a kinde of Twiſted Stuffe like Cotton Wool.

Their meat is flowre of *Indian* Corn, of that Countrys growth ſodden to Pap, which they preſerve for times of neceſſity when they cannot hunt.

This Province of *Laconia*, however known by a diſtinct name, is included within the Province of *Main*, which offers it ſelfe next to our conſideration.

Of

Of the Province of MAIN.

ALL that part of the continent of *New-England* which was allotted by patent to my Grand-Father Sir *Ferdinando Gorges*, and to his Heires, he thought fit to call it by the name of the *Province of Main*. It takes its beginning at the entrance of *Pascatoway-Harbour*, and so passeth up the same into the River of *Newichwavock* and through the same unto the fartheſt head thereof, and from thence North-Weſt-wards for the space of one hundred and twenty miles, and from the mouth of *Pascatoway-Harbour* aforesaid, North-Eaſt-wards along the Sea-coaſt to *Sagadahock*, and up the River thereof to *Kynebequy* River, even as far as the head thereof, and into the land North-Weſt-wards for the space of 120 miles, to these territories are also adjoyned the North halfe of the Isles of *Sholes*, together with the Isles of *Capawock* and *Nautican*, as also all the Islands and Islets lying within five leagues of the Main, all along the Sea-coaſt between the aforesaid Rivers of *Pascatoway* and *Sagadahock*, he no sooner had this Province settled upon him, but he gave publique notice that if any would undertake by himselfe and his associates, to transport a competent number of Inhabitants, to plant in any part of his limits, he would assigne unto him or them such a proportion of land as should in reason satisfie them, reserving onely to himselfe some small high rent, as 2s or 2s--6d for 100 acres *per annum*, and if they went about to build any Town or City, he would endow them with such Liberties and Immunities, as should make them capable

to govern themselves within their own limits according to the liberties granted to any Town or Corporation within this Realm of *England*, and as for others of the meaner sort that went as Tenants, that they should have such quantities of Land assign'd them as they were able to manage, at the rate of 4d or 6d an Acre, according to the nature or situation of the place they settle in. As for the division of the Province and the form of Government which he intended to establish, he first divided the Province into severall parts, those he subdivided into distinct Regiments, East, West, North, and South, those again into severall Hundreds, Parishes and Tithings, and these to have their severall Officers to govern according to such Laws as should be agreed upon by publick assent of the Free-Houlders, with the approbation of himselfe or Deputy, and the principall Officers of the Publique State.

The settled Government for the Generall State to whom all appeales were to be made, and from whom all Instructions for the Publique Welfare were to issue, were to consist of himselfe or his Deputy, who was to be chosen every three yeare by himselfe with the advice of his Councell: Next a Chancellour for the determination of all causes; A Treasurer to whome the care of the Publique Revennue was to be committed; A Marshal whose office was to over-see the Regiments and to provide Men for Publick Service; An Admiral to take care of all Maritime Affaires, to whom a Judge of the Admiralty was to be joyn'd to determine all Maritime Causes; A Master of the Ordnance, to looke to the Publique Armes and Ammunition; A Secretary to receive intelligence, and to acquaint himselfe or Deputy therewith. To these belong all their severall Officers and Ministers for the execution of all matters proper to their severall places.

The chief Town of this Province is called *Gorgiana*, which is govern'd by a Mayor, the rest are onely inconsiderable Villages or Scattered Houses; but I doubt not after the government of *New-England* comes once to be thorowly setled, and

and good Encouragement given to Adventurers and Planters, but it will prove a very flourishing place and be replenisht with many faire Townes and Cities, it being a Province both fruitfull and pleasant.

Thus have I not onely briefly run over all the *New World*, but also more especially treated of our Northern Plantations of *America*, wherein if I have not insisted so largely upon particulars as others have done, yet at least I have furnish'd the READER with a much greater variety of memorable things, and that with a clearer Method than hitherto hath been observ'd, a work not altogether unprofitable, and which if it finde a handsom reception among the more ingenuous sort of Men, I shall not think my Labour to have been ill bestowed.

FINIS.

A BRIEFE NARRATION OF THE Originall Undertakings OF THE ADVANCEMENT OF PLANTATIONS Into the parts of AMERICA.

Especially,

Shewing the begining, progress and continuance of that of

New-England.

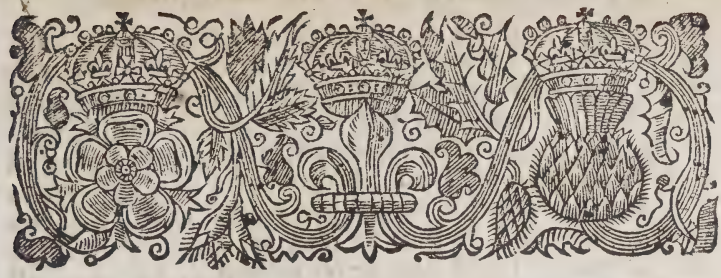
Written by the right Worshipfull, Sir *Ferdinando Gorges* Knight and Governour of the Fort and Island of *Plymouth* in *DEVONSHIRE.*

LONDON:
Printed by *E. Brudenell*, for *Nath. Brook* at the *Angell* in *Corn-hill.* 1658.

Febury 4th 3rd 1779

Francis Bowker

His Book



CHAPTER I.

OF THE First Seisin Possession AND NAME OF VIRGINIA.

THat Sir *Humphrey Gilbert*, and Sir *Richard Greenvile*, and many others, Noble spirits of our Nation attempted to settle a Plantation in the parts of *America*, in the Reigne of Queen *Elizabeth* is sufficiently published in the painfull collections of Mr. *Hackluit*, together with the variable successes, of those undertakers of whose labour and charge there remained no other fruit then the Primor seisin and royal possession taken thereof, as of right belonging to the Crown of

of *England*, giving it the name of *Virginia*, in the memory and Honour of that Virgin Queen, the wonder of her Sex; by whose Authority those attempts took their first life, and dyed not till the actors ended their daies, and their cheife supporters, and advancers tryed with so many fruitlesse attempts and endlesse charge without hope of profit to follow for many ages to come; so that, that attempt had its end, as many others since that of greater hopes and better grounded, but what shall we say? As nothing is done but according to the time fore decreed by Gods sacred Providence, so doth he provide wherewith to accomplish the same in the fulnesse of it, but the mirror of Queens being summoned to the possession of a more Glorious Reigne, left her terrestriall Crown to her Successor *James*, the Sixth of *Scotland*, to whom of right it did belong.

CHAPTER II.

The reasons and meanes of renewing the undertakings of Plantations in America.

THis great Monarch Gloriously ascending his Throne, being borne to greatnesse above his Ancestors, to whom all submitted as to another *Salomon*, for wisedome and justice, as well as for that he brought with him another Crown, whereby those Kingdomes that had so long contended for rights and liberties, perhaps oft times pretended rather to satisfie their present purposes, then that justice required it; But such is the frailty of humane nature as not to be content with what we possesse, but strives by all meanes to enthrall the weaker that is necessitated

to

to prevent the worst, though by such meanes sometimes to their greater ruine; With this Union there was also a generall peace concluded between the State, and the King of *Spaine*, the then onely enemy of our Nation and Religion, whereby our Men of war by Sea and Land were left destitute of all hope of imployment under their owne Prince; And therefore there was liberty given to them (for preventing other evils) to be entertained as Mercenaries under what Prince or State they pleased; A liberty granted upon shew of reason, yet of a dangerous consequence, when our friends and Allyes that had long travelled with us in one and the same quarrell, should now finde our swords sharpned as well against, as for them; Howsoever reason of State approved thereof, the World forbore not to censure it as their affections led them, others grew jealous what might be the issue, especially when it was found that by such liberty the sword was put into their hands, the Law had prohibited them the use; Some there were not liking to be servants to forreigne States, thought it better became them to put in practice the reviving resolution of those free Spirits, that rather chose to spend themselves in seeking a new World, then servilely to be hired but as Slaughterers in the quarrels of Strangers; This resolution being stronger then their meanes to put it into execution, they were forced to let it rest as a dreame, till God should give the meanes to stir up the inclination of such a power able to bring it to life; And so it pleased our great God that there hapned to come into the harbour of *Plymouth* (where I then commanded) one Captain *Waymouth* that had been imployed by the Lord *Arundell* of *Warder* for the discovery of the North-west passage.

But falling short of his Course, hapned into a River on the Coast of *America*, called *Pemmaquid*, from whence he brought five of the Natives, three of whose names were *Manida*, *Skettwarroes*, and *Tasquantum*, whom I seized upon; they were all of one Nation, but of severall parts, and severall Families; This accident must be acknowledged the meanes under God of putting on foote, and giving life to all our Plantations, as by the ensuing discourse will manifestly appeare.

CHAPTER III.

Of the use I made of the Natives.

AFter I had those people sometimes in my Custody, I observed in them an inclination to follow the example of the better sort; And in all their carriages manifest shewes of great civility farre from the rudenesse of our common people; And the longer I conversed with them, the better hope they gave me of those parts where they did inhabit, as proper for our uses, especially when I found what goodly Rivers, stately Islands, and safe harbours those parts abounded with, being the speciall marks I levelled at as the onely want our Nation met with in all their Navigations along that Coast, and having kept them full three yeares, I made them able to set me downe what great Rivers ran up into the Land, what Men of note were seated on them, what power they were of, how allyed, what enemies they had, and the like of which in his proper place.

CHAPTER IV.

Captain Henry Challoung sent to make his residence in the Countrey till supplyes came.

THose credible informations the Natives had given me of the condition and state of their Countrey, made me send away a Ship furnished with Men and all necessaries, provisions

provisions convenient for the service intended under the command of Captain *Henry Challoung*, a gentleman of a good Family, industrious, and of fair condition, to whom I gave such directions and instructions for his better direction as I knew proper for his use, and my satisfaction, being grounded upon the information I had of the Natives, sending two of them with him to aver the same, Binding both the Captain his Master, and company strictly to follow it; Or to expect the miscarriage of the Voyage to be laid unto their Charge, Commanding them by all meanes to keep the northerly gage, as high as Cape Britton, till they had discovered the Maine, and then to beate it up to the Southward, as the Coast tended, till they found by the Natives they were neer the place they were assigned unto; Though this were a direction contrary to the opinion of our best Sea-men of these times; yet I knew many reasons perswading me thereunto, as well as for that I understood the Natives themselves to be exact Pilots for that Coast, having been accustomed to frequent the same, both as Fishermen and in passing along the shoare to seek their enemies, that dwelt to the Northward of them; But it is not in the wit of Man to prevent the providence of the most High.

For this Captain being some 100 leagues of the Island of *Canara*, fell sick of a Feaver, and the windes being Westerly, his company shaped their course for the *Indies*, and coming to *St. John De Porteriko*, the Captain himselfe went a shoare for the recovery of his health, whiles the Company took in water, and such other provision as they had present use of, expending some time there, hunting after such things as best pleased themselves; That ended, they set their course to fall with their owne height they were directed unto; By which meanes they met the *Spanish* Fleet that came from *Havana*, by whom they were taken and carried into *Spaine*, where their Ship and goods were confiscate, themselves made Prisoners, the voyage overthrowne, and both my Natives lost; This the gaine of their breach of Order, which afterwards observed, brought all our Shippes to their desired Ports; The affliction of the Captain and his

Company put the Lord Chief Justice *Popham* to charge, and my selfe to trouble in procuring their liberties, which was not suddainly obtained.

CHAPTER V.

The Lord Chief Justice dispatching Captaine Prin *from* Bristoll *for the supply of Captaine* Challounge.

SHortly upon my sending away of Captaine *Challounge*, it pleased the Lord Chiefe Justice according to his promise to dispatch Captain *Prin* from *Bristoll*, with hope to have found Captaine *Challounge*, where by his instructions he was assigned, who observing the same, happily arrived there, but not hearing by any meanes what became of him, after he had made a perfect discovery of all those Rivers and Harbours he was informed of by his instructions, (the season of the yeare requiring his return) brings with him the most exact discovery of that Coast that ever came to my hands since, and indeed he was the best able to performe it of any I met withall to this present, which with his relation of the Country, wrought such an impression in the Lord Chiefe Justice, and us all that were his associates, that (notwithstanding our first disaster) we set up our resolutions to follow it with effect, and that upon better grounds, for as yet, our authority was but in motion.

CHAPTER VI.

Of his Lordships care in procuring his MAJESTIES *Authority for setling two* COLONIES.

IN this Interim his Lordship failed not to interest many of the Lords and others to be Petitioners to his MAJESTY for his Royall Authority, for setling two Plantations upon the coasts of *America*, by the names of the *First* and *Second* Colonie; the first to be undertaken by certaine Noble Men, Knights, Gentlemen, and Merchants in and about the City of *London*; the second by certaine Knights, Gentlemen, and Merchants in the western parts: This being obtained, theirs of *London* made a very hopefull entrance into their designe, sending away under the command of Sir *Thomas Gates*, Sir *George Summers*, and many other Gentlemen of quality, a very great and hopefull Plantation to repossesse the parts of *Virginia*, Sir *Thomas Gates* happily arrived in the Bay of *Jessipiock*, in which navigation Sir *George Summers* unhappily cast away his Ship upon the Islands of *Bermathaes*, since called the *Summer Islands*, in memory of him that deserved the honour for the great paines, care, and industry he used out of the carkasse of his wracked Ship, to build a New Barque sufficient for the transportation of himselfe, distressed company, and provision to finde out Sir *Thomas Gates* who timely arrived to the wonder of the rest of his consorts.

CHAPTER VII.

The dispatch of the first Plantation, for the second Colonie sent from Plymouth.

BY the same Authority all things fully agreed upon between both the Colonies the Lord cheife justice his friends and associates of the West Country, sent from *Plymouth* Captain *Popham* as president for that imployment with Captain *Rawley Gilbert*, and divers other G ntlemen of note in three saile of ships with 100. land-men, for the seizing such a place as they were directed unto by the counsell of that Colonie, who departed from the coast of *England* the one and thirtieth day of *May*, *Anno* 1607. and arrived at their Rendezvouz the 8 th of *August* following; as soone as the President had taken notice of the place, and given order for landing the provisions, he dispatcht away Captain *Gilbert* with *Skitwarres* his guide for the through discovery of the rivers and habitations of the Natives, by whom he was brought to severall of them where he found civill entertainment, and kind respects far from brutish or Savage natures, so as they suddainely became familiar friends, especially by the meanes of *Debamda*, and *Skitwarrers*, who had been in *England*, *Debamda* being sent by the Lord cheife justice with Captain *Prin* and *Skitwarres* by me in company, so as the President was earnestly intreated by *Sassenow*, *Aberemet*, and others the principall *Sagamores* (as they call their great Lords) to go to the *Bashabas*, who it seemes was their King, and held a State agreeable, expecting that all strangers should have their addresse to him, not he to them.

To

To whom the president would have gone after severall invitations, but was hindred by crosse winds and foul weather, so as he was forced to return back, without making good what he had promised, much to the greife of those *Sagamores*, that were to attend him, The *Bashabas* notwithstanding hearing of his misfortune, sent his own Son to visit him, and to beat a trade with him for furrs. How it succeded, I could not understand, for that the ships were to be dispatched away for *England*, the Winter being already come; for it was the 15. day of *December* before they set saile to return, who brought with them the successe of what had past in that imployment, which so soon as it came to the Lord cheife justice hands, he gave out order to the Councell for sending them back with supplies necessary.

CHAPTER VIII.

The sending supplies to the Colonie, and the unhappie death of the Lord cheife justice before their departure.

THE supplies being furnished and all things ready onely attending for a faire wind, which hapned not before the news of the chiefe justice death was posted to them to be transported to the discomfort of the poor Planters, but the ships arriving there in good time, was a great refreshing to those that had had their store-house and most of their provisions burnt the Winter before.

Besides that they were strangely perplexed with the great and unseasonable cold they suffered with that extremity, as the like hath not been heard of since, and it seemes, was universall, it being the same yeare, that our *Thames* were so lockt up that they built their boates upon it, and

could

ſould proviſions of ſeverall ſorts to thoſe that delighted in the Novelties of the times, but the miſeries they had paſt, were nothing to that they ſuffered by the diſaſterous news they received of the death of the Lord cheif juſtice, that ſuddainely followed the death of their Preſident, but the latter was not ſo ſtrange, in that he was well ſtricken in years before he went, and had long been an infirme man. Howſoever heartned by hopes, willing he was to dye in acting ſomething that might be ſerviceable to God, and honourable to his Country, but that of the death of the cheife juſtice was ſuch a corraſive to all, as ſtruck them with deſpaire of future remedy, and it was the more augmented, when they heard of the Sir *John Gilbert*, Elder brother of *Ralph Gilbert* that was then their Preſident, a man worthy to be beloved of them all for his induſtry, and care for their well being; The Preſident was to return to ſettle the ſtate his Brother had left him, upon which all reſolved to quit the place, and with one conſent to away, by which means all our former hopes were frozen to death, though Sir *Francis Popham* could not ſo give it over, but continued to ſend thither ſeverall years after in hope of better fortunes, but found it fruitleſſe, and was neceſſitated at laſt to ſit down with the loſſe he had already undergone.

CHAPTER IX.

My reſolution not to abandon the proſecution of the buſineſſe, in my opinion ſo well grounded.

ALthough I were intereſted in all thoſe misfortunes, and found it wholly given over by the body of the adventurers, aſwell for that they had loſt the principall

cipall ſupport of the deſigne, as alſo that the Country it ſelfe was branded by the returne of the Plantation, as being over cold, and in reſpect of that, not habitable by our Nation.

Beſides, they underſtood it to be a taske too great for perticular perſons to undertake, though the Country it ſelfe, the Rivers, Havens, Harbours, upon that coaſt might in time prove profitable to us.

Theſe laſt acknowledgements bound me confidently to proſecute my firſt reſolution, not doubting but *GOD* would effect that which Man deſpaired of, as for thoſe reaſons, the cauſes of others diſcouragements, the firſt onely was given to me, in that I had loſt ſo Noble a Friend, and my Nation ſo worthy a Subject. As for the coldneſſe of the Clyme, I had had too much experience in the World to be frighted with ſuch a blaſt, as knowing many great Kingdomes and large Territories more northerly ſeated, and by many degrees colder than the Clyme from whence they came, yet plentifully inhabited, and divers of them ſtored with no better commodities from Trade and Commerce than thoſe parts afforded, if like Induſtry, Art, and Labour be uſed, for the laſt I had no reaſon greatly to deſpaire of meanes when *GOD* ſhould be pleaſed by our ordinary frequenting that Country, to make it appeare, it would yeild both profit and content to as many as aimed thereat, theſe being truly (for the moſt part) the motives that all men labour, howſoever otherwiſe adjoyned with faire colours and goodly ſhadows.

CHAPTER X.

A resolution to put new life into that scattered and lacerated Body.

FInding I could no longer be seconded by others, I became an owner of a Ship my selfe fit for that imployment, and under colour of fishing and trade, I got a Master and company for her, to which I sent *Vines* and others my owne servants with their provision for trade and discovery, appointing them to leave the Ship and Ships Company for to follow their businesse in the usuall place,(for I knew they would not be drawn to seek by any meanes) by these and the help of those Natives formerly sent over, I came to be truly informed of so much as gave me assurance that in time I should want no undertakers, though as yet I was forced to hire Men to stay there the Winter Quarter at extream rates, and not without danger, for that the War had consumed the Bashaba, and the most of the great Sagamores, with such Men of Action as followed them, and those that remained were sore afflicted with the Plague, for that the Country was in a manner left void of Inhabitants ; Notwithstanding, *Vines* and the rest with him that lay in the Cabbins with those People that dyed some more, some lesse, mightily, (blessed be *GOD* for it) not one of them ever felt their heads to ake while they stayed there ; and this course I held some years together, but nothing to my private profit, for what I got one way I spent another, so that I began to grow weary of that businesse as not for my turne till better times.

CHAPTER XI.

Captain Harles *comming to me with a new proposition of other hopes.*

WHile I was labouring by what meanes I might best continue life in my languishing hopes, there comes one Captain *Henry Harley* unto me, bringing with him a Native of the Island of *Capawick*, a place seated to the Southward of *Cape Codd* whose name was *Epenewe* a person of a goodly stature, strong and well proportioned, this man was taken upon the main with some twenty nine others by a ship of *London* that endeavoured to sell them for slaves in *Spaine*, but being understood that they were *Americans*, and found to be unapt for their uses, they would not meddle with them, this being one of them they refused, wherein they exprest more worth then those that brought them to the market, who could not but know that our Nation was at that time in travaile for setling of Christian Colonies upon that continent, it being an act much tending to our prejudice, when we came into that part of the Countries, as it shall further appeare; how Captaine *Harley* came to be possessed of this *Savage*, I know not, but I understood by others how he had been shewed in *London* for a wonder, it is true (as I have said) he was a goodly man of a brave aspect, stout and sober in his demeanor, and had learned so much *English* as to bid those that wondred at him, welcome, welcome, this being the last and best use they could make of him, that was now growne out of the peoples wonder, the Captain, falling further into his familiarity, found him to be of acquaintance and friendship with those subject to the *Bashaba*, whom the Captain well knew, being himselfe one of the Planta-

tion, sent over by the Lord chiefe justice, and by that means understood much of his language, found out the place of his birth, nature of the Country, their severall kinds of commodities, and the like, by which he conceived great hope that good might be made of him, if meanes could be found for his imployment, but finding adventurers of that kind were worne out of date; after so many saylings, and so soone upon the return of our late Colony, but the Gentleman calling to mind my aptnesse to designes of that nature, lays up his rest to discover his greatest secrets to me, by whom had hoped to rise or fall in this action, after he had spoken with me, and that I had seen his *Savage*, though I had some reason to beleive the Gentleman in what he told me, yet I thought it not amisse to take some time before I undertook a businesse (as I thought) so improbable in some particulars, but yet I doubted not, my resolution being such (as is said) I might make some use of his service; And therefore wisht him to leave him with me, giving him my word, that when I saw my time to send againe to those parts, he should have notice of it, and I would be glad to accept of his service, and that with as great kindnesse as he freely offered it, in the meane time, he might be pleased to take his owne course.

CHAPTER XII.

The reasons of my undertaking the imployment for the Island of Capawick.

AT the time this new *Savage* came unto me, I had recovered *Assacumet*, one of the Natives I sent with Captain *Chalownes* in his unhappy imployment, with whom I lodged *Epenaw*, who at the first hardly understood one the

the others speech, till after a while; I perceived the difference was no more then that, as ours is betweene the Northern and Southerne people, so that I was a little eased in the use I made of my old servant whom I ingaged to give account of what he learned by conference between themselves; and he as faithfully performed it; Being fully satisfied of what he was able to say, and the time of making ready, drawing on, following my pretended designes; I thought it became me to acquaint the thrice honoured Lord of *South-Hampton* with it, for that I knew the Captain had some relation to his Lordship, and I not willing in those daies, to undertake any matter extraordinary without his Lordships advice, who approved of it so well that he adventured 100 *l.* in that imployment, and his Lordship being at that time Commander of the Isle of *Wight*, where the Captain had his abiding under his Lordship, who out of his nobleneſſe was pleased to furnish me with some land Souldiers, and to commend to me a grave Gentleman, one Captain *Hobson*, who was willing to go that voyage, and to adventure 100 *l.* himselfe. To him I gave the command of the Ship, all things being ready, and the company came together, attending but for a faire winde; they set saile in *June*, in *Anno* 1614. being fully instructed how to demeane themselves in every kind, carrying with them *Epenow*, *Assacomet*, and *Wanape*, another Native of those parts sent me out of the Isle of *Wight* for my better information in the parts of the Country of his knowledge, when as it pleased God that they were arrived upon the coast they were Pilotted from place to place, by the Natives themselves, as well as their hearts could desire; And comming to the Harbour where *Epenow* was to make good his undertaking, the principall inhabitants of the place came aboard, some of them being his Brothers, others his near Couzens, who after they had communed together and were kindly entertained by the Captain, departed in their Cannowes, promising the next morning to come aboard again, and bring some trade with them: But *Epenow* privately (as it appeared)

peared) had contracted with his friends, how he might make his escape without performing what he had undertaken, being in truth no more then he had told me he was to do though with losse of his life, for otherwise if it were found that he had discovered the secrets of his Country, he was sure to have his braines knockt out as soone as he came a shoar, for that cause I gave the Captaine strict charge to endeavour by all meanes to prevent his escapeing from them, and for the more surety, I gave order to have three Gentlemen of my owne kinred to be ever at hand with him, cloathing him with long garments, fitly to be laid hold on, if occasion should require; Notwithstanding all this, his friends being all come at the time appointed with twenty Cannows, and lying at a certaine distance with their Bows ready, the Captaine calles to them to come aboard, but they not moving, he speakes to *Epenow* to come unto him, where he was in the fore castle of the Ship, he being then in the wast of the Ship between two of the Gentlemen that had him in gard, start, suddainly from them, and comming to the Captaine, calls to his friends in *English* to come aboard, in the interim slips himselfe over board, and although he were taken hold of by one of the company, yet being a strong and heavy Man, could not be stayed, and was no sooner in the water, but the Natives sent such a showre of arrowes, and came withall desperately so neer the Ship, that they carryed him away in despight of all the Musquetteers aboard, who were for the number as good as our nation did afford; And thus were my hopes of that particular made void and frustrate, and they returned without doing more, though otherwise ordered how to have spent that summer to good purpose; but such are the fruits to be looked for, by imploying men Men more zealous of gain than frought with experience how to make it.

Two Brothers of Sturtons *and* Master Mathewes.

CHAP. XIII.

CHAPTER XIII.

Sir Richard Hakings *undertook by authority from the Councell of the second Colonie to trie what service he could do them as President for that yeare.*

HAving received his Commission and Instructions, he departed in *October* 1615, and spent the time of his being in those parts in searching of the Country, and finding out the commodities thereof, but the war was at the height and the principall Natives almost destroyed, so that his observation could not be such as could give account of any new matter, more than formerly had been received, from thence he past along the coast to *Virginia*, & stay'd there some time, in expectation of what he could not be satisfied in, so took his next course for *Spain*, to make the best of such commodities he had got together, as he coasted from place to place having sent his Ship laden with Fish to the Market before, and this was all that was done by any of us that yeare.

CHAPTER XIV.

Of the sending of Captaine Rocraft *to meete with Captaine* Dermor *in* New-England.

ABOUT this time I received letters from Captaine *Dermor* out of *New-England*, giving me to understand that

that there was one of my Savages sent into those parts brought from *Malago* in a Ship of *Bristol*, acquainting me with the meanes I might recover him, which I followed and had him sent me, who was after imployed with others in the voyage with Captaine *Hobson* sent to *Capawike* as is abovesaid, by this Savage Captaine *Dermot* understood so much of the state of his Country, as drew his affections wholly to follow his hopes that way, to which purpose he writes, that if I pleased to send a Commission to meete him in *New-England*, he would endeavour to come from the *New-found Land* to receive it, and to observe such other instructions as I pleased to give him, whereupon the next season I sent
Anno 1619. Captaine *Rocraft* with a company I had of purpose hired for the service. At his arrivall upon the coast he met with a small Barque of *Deepe*, which he seized upon according to such liberties as was granted unto him in such cases, notwithstanding, the poore *French*-Man being of our Religion, I was easily perswaded upon his petition to give content for his losse, although it proved much to dammage afterwards, for Captaine *Rocraft* being now shipped and furnished with all things necessary, left the Coast contrary to my directions, and went to *Virginia*, where he had formerly dwelt, and there falling into company with some of his old acquaintance, a quarrell happened between him and another, so that before he could get away he was slaine, by which accident the Barque was left at random, (the most part of the company being on shoar) a storme arising, she was cast away, and all her provisions lost, something was saved but nothing ever came to my hands.

CHAP. XV.

CHAPTER XV.

Of my imployment of Captain Dormer *after his faylings to come from the* New-found *land to* New-England.

CAptain *Dormer* being disappointed of his meanes to come from *New-found-land*, to *New-England*, took shipping for *England*; and came to me at *Plymouth* where I gave him an account of what I had done, and he me, what his hopes were, to be able to do me service (if I pleased) to imploy him, hereupon I conferred his informations, together with mine owne I received by severall wayes, and found them to agree in Many the particulars of higheſt consequence and beſt considerations, whereupon I dispatched him away with the company he had gotten together, as faſt as my owne Ship could be made ready for her ordinary imployment, sending with him what he thought necessary, hopeing to have met Captaine *Rocraft*, where he was assigned to attend till he received further directions from me, but at the Ships arrivall they found Captain *Rocraft* gone for *Virgina*, with all his company in the Barque he had taken, of which before Captaine *Dormer* arriving, and seeing *Rocraft* gon, was much perplexed, yet so resolved he was, that he ceased not to follow his designe with the Men and Meanes which I had sent him, and so shaped his course from *Sagadahock* in 44 degrees to *Capawike* being in 41 and 36 minutes, sending me a journall of his proceeding, with the description of the Coast all along as he pas'd. Passing by *Capawike*, he continued his course along the coast from Harbour to Harbour till he came to *Virginia*, where he expected to meete with *Rocraft* (as afore) but finding him dead, and all lost that should have sup- *Anno* 1619.

ply'd him, he was forced to shift as he could to make his returne, and comming to *Capawike* and *Nautican*, and going first to *Nautican* and from thence to *Capawike*, he set himselfe and some of his people on shoar, where he mee with *Epenow* the *Savage*, who had escaped (of whom) before, : This *Savage* speaking some *English*, laughed at his owne escape, and reported the story of it, Mr. *Dormer* tould him he came from mee, and was one of my servants, and that I was much grieved he had beene so ill used, as to be forced to steale away ; this *Savage* was so cunning, that after he had questioned him about me and all he knew belonged unto me, conceived he was come on purpose to betray him, and conspired with some of his fellowes to take the Captaine, thereupon they laid hands upon him, but he being a brave stoute Gentleman, drew his Sword and freed himselfe, but not without fourteen wounds, this disaster forced him to make all possible hast to *Virginia* to be cured of his wounds ; at the second returne he had the misfortune to fall sick and die of the infirmity many of our Nation are subject unto at their first comming into those parts ; the losse of this Man, I confesse, much troubled me, and had almost made me resolve never to intermeddle in any of those courses.

CHAPTER XVI.

The reasons of endeavouring to renew our first Patent and to establish the forme of Government by way of Corporation at PLYMOUTH.

AFter I had made so many trialls of the State and Commodities of the Country, and Nature and Condition of

of the People, and found all things agreeable to the ends I aymed at from the first, I thought it sorted with Reason and Justice to use the like diligence, order, and care for our affaires in the Northern Plantation, the Company of *Virginia* for the Southern, with some alteration of the forme of Government, as more proper (in our judgement) for affaires of that kinde, and like enlargement of the borders, beginning where they ended at 40 degrees and from thence to 48 Northwards, and into the land from Sea to Sea; of this my resolution I was bould to offer the founder considerations to divers of his Majesties honourable Privy Councell, who had so good liking thereunto, as they willingly became interested themselves therein as Patentees, and Councellours for the managing of the businesse, by whose favours I had the easier passage in the obtaining his Majesties Royall Charter to be granted us according to his warrant to the then Solicitor Generall, the true Copy whereof followeth (*viz.*) To Sir *Thomas Coventry* Knight, his Majesties Solicitor Generall.

W*Hereas it is thought fit that a Patent of Incorporation be granted to the Adventurers of the Northern Colonie in* Virginia, *to containe the like Liberties, Priviledges, Power, Authorities, Lands and all other things within their limits,* (viz.) *between the degrees of* 40 *and* 48, *as were heretofore granted to the company in* Virginia, *excepting onely that whereas the said company have a Freedom of Custome & Subsidie for* 21 *yeares, and of Impositions for ever, this new Company is to be free of Custome and Subsidie for the like terme of yeares, and of Impositions after so long time as his Majesty shall please to grant unto them, this shall be therefore to will and require you to prepare a Patent ready for his Majesties Royall Signature to the purpose aforesaid, leaving a blank for the time of freedome from imposition to be supplyed, and put in by his Majesty, for which this shall be your warrant,* dated 23 July 1620

Signed by the
- L. Chancellour.
- L. Privy Seale.
- Earl of Arundell.
- Mr. Secretary Calvert.
- Mr. of the Rolls.
- Lord Digby.
- Mr. Comptroler.
- Mr. Secretary Naunton.
- Mr. of the Wards.

CHAPTER XVII.

Shewing the troubles I underwent by the reason of the company of Virginia's *exceptions, taken at the Patent granted by the Lords and others for the affaires of* NEW-ENGLAND.

I have briefly given you an accompt of the failings and disasters of what hath past in those my former and forreigne undertakings, I will now (with your patience) let you see some of my troubles I met with where I might have hoped for a comfortable encouragement, but such is (we commonly see) the condition of humane Nature that what is well intended and confidently pursued by a publique spirit, is notwithstanding sometimes by others made subject to exceptions and so prosecuted as a matter worthy of reprehension, so fared it with me at this present, for I had no sooner past the Patent under the great Seale, but certaine of the company of *Virginia* tooke exceptions thereat, as conceiving it tended much to their prejudice in that they were debarred the intermeddling within our limits who had formerly excluded us, from having to do with theirs, hereupon severall complaints were made to the King and Lords of the Privy Counsell, who after many deliberate hearings, and large debate on both sides, saw no cause wherefore we should not injoy what the King had granted us, as well as they what the King had granted them, especially having obtained from him so many gratious favours over and above our aymes, as namely severall free gifts, divers great salaries, and other great advantages to the value (as I have understood) of five or six hundred thousand pound whereas our ambition onely aymed

aymed at the enjoying of his Majesties favour and justice to protect and support us in our freedomes, that we might peaceably reape the benefits of *GOD*'s gratious gifts, raised by our owne Industryes, without any of their helpe or hinderances, our desires being so faire that all that were not over partiall, easily assented thereunto, and ordered it accordingly, as by the same it may appeare, but that could not satisfie, for I was plainly tould, that howsoever I had sped before the Lords, I should heare more of it the next Parliament, assuring me that they would have 300 voices more than I, whereupon I replyed, If justice could be overthrown by voices, it should not grieve me to loose what I had so honestly gotten; the next Parliament was no sooner assembled, but I found it too true wherewith I was formerly threatned, as you may see it following.

CHAPTER XVII.

My being Summoned to appeare in the House of Parliament *to answer what was to be objected against the Patent of* NEW-ENGLAND.

THE whole house being dissolved into a Committee, Sir *Edward Cook*, being in the chaire, I was called for to the Barre, where after some space it pleased him to tell me that the House understood that there was a Patent granted to me, and diverse other noble persons therein nominated for the establishing of a Colony in *New England*, this (as it seemes) was a grievance of the *Common-wealth*, and so complained of in respect of many particulars therein contained contrary

to the Lawes and priviledges of the subjects, as also that it was a Monopoly, and the colour of planting a Colony put upon it for particular ends, and private gaine, which the House was to looke unto and to Minister justice to all parties, assuring me further that I should receive nothing but justice, and that the House would do no wrong to any, that I was a Gentleman of Honour and worth, but the Publique was to be respected before all particulars, but before they could descend to other matters in the businesse, the Patent was to be brought into the House, therefore he required the delivery of it.

To this generall Charge and speciall Command I humbly replyed, that for my owne part, I was but a particular person, and inferior to many, to whom the Patent was granted, having no power to deliver it, without their assents, neither in truth was it in my custody, but being demanded who had it, I answered that it remained still (for ought I knew) in the Crowne office, where it was left since the last Parliament, for that it was resolved to be renewed for the amendment of some faults contained therein, from whence if it pleased the House, they might command it, and dispose thereof as their wisedomes thought it good. But to the generall Charge I know not (under favour) how any action of that kind could be a grievance to the publique, seeing at first it was undertaken for the advancement of Religion, the enlargement of the bounds of our Nation, the increase of trade, and the imployment of many thousands of all sorts of people.

That I conceived it could not be esteemed a Monopoly, though it is true at the first discovery of the coast few were interested in the charge thereof, for many could not be drawn to adventure in actions of that kind where they were assured of losse, and small hopes of gain.

And indeed so many adventures had been made, and so many losses sustained and received, that all or the most part that tasted thereof grew weary, till now it is found

found by our conſtant perſeverance therein, that ſome profit by a courſe of fiſhing, upon that coaſt, may be made extraordinary, which was never intended to be converted to private uſes by any grant obtained by us from his Majeſty, as by the ſeverall offers made to all the Maritine Cities and Townes in the Weſterne parts, that pleaſed to partake of the Liberties, and Immunities granted to us by his Majeſty, which was deſired principally for our warrant to regulate thoſe affaires, the better to ſetle the publique Plantation by the profits to be raiſed by ſuch as ſought the benefit thereof, (being no more in effect) then many private Gentlemen, and Lords of mannors within our owne Countries injoyed at this preſent, and that both agreeable to the laws and juſtice of our Nation without offence to the ſubjects Liberties; But for my particular, I was glad of the preſent occaſion that had ſo happily called them together from all parts of the Kingdome, to whom I was humbly bold in the behalfe of my ſelfe and the reſt of thoſe intruſted in the Pattent to make preſent proffer thereof to the Houſe for the Generall eſtate of the whole Kingdome, ſo they would proſecute the ſetling the Plantation, as from the firſt was intended, wherein we would be their humble ſervants in all that lay in our power, without looking back to the great charge that had been expended in the diſcovery, and ſeizure of the coaſt, and bringing it to the paſſe it was come unto. That what was more to be ſaid to the Patent for the preſent, I humbly prayed I might receive in particular, to the end I might be the better furniſhed to give them anſwer thereunto by my Councell, at ſuch time they pleaſed to heare me againe, being confident, I ſhould not onely have their approbation in the further proſecuting ſo well grounded a deſigne, but their furtherance alſo, howſoever I was willing to ſubmit the whole to their honourable cenſures, hereupon it was ordered, that the Patent ſhould be looked into by a Committee aſſigned for that purpoſe, and the exceptions taken againſt it

it delivered to me, that had a prefixed day to attend them againe with my Councell at Law to answer to those their objections.

CHAPTER XIX.

My second appearance with my Councell.

THE time assigned being come, and I not receiving their objections (as by the House it was ordered) I attended without my Councell, in that I wanted upon which to build my instructions for preparing them as in duty I ought, but being called I humbly told them, that in obedience to their commands, I attended to receive the Houses objections against the Patent of *New-England*, but it was not yet come to my hands, where the fault was I knew not, and therefore I besought them to assigne me a new day, and to order I might have it delivered to me as was intended, or otherwise if they so pleased, I was ready without my Councell to answer what could be objected, doubting, they might conceive, I sought by delayes to put off the businesse: to this it was answered by Sir *Edward Cooke*, that I had gained great favour of the House to receive the particulars in writing, by which I was able to plead my own cause (though as yet I had it not) but I acknowledged the greatnesse of their favours, and attended their further commands, according to the time assigned.

CHAPTER XX.

My appearance the third time, together with my Councell *at* Law.

HAving received the Houses exceptions against the patent, I drew up my full answers to every particular, and entertained for my councell Mr. *Finch* of *Grayes Inne* (since that the Lord *Finch*) and Mr. *Galtrup*, afterwards Atturney Generall of the Court of Wards; To these I delivered my instructions, assigning them to proceed accordingly, but, as in great Causes before great States, where the Court seemes to be a party, Councell oftentimes is shye of wading farther than with their safety they may returne; however, both did so well, the one for the matter of Justice, the other for the matter of Law, as in Common Judgement the Objections were fully answered, and they seeming to be at a stand; the House demanded of me what I had more to say my selfe, I being sensible wherein my Councell came short of my intentions, besought the House to take into their grave considerations, that the most part of the Fisher-Men spoken of, had in obedience to his Majesties Royall Grant, conformed themselves thereunto, and I hoped that they were but particular persons that opposed themselves against it, but admit all of them had joyned together, (yet had that belonged rather to the Councell for those affaires) to have complained of them, for the many injuries and outrages done by them, that the Councell of their owne charge and cost, had first discovered that goodly coast, and found that hopefull meanes to settle a flourishing Plantation for the good of this Kingdom in generall, as well great Lords as Knights, Esquires, Gentlemen, Merchants, Fisher-Men, Trades-Men, Husband-Men, Labourers, and the like, and that both to honour and profit, that the enlargement of the Kings

Dominions, with the advancement of Religion in those desert parts, are matters of highest consequence, and far exceeding a simple and disorderly course of Fishing, which would soone be given over, for that so goodly a Coast could not be long left unpeopled by the *French*, *Spanish*, or *Dutch*, so that if the Plantation be destroyed, the Fishing is lost, and then the profit and honour of our Nation must perish (in all opinion) both to present and future ages, which these Men principally aymed at, that the mischiefe already sustained by those disorderly Persons, are inhumane and intollerable; for first in their manners and behaviour they are worse than the very Savages, impudently and openly lying with their Women, teaching their Men to drinke drunke, to sweare and blaspheme the Name of *GOD*, and in their drunken humour to fall together by the eares, thereby giving them occasion to seek revenge; besides, they couzen and abuse the Savages in trading and trafficking, selling them Salt covered with Butter in stead of so much Butter, and the like couzenages and deceipts, both to bring the Planters and all our Nation into contempt and disgrace, thereby to give the easier passage to those People that dealt more righteously with them; that they sell unto the Savages, Musquets, Fowling-Pieces, Powder, Shot, Swords, Arrow-Heads, and other Armes, wherewith the Savages slew many of those Fisher-Men, and are growne so able, & so apt, as they become most dangerous to the Planters: and I concluded,

That in this particular I had beene drawne out of my zeale to my Countryes happinesse, to engage my estate so deeply as I had done, and having but two Sonnes, I adventured the life of one of them (who is there at this present) for the better advancement thereof, with others of his Kinsmen of his owne name with many other private friends) which so neerly concerned me, that if I did expresse more passion than ordinary in the delivery thereof, I hoped the House would be pleased to pardon me, affirming, that if I should do lesse, I might appeare willing to suffer them to perish by my Negligence, Connivence, Improvidence

provdence, or Ungratefulneſſe, to the dishonour of my Nation, and burden of my owne Conſcience, but theſe things being conſidered, I preſume the Honourable aſſembly will do what in all reſpects ſhall be both juſt and lawfull, and that in confidence thereof, I wil ceaſe to be further troubleſome.

CHAPTER XXI.

What followed upon my anſwer to the Houſes exceptions.

BEing perſwaded in my owne underſtanding, as well as in the judgement of thoſe that accompanied me I had ſufficeintly ſatisfied the moſt part of the Houſe, the rather for that they forbad the Lawyers to ſpeake any more, after I began to deliver what I had to ſay for my ſelfe, with this hope I departed attending the ſucceſſe, but underſtanding (from thoſe that were favourers and parties with me) that my oppoſites held their reſolutions to make it a Publique Grievance, and for ſuch, to preſent it to his Majeſty.

Hereupon I thought it became me to uſe my beſt meanes his Majeſty might have ſight of their exceptions and my anſwers, which accordingly was performed; ſo that at the time the Houſes preſented the Publique Grievances of the Kingdome, that of the Patent of *New-England* was the firſt, wherein was declared, that having heard me and my Learned Councell ſeverall dayes, but that I could not defend the ſame, which the King obſerving was a little moved, finding the matter was made greater than the cauſe required; this their Publique Declaration of the Houſes, diſlike of the cauſe, ſhooke of all my adventurers for Plantation, and made many of the Patentees to quit their Intereſt, ſo that in all likelyhood I muſt fall under the

weight of so heavy a burthen, but the justnesse of my cause being truly apprehended by the King, from which I understood, he was not to be drawne to overthrow the Corporation he so much approoved of in his owne judgement, and I was wished not to omit the prosecution thereof, as cause required, but I thought better to forbeare for the present, in honour and respect of what had past in so publique a manner betweene the King and his House of Commons, who shortly after upon severall reasons, rising from particular persons, who (as it seemed) were more liberall in their language than became them, trenching farther upon the Kings Prerogative Power, he thought to be tolerated as doubting of the consequence thereof, whereupon the Parliament was dismissed, divers of those free speakers committed to the Tower, others to other Prisons, so that now I was called upon to attend those affaires on severall accidents that happened. As first, for that the *French* Embassadour made challenge to those Territories granted us by the King our Soveraigne, in the behalfe of the King of *France*, his Master, as belonging to his Subjects, that by his authority were possessed thereof as a part of *Nova France*, to which I was commanded by the King to give answer to the Embassadour his claime, which was sent me from the Lord Treasurer under the title of *Le Memoriall de Monsieur Seigneur Le Conte de Tillieres, Ambassadeur pour Le Royde France*; Whereunto I made so full a reply (as it seemes) there was no more heard of that their claime. But as Captaine *Dormer*, who (as I said) was coasting that Country, met with some Hollanders that were setled in a place we call *Hudson's River*, in trade with the Natives, who in the right of our Patent forbad them the place, as being by his Majestie appointed to us; there answer was, they understood no such thing, nor found any of our Nation there, so that they hoped they had not offended; However, this their communication removed them not, but upon our complaining of their intrusion to his Majesty, order was given to his Embassadours to deale with the States, to know by what warrant any of their Subjects tooke upon them to settle within

thos

those limits by him granted to his Subjects who were royally seized of a part thereof; to which was answered, that they knew of no suchthing, if there were any, it was without their authority, and that they onely had enacted the company for the affaires of the *West-Indies*; this answer being returned, made us to prosecute our businesse, and to resolve of the removing of those Interlopers to force them to submit to the Government of those to whome that place belonged. Thus you may see how many burthens I travailed under of all sides, and yet not come near my journies end.

CHAPTER XXII.

Of the Descent of Mr. Perce, *Mr.* Day, *others their* Associates, *within our limits being bound for* Virginia.

BEfore the unhappy controversie hapned between those of *Virginia*, and my selfe (as you have heard) they were forced through the great charge they had been at, to hearken to any propositions that might give ease and furtherance to so hopefull a businesse; to that purpose, it was referred to their considerations how necessary it was, that means might be used to draw into those enterprises some of those families that had retired themselves into *Holland* for scruple of conscience, giving them such freedome and liberty, as might stand with their likings, this advice being hearkned unto, there were that undertook the putting it in practise, and accordingly brought it to effect so far forth, as that the three ships (such as their weake fortunes were able to provide) whereof two proved unserviceable and so were

left behind, the third with great difficulty recovered the coast of *New-England*, where they landed their people, many of them weake and feeble through the length of the Navigation, the leakinesse of the ship, and want of many other necessaries such undertakings required; but they were not many daies a shoar before they had gotten both health and strength, through the comfort of the Ayr, the store of fish and fowle, with plenty of wholsome rootes and hearbs the Country affoarded; besides the civill respect the Natives used towards them, tending much to their happinesse in so great extremity they were in, after they had well considered the state of their affaires and found that the Authority they had from the Company of *Virginia* could not warrant their abode in that place, which they found so prosperous and pleasing to them, they hastned away their ship, with order to their Sollicitor to deale with me, to be a meanes they might have a grant from the Councell of *New Englands* affaires to settle in the place, which was accordingly performed to their particular satisfaction and good content of them all, which place was after called *New-Plymouth*, where they have continued ever since very peaceable, and in all plenty of all necessaries that nature needeth, if that could satisfie our vaine affections, where I will leave them for the present.

CHAPTER XXIII.

My Son Captain Robert Gorges sent *by Authority of the Councell for those affaires, as their* Lievtenant Generall.

THE severall complaints made to the Councell of the abuses committed by severall the Fishermen, and other

ther Interlopers, who without order from them frequented those coasts, tending to the scorne of our Nation, both to the ordinary mixing themselves with their women, and other beastly demeanors, tending to Drunkenesse to the overthrow of our trade and dishonour of the Government.

For reformation whereof, and to prevent the evils that may ensue, they were pleased to resolve of the sending some one into those parts, as their Lieutenant, to regulate the estate of their affaires and those abuses, hereupon my Son *Robert Gorges* being newly come out of the *Venetian* War, was the man they were pleased to pitch upon being one of the company, and interested in a proportion of the land with the rest of the Patentees, in the Bay of the *Majechewsett* containing ten miles in breadth, and thirty miles into the maine land, who between my Lord *Gorges* and my selfe, was speedily sent away into the said Bay of *Massechewset*, where he arrived about the beginning of *August* following, *Anno* 1623. that being the place he resolved to make his residence, as proper for the Publique, as well as for his private, where landing his provisions, and building his storehouses, he sent to them of *New-Plymouth* (who by his Commission were authorised to be his assistants) to come unto him, who willingly obeyed his order, and as carefully discharged their duties ; by whose experience he suddainely understood what was to be done with the poore meanes he had, beleiving the supplyes he xpected would follow, according to the undertakings of divers his familiar friends who had promised as much ; but they hearing how I sped in the House of Parliament withdrew themselves, and my selfe and friends were wholly disabled to do any thing to purpose. The report of these proceedings with us, comming to my Sons eares, he was advised to return home, till better occasion should offer it selfe unto him.

Here

Here followes my Son Captaine Gorges Patent.

To all whom these presents shall come, the Councell for the Affaires of NEW-ENGLAND *in* AMERICA; *send Greeting.*

WHereas it hath pleased the Kings Most Excellent Majesty by his Royall Grant, bearing date the third day of *November*, in the eighteenth year of his Majesties Reigne over this his Highness Realme of *England*, *&c.* For divers causes therein expressed, absolutly to give, grant, and confirme unto us the said Councell and our Successours, all the foresaid Land of *New-England*, lying and being from fourty to fourty eight degrees of Northerly Latitude, and in length by all that breadth aforesaid, from Sea to Sea throughout the Main Land, together with all the Woods, Waters, Rivers, Soyles, Havens, Harbours, Islands, and other Commodities whatsoever thereunto belonging, with all Priviledges, Preheminencies, Proffits, and Liberties by Sea and Land, as by the said Grant, amongst other things therein contained, more at large appeareth. Now know all Men by these Presents, that we the Councell of *New England*, for and in respect of the good and speciall service done by Sir *Ferdinando Gorges* Knight to the Plantation, from the first attempt thereof unto this present, as also for many other causes, us hereunto moving, and likewise for and in consideration of the payment of one hundred and sixty pounds of lawfull

English

English Money unto the hands of our Treasurer, by *Robert Gorges* Sonne of the said Sir *Ferdinando Gorges* Knight, whereof, and of every part and parcell whereof the said *Robert Gorges* his Heires Executors and Assignes are for ever acquitted and discharged by these presents, have given, granted and confirmed, and by these presents, do give grant and confirme unto the said *Robert Gorges*, his Heires and Assignes for ever, all that part of the Main Land in *New-England* aforesaid, commonly called or knowne by the name of *Messachustack*, situate lying and being upon the North-East side of the Bay, called or knowne by the name of *Messachuset*, or by what other name or names soever it be, or shall be called or knowne, together with all the Shoars and Coasts along the Sea, for ten *English* miles in a streight line towards the North-East, accounting one thousand seven hundred sixty yards to the mile, and thirty *English* miles (after the same rate) unto the Main Land through all the breadth aforesaid, together with all the Islets and Islands, lying within three miles of any part of the said lands(except such Islands as are formerly granted,) together also with all the Lands, Rivers, Mines and Mineralls, Woods, Quarryes, Marshes, Waters, Lakes, Fishings, Huntings, Fowlings, and Commodities and Hereditaments whatsoever, with all and singular their appurtenances, together with all Prerogatives, Rights, Jurisdictions, and Royalties, and power of Judicature in all Causes and Matters whatsoever Criminal, Capital and Civil, arising, or which may hereafter arise within the Limits, Bounds, and Precincts aforesaid, to be executed according to the great Charter of *England*, and such Lawes as shall be hereafter established by Publique Authority of the State assembled in Parliament in *New-England*, to be executed and excercised by the said *Robert Gorges* his Heires and Assignes, or his or their Deputies, Lievtenants, Judges, Stewards, or other officers thereunto by him or them assigned, deputed or appointed from time to time, with all other Priviledges, Franchises, Liberties, and Immunities, with Escheats and casualties thereof arising, or which shall or may hereafter arise within

the said Limits and Precincts, with all the Interest, Right, Title, Claime, and Demand whatsoever, which we the said Councell and our Successours now of right have or ought to have, and claime or may have, or acquire hereafter in or to the said portion of Lands, and Islands, or any the Premisses, in as free, ample, large and beneficiall manner to all intents, constructions, and purposes whatsoever, as we the said Councell by his Majesties said Letters-Patents, may, or can grant the same (saving and alwayes reserving) unto the said Councell, and their Successours, and to the court of Parliament hereafter to be in *New-England* aforesaid, and to either of them power to receive, heare, and determine all and singlar Appeale and Appeales of every person and persons whatsoever, dwelling or inhabiting within the said Territories, and Islands, or either or any of them to the said *Robert Gorges* granted as aforesaid, of and from all Judgments, and Sentences whatsoever given within the said Territories, to have and to hould all and every the Lands and Premisses above by these presents granted (except before excepted) with their and every of their Appurtenances with all the Royalties, Jurisdictions, Mines, Mineralls, Woods, Fishing, Fowling, Hunting, Waters, Rivers, and all other Profits, Commodities, and Hereditaments whatsoever, within the Precincts aforesaid, or to the said Lands, Islands, or Premisses, or any of them in any wise belonging, or appertaining, to the said *Robert Gorges* his Heires and Assignes for ever, to the onely proper use and behoofe of the said *Robert Gorges*, his Heires and Assignes for ever more; to be held of the said Councell, and their Successors, *per Gladium Comitatus*, that is to say, by finding 4 able Men conveniently armed or arrayed for the Warres to attend upon the Governour for any service within fourteen dayes after warning, and yeilding, and paying unto the said Councell one fiftieth part of all the Oare of the Mines of Gold and Silver, which shall be had, possessed, and obtained within the Precincts aforesaid, for all services and demands whatsoever, to be delivered into the Tower of *London* in *England*, to and for the use of his Majesty his Heires and Successours from time to time;

And

And lastly know ye, that we the said Councell have Deputed, Authorized, and Appointed, and in our place and stead have put *David Thomson* Gent. or in his absence any other person that shall be their Governour, or other Officer unto the said Councell, to be our true and lawfull Attourney and Attourneys, and in our name and stead to enter into the said Lands, and other the Premisses with their Appurtenances, or into some part thereof in the name of the whole, for us and in our names to have and take Possession and Seisin thereof, and after such Possession and Seisin thereof, or of some other part thereof had and taken, then for us and in our name to deliver the same unto the said *Robert Gorges* or his Heires, or to his or their certain Attourney or Attourneys to be by him or his heires appointed in that behalfe, according to the true intent and meaning of these Presents, Ratifying, Confirming, and Allowing, all and whatsoever our Attourney or Attourneys shall do in or about the Premisses, or in part thereof by vertue of these Presents. In witnesse whereof, we have affixed our Common Seale, the thirtieth day of *December* in the yeare of the Reigne of our Sovereign Lord *JAMES* by the Grace of *GOD* of *England*, *France* and *Ireland*, King, Defendor of the Faith, *&c.* the twentieth, and of *Scotland* the fifty sixth.

Lenox Hamilton.
Arrundell Surrey.
Barn. Goach.
Robert Mansell.
Wi. Boles.

CHAPTER XXIV.

Captaine John Masons *the meanes of Interesting the* Scotish *Nation into that of* New-Scotland.

CAptaine *John Mason* was himselfe a man of action and had been sometime Governour of a Plantation in the *New-Found-land*, his time being expired there, he returned into *England*, where he met with Sir *William Alexander* who was Mr. of requests to his Majesty for the realme of *Scotland*, but since Earle of *Starline*, who hearing of Captaine *Masons* late comming out of the *New-Found-land* was desirous to be acquainted with him. To that end he invited him to his house, and after he had throughly informed himselfe of the estate of that Country, he declared his affection to Plantation, and wisht the Captaine to be a means to procure him a Grant of the Planters thereof for a portion of land with them, who effected what he desired. The Captaine understanding how far forth I had proceeded in the businesse of *New-England*, advised him to deale with me for a part of what we might conveniently spare, without our prejudice within the bounds of our Grant. Sir *William Alexander* intending to make himselfe sure of his purpose, procured his Majesty (for what could they not do in those times in such cases) to send to me to assigne him a part of our Territories, his Majesties gracious message was to me, as a command agreeing with his pleasure, to have it so. Whereupon an instrument was presently drawn for the bounding thereof, which was to be called *New-Scotland*, which afterwards was Granted him by the King

under

under the Seale of *Scotland*. Thus much I thought fit to inſert by the way, that poſterity might know the ground, from whence buſineſſes of that nature had their originall.

CHAPTER XXV.

Lievtenant Colonell *Norton* undertaking to ſetle a Plantation on the River of *Agomentico*, if I pleaſed to beare a part with him and his Aſſociates, this Gentleman was one I had long known, who had raiſed himſelfe from a Souldier, to the quality he had from a Corporall to a Serjant, and ſo upward he was painfull and induſtrious, well underſtanding what belonged to his duties in whatſoever he undertooke, and ſtrongly affected to the buſineſſe of Plantation, having acquainted me of his deſignes, and of his Aſſociates, I gave him my word, I would be his interceſſour to the Lords for obtayning him a Patent for any place he deſired, not already Granted to any other, but conceaving he ſhould be ſo much the better fortified, if he could get me to be an undertaker with him, and his Aſſociates upon his motion; I was contented my Grand-Son *Ferdinando* ſhould be nominated together with him and the reſt, to whom was paſt a Patent of twelve thouſand Acres of land upon the Eaſt-ſide of the River *Agomentico*, and twelve thouſand of Acres more of land on the Weſt-ſide to my ſaid Son *Ferdinando*, hereupon he and ſome of his Aſſociates haſtened to take poſſeſſion of their Territories, carrying with them their Families; and other neceſſary proviſions, and I ſent over for my Son, my Nephew Captaine *William Gorges*, who had been my Lievtenant in the Fort of *Plymouth*, with ſome other Crafts-men for the building of houſes, and erecting of Saw-Mills; And by

other shipping from *Bristoll*, some Cattell with other servants, by which the foundation of the Plantation was laid, and I was the more hopefull of the happy successe thereof, for that I had not far from that place, *Richard Vines*, a Gentleman and Servant of my owne, who was settled there some years before, and had beene interressed in the discovery and seisure thereof for me, as formerly hath been related, by whose diligence and care those my affaires had the better successe, as more at large will appear in its proper place.

CHAPTER XXVI.

What followed the breaking up of the PARLIAMENT *in such discontent.*

THE King not pleased with divers the passages of some particular persons, who in their speeches seemed to trench farther on his Royall Prerogative than stood with his safety and honour to give way unto, suddainly brake off the Parliament, whereby divers were so fearfull what would follow so unaccustomed an action, some of the principall of those liberall speakers being committed to the Tower, others to other Prisons, which tooke all hope of Reformation of Church-Government from many not affecting Episcopal Jurisdiction, nor the usuall practise of the Common Prayers of the Church, whereof there were severall sorts, though not agreeing among themselves, yet all of like dislike of those particulars, some of the discreeter sort to avoid what they found themselves subject unto, made use of their friends to procure from the Councell for the affaires of *New-England* to settle a Colony within their limits, to which it pleased the thrice honoured Lord of *Warwick* to write to me then at *Plimouth*, to condescend that a Patent might be granted to such as then sued for it, whereupon I

gave

gave my approbation so far forth as it might not be prejudiciall to my Sonne *Robert Gorges* interests, whereof he had a Patent under the Seale of the Councell, hereupon there was a Grant passed as was thought reasonable, but the same was after enlarged by his Majesty and confirmed under the great Seale of *England*, by the Authority whereof the undertakers proceeded so effectually, that in a very short time numbers of people of all sorts flocked thither in heapes, that at last it was specially ordered by the Kings command, that none should be suffered to go without licence first had and obtained, and they to take the Oaths of Supremacy and Allegiance, so that what I long before prophesied, when I could hardly get any for money to reside there, wat now brought to passe in a high Measure, the reason of that restraint was grounded upon the severall complaints, that came out of those parts, of the divers sects and schismes that were amongst them, all contemning the publique Government of the Ecclesiasticall State; And it was doubted, that they would in short time, wholly shake off the Royall Iurisdiction of the Soveraigne Magistrate.

The

The Second Booke.

CHAPTER I.

Shewing the reasons of my desire and others my Associates *to resigne the grand* Patent *to his* Majesty, *and the dividing of the Sea coasts between the* Lords *who had continued constant favourers and followers thereof.*

AFter I had past all those failings in my first attempts you have hard of, and had undergone those homestormes afore spoken of by those of *Virginia*, I would willingly have sat down in dispaire of what I aymed at, but was stirred up and incouraged by the most eminent of our company, not to give over the businesse his Majesty did so much approve of, whose gracious favour I should not want, and whereof I had already sufficient proofe. Hereupon I began againe to erect my thoughts how ought might be effected to advance the weak foundation already laid, when as so it pleased God to have it, in the yeare 1621. after the Parliament that then sat brake off in discontent, I was sollicited to consent to the passing of a Patent to certain undertakers who intended to transport themselves into those parts, with their whole Families, as I shewed before. The libertie

bertie they obtained thereby, and the report of their well doing, drew after them multitudes of diſcontented perſons of ſeverall ſects and conditions, in ſo much that they began at laſt to be a peſter to themſelves, threatning a civill war before they had eſtabliſhed a civill form of Government between themſelves, and doubtleſſe had not the patience and wiſedome of Mr. *Wantbrop*, Mr. *Humphreys*, Mr. *Dudly*, and others their aſſiſtants, and others been the greater, much miſchiefe would ſuddainly have overwhelmed them, more then did befall them, notwithſtanding amongſt thoſe great ſwarmes there went many that wanted not love and affection to the Honour of the King, and happineſſe of their Native Country, however they were mixt with thoſe that had the State of the eſtabliſhed Church Government in ſuch ſcorne, and contempt, as finding themſelves in a Countrey of liberty, where tongues might ſpeake with out controule, many fuller of malice, than reaſon, ſpared not to ſpeake the worſt that evill affections could invent, in ſo much that the diſtance of the place could not impeach the tranſportation thereof to the eares of thoſe it moſt concerned, and who were bound in Honour and Juſtice to vindicate the State, he was ſo eminent a ſervant unto.

Hereupon the King and his Councell begin to take into their ſerious conſiderations, the conſequences that might follow ſo unbridled ſpirits, and the Lords intereſted in the Government of thoſe affaires, finding the Kings diſlike thereof, conſidered how to give his Majeſty (and his Councell of State) ſome ſatisfaction for the time to come, *Anno.* 1622. Thereupon it was ordered that none ſhould be ſuffered to paſſe into *New-England*, but ſuch as did take the oaths of Supremacy, and Allegiance; This held ſometime, but was omitted till the yeare 1631. till which time, as the daily reports brought over word of their continued miſdemeanors, for that at laſt, I my ſelfe was called upon (with others) as being the ſupporter and Author of all that was diſtaſtfull : I confeſſed

(indeed) that I had earneſtly ſought by all meanes the planting of thoſe parts by thoſe of our own Nation and that for divers weighty conſiderations approved of by the King and his Councell, but could not expect that ſo many evills ſhould have hapned thereby, this anſwer ſerved for the preſent, but could not wipe away the jealouſie that was had of me, though I laboured continually to put off the ſcandalous opinion of ſuch as daily did endeavour to do me evill offices, which I found with the lateſt, but was thereupon moved to deſire the reſt of the Lords that were the principall actors in the buſineſſe, that we might reſigne our grand Patent to the King, and paſſe particular Patents to our ſelves, of ſuch parts of the Countrey along the Sea coaſt as might be ſufficient for our owne uſes, and ſuch of our private friends, as had affections to works of that nature. To this motion there was a generall aſſent by the Lords, and a day appointed too, for the concluſion thereof.

CHAPTER II.

The meeting of the Lords *for the dividing of the* Coaſt.

THe time being come their Lordſhips had appointed, an act was made for the reſignation of the Patent, with the confirmation of our particulars, where the bounds were thus laid out ; Beginning from the Weſtermoſt parts of our bounds Eaſtwards, where the Lord of *Maugrave* began his limits, and ended the ſame at the river called *Hudſons* river, to the Eaſtward of the river was placed the Duke of *Lenox*, ſince Duke of *Richmond*, to the end of Sixty miles Eaſtward, next to him was placed the Earle of *Carlile*, next to him the Lord *Edward Gorges*, next

next to him was settled the Marquesse *Hamilton*, next to to him Captaine *John Mason*; And lastly my self whose bounds extended from the middest of *Merineck* to the great River of *Sagadehocke* being Sixty miles, and so up into the Maine land one hundred and twenty miles.

CHAPTER III.

The Orders that are settled for the Government of my said Province.

BEing now seized of what I had travelled for above forty yeares, together with the expences of many thousand Pounds, and the best time of my age loaden with troubles and vexations from all parts, as you have heard; I will now give you an account in what Order I have setled my affaires in that my Province of *Maine* with the true forme and manner of the Government, according to the Authority granted me by his Majesties Royal Charter. First, I divided the whole into eight Bailywicks, or Counties, and those againe into Sixteene severall Hundreds, consequently into Parishes and Tythings as People did increase, and the Provinces were inhabited.

CHAPTER IV.

The manner and forme of the Government I have established for the ordering of the Publique Affaires within my Province of MAIN.

FIrst, in my absence I assigned one for my Lievetenant or Deputy, to whome I adjoyned a Chancellour for the determination of all differences arising between party and party, for *Meum & Tuum*, onely next to him I ordained a Treasurer for receipt of the Publique Revenue, to them I added a Marshall for the managing of the Militia, who hath for his Lievetenant a Judge-Marshall, and other Officers to the Marshall Court, where is to be determined all Criminall and Capitall matters, with other misdemeanours or contentions for matters of honour and the like : To these I appointed an Admirall with his Lievetenant or Judge, for the ordering and determining of Maritine Causes, whose Court is onely Capable of what passeth between party and party, concerning Trades and Contracts for Maritine Causes, either within the Province or on the Seas, or in forreigne parts, so far as concernes the Inhabitants, their Factors or Servants (as is usuall here in *England* : Next I ordered a Master of the Ordnance, whose office is to take charge of all the publique stores belonging to the Militia both for Sea and Land, to this I joyne a Secretary for the publique service of my selfe and Councell, these are the Standing Councellours, to whom is added eight Deputies be elected by the Free-houlders of the severall Counties, Councellours for the state of the Country, who are authorized by vertue of their places to sit in any of the aforesaid Courts,

Courts, and to be assistants to the Presidents thereof, and to give their opinions according to justice, &c. That their is no matter of Moment can be determined oft, neither by my selfe, nor by my Lievetenant in my absence, but by the advicea nd assent of the whole body of the Councell, or the greater part of them, sufficiently called and summoned to the Assembly.

That no Judge or other Minister of State to be allowed of, but by the advice and assent of the said Councell, or the greater part of them, as before.

That no Alienation or sale of Land be made to any, but by their Councell and assent, be it by way of gift for reward, or service, or otherwise whatsoever.

That no Man to whom there hath beene any Grant past of any Free-hould, shall alienate the same without the assent and license of the said Councell, first had and obtained.

That in case any Law be to be Enacted, or repealed, Mony to be levyed, or forces raised for publique defence.

The summons thereof to the severall Bailywicks, or Counties, is to be issued out in my name, but with the consent of the said Councell, by vertue whereof, power is to be givento the Free-houlders of the said Counties respectively, to elect and choose two of the most worthy within the said County, as Deputies for the whole, to joyne with the Councell for performance of the service, for which they were called to that assembly, all appeales made for any wrong or injustice committed by any the severall officers of any the standing Courts of Justice, or authority of any other person or persons.

For the better ease of the Inhabitants of the severall Bailywicks or Counties, there is assigned one Lievtenant, and eight Justices, to administer Justice for maintenance of the Publique Peace, according to the Lawes pro[illegible]ded; These Officers and Justices to be chosen and allowe[illegible]ordin[illegible] my selfe, or any Lievetenant in my absence, with th[illegible]fenders of the said Councell, belonging unto me. [illegible]nts, nay Sons

As for the Constables of the hundreds, Constables of the parishes, with the severall Tything Men of every parish to be chosen by the Lievtenant and Justices of the severall Counties to whom such oathes are to be administred, as by the Councell, and my selfe, or Lievtenant shall be thought fit

That every hundred shall have two head Constables assigned them, and every parish one Constable and four Tything Men, who shall give account to the Constable of the parish of the demeanour of the Housholders within his Tything, and of their severall families; The Constable of the parish shall render the same accompt fairely written to the Constables of the hundred, or some of them, who shall present the same to the Lievtenant and Justices at their next sitting, or before if cause require, and if it be matter within the power of the Lievtenant and Justices to determine of, then to proceed therein according to their said authority, otherwise to commend it to my selfe or my Lievtenant and Councell.

These few particulars I have thought fit to commend (as briefly as I can) unto all whom it may please to take notice thereof, heartily desiring they will not be spareing modestly to censure what they conceive proper to be amended, in that I chose rather to serve such whose wisedome, moderation, and judgements exceed my owne, them passionately or willingly to persist in my private fancy, or to be aggrieved at, or envy their better judgements.

CHAPTER V.

My answer to some Objections.

BUT hearing that it is objected by many, if there be such hopes of Honour, Profit, and Content in those parts, how comes it to pass that your self have not tasted thereof in all this time, having imployed so many of your owne servants, as by this discourse it seemes you have done, and yet nothing returned. As this objection is just, so I hope a reasonable answer will satisfie any reasonable man, whom I desire in the first place to consider, that I began when there was no hopes for the present but of losse, in that I was yet to find a place, and being found, it selfe was in a manner dreadfull to the behoulders, for it seemed but as a desert Wildernesse replete onely with a kind of *Savage* People, and overgrowne trees. So as I found it no meane matter to procure any to go thither much lesse to reside there; and those I sent knew not how to subsist, but on the provisions I furnished them with all.

Secondly I dealt not as Merchants or Trades-men are wont, seeking onely to make mine owne profit, my ends being to make perfect the through discovery of the Countrey, (wherein I waded so far with the helpe of those that joyned with me) as I opened the way for others, to make their gaine, which hath been the meanes to encourage their followers to prosecute it to their advantage. Lastly I desire all that have estates here in *England* to remember, if they never come neare their People, to take accounts of their endeavours what they gaine by those courses.

Besides, when there is no settled Government or ordinary course of justice, which way is left to punish offenders or mispenders of their masters good, do not servants, nay

Sons

Sons the like in these parts, and are there not many that mispend the estates their Fathers left them, yet I have not sped so ill (I thank my God for it) but I have an house and home there ; and some necessary meanes of profit by my Saw-Mills and Corne-Mills, besides some Annuall receipts sufficient to lay a foundation for greater matters, now the Government is Established.

Let not therefore my evill fortunes or hinderances be a discouragement to any, seeing there are so many presidents of the happy successe of those that are their owne Stewards and disposers of their owne affaires in those parts, nay such as I have sent over at my owne charge at first, are now able to live and maintaine themselves with plenty and reputation ; So, as to doubt of well doing, for that another hath not prospered, or to be abused by those he trusted, is to despaire without a cause, and to loose himselfe without tryall. Thus much I presume will clear the objection made by my example, and give comfort and courage to the industrious to follow the presidents of those more able to act their owne parts, than I have beene for causes spoken of.

CHAPTER VI.

The benefits that forreigne Nations have made by Plantation.

NOW I will onely remember some of the benefits that may arise by Plantations, and will begin with those Princes, our Neighbours, who have laid the way before us ; but to speake of all the goods that may ensue, Plantations is a subject too large for my intention at this time, who do strive for brevity. By some of those Plantations made by our Neighbours, we see what greatnesse it hath brought them to, that have undertaken the same, as namely

namely the King of *Spain* and *Portugall*, the one settling himselfe in the parts of *America*, called the *West Indies*, the other situate in *Brazill*, the Southern part of the same Continent, and that part peopled in the infancy of that Plantation, as well with base and banished persons, as other noble and generous spirits, yet the successe thereof hath answered their expectation. Besides, we have seene what great riches were drawne by the *Portugalls*, by meanes of their severall plantations in the *East-Indies*, out of those vast and mighty Princes Territories, that filled the whole World with Spices, and other Aromatique Druggs, and excellent rare curiosities not vulgarly knowne to forreigne and former Ages in these Northerly parts of the World.

Those Rarities and Rich Commodities, invited some of our Nation to dive into farther search how we might partake thereof, without the favour of forreigne Princes, and having, after the way was once opened by private Adventurers, and some relish had of the proffits that might arise by those imployments, the Adventurers, Merchants, and others, noble spirits combined together to make it a more publique businesse, worthy the honour of this Nation, and reputation of the Undertakers, who having amassed a stock of many hundred thousand, entred so far into it, that the trade so began and continues to this present day, though not agreeable to the common hopes conceived thereof, but had the ground beene laid as was advised, it had growne to a far greater certainty than now it is like to have.

But the *Hollanders* better experienced in Martiall Affaires, were taught to know there is a difference betweene having gotten a trade and keeping it, that there is no safety in depending upon the will of another, when it is possible to secure themselves of what they had in possession, this made them fortifie where they found it convenient, and so to settle the forme of their Government and course of Trade upon such a foundation, as should promise continuall growth without iminution, upon change of humour of those they traded with, if left to to their mercilesse discretion.

That by the same course they are like in short time to out our Nation of that hole trade left us, who I could wish would yet in season seek how to settle a better foundation in such other places (as if I be not deceived) it is possible they may, thereby, not onely make good their present proffits, but advance it to a far greater, and make their attempts more honourable and more safe than now they are.

But seeing I am not able to perswade men of better judgement how to manage their practicall affaires, it shall content me to set out my opinion of the excellent use that may be made of those Plantations we have now on foot, especially that of *New-England*.

CHAPTER VII.

AS for those in the Islands of the *Virginians*, it is apparent they may be made of excellent use, if handled as they ought to be, both for the present and future, whereof I will speak no more, because so well known already: That of *Virginia* might very well brag of it selfe, if the Planters did but endeavour to settle some Plantations further up into the Maine, and to travaile in raising such Commodities as that Clime will affoard for Trade and Commerce with their Neighbours and such of our owne Nation, as want what they have. For if I be not deceived, that Clime will affoard both Wines of severall natures, Flax, Hemp, Pitch, and Tarre, if not Sugars, and Cottons, for it cannot but be as proper for any of those commodities as any other country ying in the same Clime. But these particulars depend upon the wisedome of the Governours, and industry of the inhabitants, to whom I commend the farther consideration aud execution thereof as time and opportunity will give leave, not doubting but if they follow the

the Sunnes setting, they will meet with better things than are yet spoken of, if they be sought for.

As for that of *New-England*, where I am chiefly interested, by reason of the time and meanes I have spent in the prosecution of that businesse, it is easie to be observed (partly by what I have said) what Commodities may be raised out of those Climes, and how miraculously it hath succeeded, and we may justly conclude it hath been brought to what it is, by the speciall Grace of *GOD* alone, the more to make illustration by the manifestation of his powerfull operation, in effecting for us what we could not expect from his Divine Goodnesse.

At our first discovery of those coasts, we found it very populous, the inhabitants stout and warre-like; the Countrey plentifull in graine and other fruits and roots, besides Deere of all sorts, and other Animals for foode, with plenty of Fish and Foule for their sustentation; so that they could not say (according to the manner of their living) they wanted any thing Nature did require.

As for their civill government, that part of the Country we first seated in, seemed to be Monarchicall by the name and title of a *Bashaba*, his extent was large, and had under him many great Subjects, such as were Allegeanry with them to the Warre, some thousand some fifteen hundred Bow-Men, some more others lesse, these they called *Sagamores*. This *Bashaba* had many enemies, especially those to the East and North-East, whome they called *Tarentines*, those to the West and South-West, were called *Sockbigones*, but the *Tarentines* were counted a more war-like and hardy People, and had indeed the least opportunity to make their attempts upon them, by reason of the conveniency and opportunity of the Rivers and Sea, which affoarded a speedy passage into the *Bashabaes* Country, which was called *Moasham*, and that part of the Country which lay between the *Sockbigones* Country and *Moasham* was called *Apistama*: The *Massachisans* and *Bashabaes* were sometimes Friends and sometimes Enemies as it fell out, but the *Bashaba* and his People seemed to be of some eminence above the

rest, in all that part of the Continent; his owne chiefe abode was not far from *Pemaquid*, but the Warre growing more and more violent between the *Bashaba* and the *Tarentines*, who (as it seemed) presumed upon the hopes they had to be favoured of the *French* that were seated in *Canada*, their next neighbours, the *Tarentines* surprised the *Bashaba*, and slew him and all his People near about him, carrying away his Women, and such other matters as they thought of value; after his death the publique businesse running to confusion for want of an head, the rest of his great *Sagamores* fell at variance among themselves, spoiled and destroyed each others people and provision, and famine took hould of many, which was seconded by a great and generall plague, which so violently rained for three yeares together, that in a manner the greater part of that Land was left desert without any to disturb or appease our free and peaceable possession thereof, from whence we may justly conclude, that *GOD* made the way to effect his work according to the time he had assigned for laying the foundation thereof. In all which there is to be noted, the next of the Plantations before spoken of, were not performed but by Warre and Slaughter, and some of them with Murther of so many millions of the Natives, as it it is horror to be spoken of, especially being done by the hands of Christians, who alone of all People in the World professe the gaining of all Soules to *GOD* onely by preaching the Gospell of *CHRIST JESUS* our Sole Redeemer, and all this done, as being presented, persecuted, not persecuting; but let us be silent and confess, that that is best done that *GOD* doth himselfe, and next we must know, that what he suffers to be done, is not for us rashly to censure, but to give him the Glory for all, whose will we desire may be done hereon as, &c.

Yet I trust we may be humbly bold to believe that when God manifesteth his assistance unto his people, he gives them cause to believe he will not leave them till they leave him.

CHAP. VIII.

CHAPTER VIII.

The benefits already received, and what Time and Industry may produce.

AS for the benefit which may arise by such Plantations, especially those our Nation is in travaile with at present, first we find by daily experience what numbers of shipping and Marriners are imployed thereby. Next how many thousands of the subjects are transported into those parts, that otherwise might have setled themselves under foreigne States to the prejudice and hinderance of our owne Manufactors said overthrow of that kind of trade, whereas by planting where they do, that is not only prevented, but new Trades impossibly to be raised. Further, it prevents our neighbours from occuping those territories that so diligently (according to their powers) sought to possesse themselves thereof, who by that meanes might easily (as it were) beseige us on all sides, that we should neither be Southward, nor follow our fishing Craft in *New-Found-Land*; or upon those coasts, but by their permission.

But the same advantage by means of those Plantations lyes now in our power, if the King shall have occasion to make use thereof; besides so large a continent abounding with so many excellent Lakes, of so mighty extent, from whence issue so many rivers, such variable kinds of soiles, rich in fructification of all manner of seeds or graine, so likely to abound in mineralls of all sorts, and other rich gaine of commodities not yet to be known, besides Furrs of several kinds, both usefull and Merchantable, proper for foreigne Markets.

CHAPTER IX.

Shewing more particularly the honor, content, and profit of those undertakings.

TO descend from those generalls to more particulars, what can be more pleasing to a generous nature then to be excercised in doing publique good. Especially when his labour and industry tends to the private good and reputation of himselfe and posterity and what monument so durable, as erecting of Houses, Villages, and Townes; and what more Pious then advancing of Christian Religion amongst People, who have not known the excellency thereof, but seeing works of Piety and publique good, are in this age rather commended by all, then acted by any; let us come a little nearer to that which all harken unto, and that forsooth is profit.

Be it so, art thou a Labourer, that desirest to take paines for the maintenance of thy selfe, the imployments in Plantations gives thee not onely extraordinary wages, but opportunity to build some House or Cottage, and a proportion of Land agreeable to thy fortunes to set thy selfe, when either lamenesse or other infirmities seize on thee, hast thou a Wife and a Family, by plantation thou buildest, inclosest, and dost labour to live, and enjoy the fruits thereof with plenty, multyplying thy little meanes for thy Childrens good when thou art no more.

But art thou of a greater fortune and more gloriously spirited, I have tould thee before what thou may'st be assured of, whereby it may appeare thou shalt not want meanes nor opportunity to exercise the excellency of thine own justice, and ingenuity to govern and act the best things, whether it be for thy selfe or such as live under thee, or

have

have their dependency, or hopes of happineſſe upon thy worth, and vertue as their cheife; neither are theſe parts of the World voide of opportunity to make a further much hopes of the vaſt Territories, that promiſeth ſo to be raiſed to poſterity by the [illegible] ly ſpoken of ty of thoſe great and goodly Lakes and Rivers, which invite all that are of brave Spirits to ſeeke the extent of them. Eſpecially ſince it is already known that ſome of theſe Lakes containe fifty or ſixty leagues in length, ſome one hundred, ſome two hundred, others four or five hundred, the greateſt abounding in multitude of Illands fit for habitation the land on both ſides, eſpecially to the Southward fertile, and pleaſant, being between the degrees of forty foure and forty five of latitude, and to the weſt of theſe Lakes that are now knowne, they paſſe by a maine River to another Sea, or Lake; which is conceived to diſembogue into the South-Seas, where the *Savages* report, that they have a Trade with a Nation, that comes once a yeare unto them with great ſhips, and brings ſhooes and buskins, kettles, and hatchets, and the like, which they barter for Skinnes, and Furrs of all kindes. The people being cloathed with long robes, their heads bald or ſhaven, ſo as it is conceived they muſt be *Catayons* or *Chinawaies* whatſoever they be, were the ſtrength of my body and meanes anſwerable to my heart, I would undertake the diſcovery of the uttermoſt extent thereof and whoſoever ſhall effect the ſame, ſhall both eternize his vertues, and make happy ſuch as will endeavour to partake thereof.

But I end and leave all to him, who is the onely author of all Goodneſſe, and knowes beſt his owne time to bring his will to be made manifeſt, and appoints his inſtruments for the accompliſhing thereof, to whoſe pleaſure it becomes every one of us to ſubmit our ſelves, as to that mighty G O D, and Great and Gracious L O R D, to whome all G L O R Y doth belong.

F I N I S.

Mathew Motlow his

Book Febuary ye 5 1779 &c

AMERICA,
Painted to the Life.

A
True History of the originall undertakings of the advancement of Plantations into those parts, with a perfect relation of our *ENGLISH* Discoveries, shewing their beginning, progress, and continuance, from the year, 1628. to 1658. declaring the forms of their Government, Policies, Religions, Manners, Customes, Military Discipline, Warres with the *INDIANS*, the Commodities of their Countries, a Description of their Townes, and Havens, the increase of their trading with the names of their Governours and Magistrates.

More
Especially an absolute Narrative of the North parts of *AMERICA*, and of the discoveries and plantations of our *English* in *NEW-ENGLAND*.

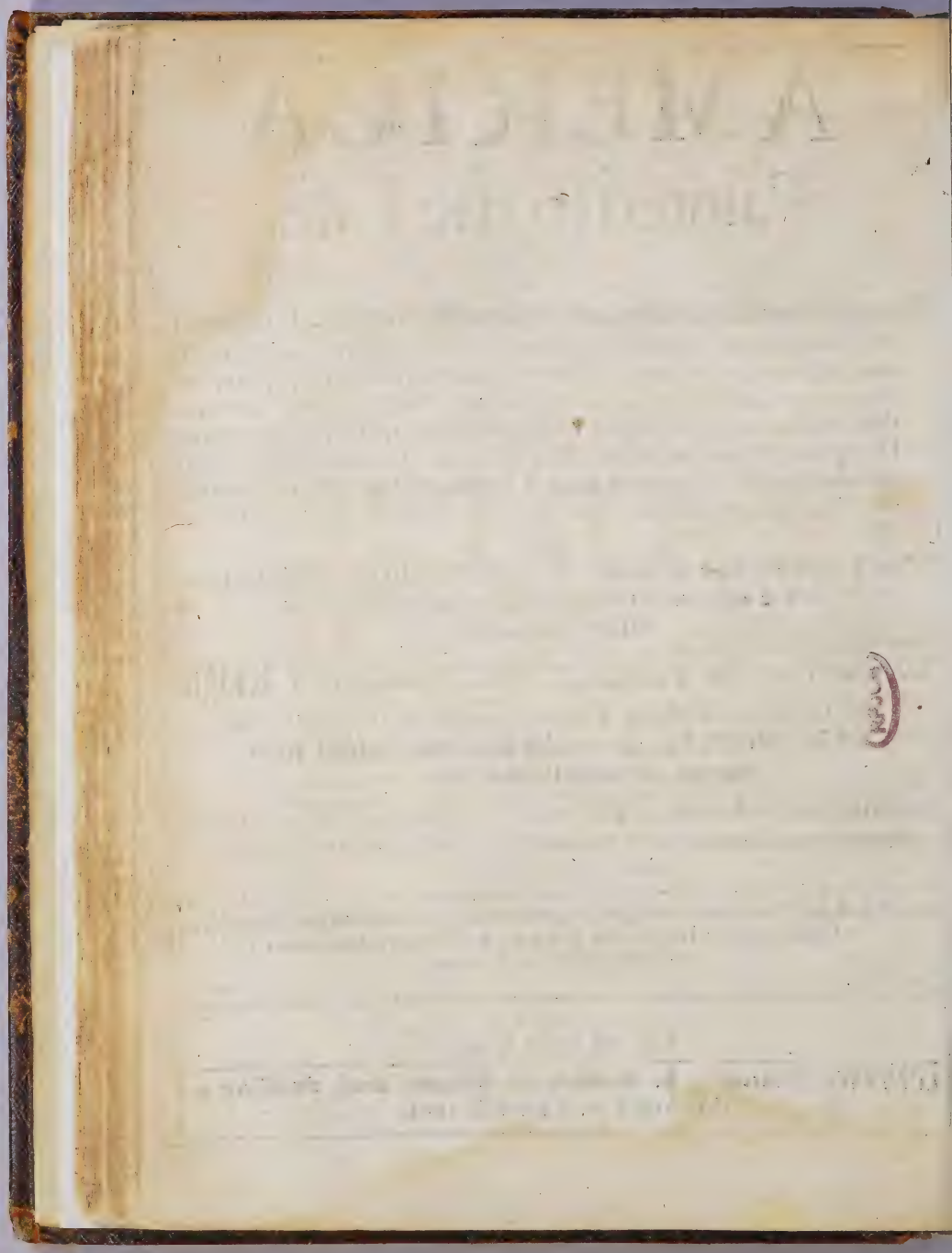
Written by Sir *FERDINANDO GORGES* Knight and Governour of the Fort and Island of *Plimouth* in *DEVONSHIRE*, one of the first and cheifest promoters of those Plantations.

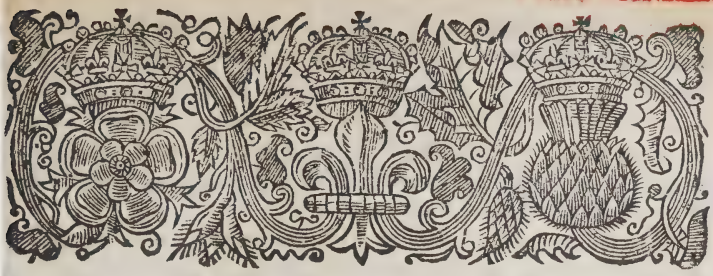
Publisht since his decease, by his Grand-child *Ferdinando Gorges* Esquire, who hath much enlarged it and added severall accurate Descriptions of his owne.

A work now at last exposed for the publick good, to stir up the heroick and active spirits of these times, to benefit their Country, and Eternize their names by such honourable attempts.

For the Readers clearer understanding of the Country's they are lively described in a compleat and exquisite Map.
Vivit post funera virtus.

LONDON; Printed by *E. Brudenell*, for *Nathaniel Brook* dwelling at the Angel in *Corn-hill*. 1658.





To the READER.

I *Thought it a part of my duty in this my briefe Narration of our Plantations to remember the Originall Undertaking of those designes in the parts of* America, *by such Noble Spirits of our Nation that first attempted it, as well for the justification of the right thereof, properly belonging to Kings of our Nation, before any other Prince or State, as also the better to cleare the claime made thereunto by the Embassadour of* France, *in the behalfe of his Master, in the yeare* 1624. *whereto I was required to make answer (as more at large it appeares in the discourse it selfe, withall to leave to posterity the particular wayes by which it hath beene brought to the height it is come unto, wherein the providence of our Great* GOD *is especially to be observed, who by the least and weakest meanes, oftentimes effecteth great and wonderfull things; all which I have endeavoured*

To the Reader.

deavoured to contract in as short a compasse, as the length of the time and the variety of the accidents would give leave, as for the truth thereof, I presume it is so publiquely known, as malice it selfe dares not onely question it, though I know none, I thank my God to whom I have given any just cause maliticusly to attempt it unlesse it be for the desire I had to do good to all without wronging of any, as by the course of my life to this present it may appear.

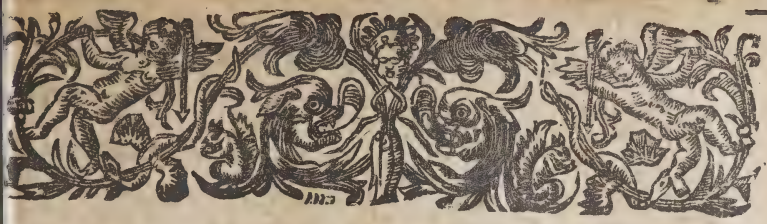
If in the conclusion of my undertaking and expence of my fortunes to advance the honour and happinesse of my Nation, I have setled a portion thereof to those that in nature must succeed me; you may be pleased to remember that the Labourer is worthy of his hire.

That I have not exceeded others not better deserving that I go hand in hand with the meanest in this great worke, to whom the charge thereof was commited by royall Authority.

That I have opened the way to greater imployments and shalbe (as a hand set up in a crosse way) in a desert Country to point all travellers in such like kind, how they may come safe to finish their journeys and leaving an example to others best affected to designes of such like nature to prosecute their intents for further in largement of those begun Plantations, without trenching or intruding upon the rights and labours of others already possessed, of what is justly granted them.

Especially of such, who in some sort may be termed Benefactours as Secondary donors of what (by Gods favour) is had, or to be had from those springs they first found and left to posterity to bath themselves in, but if there be any, otherwise affected, as better delighted to reap what they have not sown, or to possess the fruit another hath laboured for, let such be assured, so great injustice will never want a wofull attendance to follow close at the heeles, if not stayed behind to bring after a more terrible revenge; But my trust is such, impiety will not be suddenly harboured where the whole work is I hope still continued for the enlargement of the Christian faith, the supportation of justice, and love of peace, in assurance whereof, I will conclude and tell you (as I have lived long) so I have done what I could, let those that come after me doe for their parts what they may, and I doubt not but the God that governes all, will reward their labours that continue in his service, to whom be Glory for ever, Amen.

FERDINANDO GORGES.



VVonder-working PROVIDENCE OF SIONS SAVIOUR.

Being a Relation of the first planting in *New England*, in the Yeare, 1628.

CHAP. I.

The sad Condition of England, *when this People removed.*

WHen *England* began to decline in Religion, like luke-warme *Laodicea*, and instead of purging out Popery, a farther compliance was sought not onely in vaine Idolatrous Ceremonies, but also in prophaning the Sabbath, and by Proclamation throughout their Parish churches, exasperating lewd and prophane persons to celebrate a Sabbath like the Heathen to *Venus*, *Baccus* and *Ceres*; in so much that the multitude of irreligious lascivious and popish affected persons spred the whole land like *Grashoppers*, in this very time Christ the glorious King of his Churches, raises an Army out of our *English* Nation, for freeing his people from their long servitude under usurping Prelacy; and because every corner of *England* was filled with the fury of malignant adversaries, Christ creates a New *England* to muster up the first of his Forces in; Whose low condition, little number, and remotenesse of place made

these adversaries triumph, despising this day of small things, but in this hight of their pride the *Lord Christ* brought sudden, and unexpected destruction upon them. Thus have you a touch of the time when this worke began.

Christ Jesus intending to manifest his Kingly Office toward his Churches more fully then ever yet the Sons of men saw, even to the uniting of *Jew* and *Gentile* Churches in one Faith, begins with our *English* Nation (whose former Reformation being vere imperfect) doth now resolve to cast down their false foundation of Prelacy, even in the hight of their domineering dignity. And therefore in the yeare 1628. he stirres up his servants as the Heralds of a King to make this Proclamation for Volunteers as followeth.

Oh yes! oh yes! oh yes! *All you the people of Christ that are here Oppressed, Imprisoned and scurrilously derided, gather your selves together, your Wifes and little ones, and answer to your severall Names as you shall be shipped for his service, in the Westerne World, and more especially for planting the united Collonies of new* England; *Where you are to attend the service of the King of Kings, upon the divulging of this Proclamation by his Herralds at Armes.* Many (although otherwise willing for this service) began to object as followeth:

Can it possible be the mind of Christ, (who formerly inabled so many Souldiers of his to keepe their station unto the death here) that now so many brave Souldiers disciplined by Christ himselfe the Captaine of our salvation, should turne their backs to the disheartning of their Fellow-Souldiers, and losse of further opportunity in gaining a greater number of Subjects to Christs Kingdome?

Notwithstanding this Objection, It was further proclaimed as followeth: What Creature, wilt not know that Christ thy King crusheth with a rod of Iron, the Pompe and Pride of man, and must he like man cast and contrive to take his enemies at advantage? No, of purpose hee causeth such instruments to retreate as he hath made strong for himselfe: that so his adversaries glorying in the pride of their power, insulting over the little remnant remaining, Christ causeth them to be cast downe suddenly forever, and wee find in stories reported, Earths Princes have passed

thei

their Armies at need over Seas and deepe Torrents. Could *Cæsar* so suddenly fetch over fresh forces from *Europe* to *Asia*, *Pompy* to foyle? How much more shall Christ who createth all power, call over this 900. league Ocean at his pleasure, such instruments as he thinks meete to make use of in this place, from whence you are now to depart, but further that you may not delay the Voyage intended, for your full satisfaction, know this is the place where the Lord will create a new Heaven, and a new Earth in, new Churches, and a new Common-wealth together; Wherefore,

---

CHAP. II.

The Commission of the People of Christ shipped for New England, *and first of their gathering into Churches.*

ATtend to your Commission, all you that are or shall hereafter be shipped for this service, yee are with all possible speed to imbarque your selves, and as for all such Worthies who are hunted after as *David* was by *Saul* and his Courtiers, you may change your habit and ship you with what secrecy you can, carrying all things most needfull for the Voyage and service you are to be imployed in after your landing. But as soone as you shall be exposed to danger of tempestious Seas, you shall forthwith shew whose servants you are by calling on the Name of your God, sometimes by extraordinary seeking his pleasing Face in times of deepe distresse, and publishing your Masters will, and pleasure to all that Voyage with you, and that is his minde to have purity in Religion preferred above all dignity in the world; your Christ hath commanded the Seas they shall not swallow you, nor Pyrates imprison your persons, or possesse your goods. At your landing see you observe the Rule of his Word, for neither larger nor stricter Commission can hee give by any, and therefore at first filling the Land whither you are sent, with diligence, search out the mind of God both in planting and continuing Church and civill Government, but be sure they be distinct, yet agreeing and helping the one to the other; Let the matter and forme of your Churches be such as were in the Primitive Times (before *Antichrists* Kingdome prevailed) plainly

poynted out by Christ and his Apostles, in most of their Epistles to be neither Nationall nor Provinciall, but gathered together in Covenant of such a number as might ordinarily meete together in one place, and built of such living stones as outwardly appeare Saints by calling. You are also to ordaine Elders in every Church, make you use of such as Christ hath indued with the best gifts for that end, their call to Office shall be mediate from you, but their authority and commission shall be immediate from Christ revealed in his word; which if you shall slight, despise or contemne, hee will soone frustrate your call by taking the most able among you to honour with an everlasting Crown; whom you neglected to honour on Earth double as their due, or he will carry them remote from you to more infant Churches. You are not to put them upon anxious Cares for their daily Bread, for assuredly (although it may now seeme strange) you shall be fed in this Wilderneſſe, whither you are to goe, with the flower of Wheate and Wine shall be plentifull among you (but be sure you abuse it not) these Doctrines delivered from the Word of God imbrace, and let not Satan delude you by perswading their learned skill is unnecessary, soone then will the Word of God be slighted as translated by such, and you shall be left wildred with strange Revelations of every phantastick brain; which to prevent here are to be shipped among you many both Godly, Juditious and Learned, who

---

CHAP. III.

Of the Demeanor of their Church Officers.

BEing called to Office are in all humility to feed the flock of Christ, and not for lucre to admit mostly of such sheepe, whose faire fleeces allure much: nor yet for filling the flocks to crowd in infectious sheepe, or rather wolves in sheepes cloathing, assuredly it will prove bitterneſſe in the end: neither shall you for feare your allowance will fall short, hinder the increase of Churches, that so your fellow brethren indued with like gifts fall short of all; But above all beware of any love selfe-conceited Opinion, stopping your eares from hearing the Counsell of an Orthodox Synod, but by daily communication one with

with another impart Christs minde each to other, that you may all speake one and the same things; heale not lightly the wounds that Wolves make, lest from their festering Teeth a Gangrin grow, and further for compleating the Churches of Christ as well in matters as in Doctrine, there are ancient experienced godly Christians shipped among you (but be sure you make choise of such, for feare they be despised) and let them not be led by favor or affection (as naturally men are) to Administer in your Office partially, for unworthy the name of a Ruling Elder is hee, who loses his Lyon-like courage, when the sound and wholesome Doctrines delivered by Pastor or Teacher are spoken against by any; unseemly behaviour and sleepy hearing by private exhortation prevent (if possible) lest publick example in open professors stumbl e some and hinder the operation of his word, especially in the hearts of those who have bin long time led away with the inventions of man in the worship of God. Be sure you contradict not but confirme with trienall love the Doctrines of Christ, delivered by your Teaching Elders, which will be a great meanes to make it prevaile, for a three-fold cord is not easily broken, trust not to your own gifts for preventing error, but use all helpes that Christ may blesse his own meanes, cast not away as incorrigible such as at first receive not the word in all points, but wait with patience if at any time the Lord will be pleased to give them a heart to turne unto him. Beware of a proud censorious spirit, and shou'd Christ be pleased to place in his building more pollished stones then thy selfe, make it matter of rejoycing and not of envy. And further, because the Preaching of the word is to be continued with all diligence, here are likewise inbarked with you faithfull servants of Christ to attend on the Tables of the Churches, plaine-dealing men, yea, indued with wisdome from above, by which they are inabled to mannage and improve the Churches Treasury, not greedily given to hoord up for themselves, but by their own example leading others to liberality, and hospitality, having the Earth in low esteeme, and Faith in exercise when Cattell and Corne fayle, not given to magnifie their own gifts, but boldly maintayning such sound truths as their Teaching Elders have cleared up from the word of God. And,

CHAP. IV.

How the People in Christs Churches are to behave themselves.

NOw you his People, who are pickt out by his, provide to passe this *Westerne* Ocean for this honorable service, beware you call not weake ones to Office in this honorable Army, nor Novices, lest they be lifted up with pride. You see how full you are furnished for the worke, give no eare to any Braggadociaes, who to extoll themselves will weaken the hands of those whom Christ hath made strong for himselfe. Yea, such will be the phantasticall madnesse of some (if you take not heed) that silly Women laden with diverse lusts, will be had in higher esteeme with them, then those honoured of Christ, indued with power and authority from him to Preach; Abuse not the free and full liberty Christ hath given you in making choyce of your own Officers, and consent in admitting into his Churches, and casting out such Members as walke disorderly; you are to walke in all humility, lest in injoyment of such freedoms as you formerly have not exercised, you exceede the bounds of modesty, and instead of having your moderation knowne to all, your imbecility, and selfe-exaltation bee discovered by many, in admission of others into Church society. Remember your selves were once Aliens from the Covenant of Grace, and in Excommunication, consider how your selves have been also tempted: in sincerity and singlenesse of heart, let your words be few, do nothing be had in high esteeme among men; And thinke it no imputation of a weake dicserning to be followes of those are set over you in the Lord as they follow Christ; Let your Profession outstrip your Confession, for seeing you are to be set as lights upon a Hill more obvious then the highest Mountaine in the World, keepe close to Christ that you may shine full of his glory, who imployes you, and grub not continually in the Earth, like blind *Moles*, but by your amiable Conversation seeke the winning of many to your Masters service. Beware of a proud censorious spirit, make it no part of your Christian communication to be in continuall discourse of others faults; Let all things be done in

in love, and looke not for more smoothnesse in stones as yet unplaced in Christs building then is in thy selfe, who hast been long layd therein: wait with patience and cast not off as Reprobates such as cannot presently joyne with you in every poynt of Discipline, and yet hold fast to sound and wholesome Doctrine, if you will be a people to his prayse, who hath called you, seeke the turning of many to Righteousnesse, purge out all the sowre Leven of unsound Doctrine, for the minde of Christ is to build up his Churches, and breake them down no more; And therefore be sure there be none to hurt or destroy in all his holy Mountaine, and as he hath prefted you for his service, that by passing through the Flouds of Persecution you should be set at liberty, and have power put into your hands. Then let none wrest it from you under pretence of liberty of Conscience, men of perverse judgements will draw Disciples after them, but let your consciences be pure, and Christs Churches free from all Doctrines that deceive. And all you, who are or shall be shipped for this worke, thinke it not enough that you injoy the truth, but you must hate every false way and know you are called to be faithfull Souldiers of Christ, not onely to assist in building up his Churches, but also in pulling downe the Kingdome of *Antis Christ*, then sure you are not set up for tollerating times, nor shall any of you be content with this that you are set at liberty, but take up your Armes, and march manfully on till all opposers of Christs Kingly power be abolished: and as for you who are called to sound forth his silver Trumpets, blow lowd and shrill, to this chiefest treble tune; For the Armies of the great *Jehovah* are at hand. See you not his Enemies stretched out on tiptoe, proudly daring on their thresholds, a certaine signe of their sudden overthrow; be not danted at your small number, for every common Souldier in Christs Campe shall be as *David*, who slew the great *Goliah*, and his *Davids* shall be as the Angels of the Lord, who slew 185000. in the *Assyrian* Army.

Finally, all you who are now sent forth by Christ your *Jehovah* to enter upon a Blessed Reformation, if ever you will have the honours to be provokers of his ancient People *Israel* (who are againe suddenly to be honoured by him in believing) kindle the fire of jealousy in their brests by your Holy, Heaven-

ly

ly and humble walking, have you not the most blessedest opertunity put into your hands that ever people had? then

CHAP. V.

What Civill Government the People of Christ ought to set up, and submit unto in New England.

FAyle not in prosecution of the Worke, for your *Lord Christ* hath furnished you with able Pilots, to steere the Helme in a godly peaceable, Civill Government also, then see you make choyce of such as are sound both in Profession and Confession, men fearing God and hating bribes; whose Commission is not onely limitted with the commands of the second Table, but they are to looke to the Rules of the first also, and let them be sure to put on *Joshuas* resolution, and courage, never to make League with any of these seven Sectaries.

First, the *Gortonists*, who deny the Humanity of Christ, and most blasphemously and proudly professe themselves to be personally Christ.

Secondly, the *Papist*, who with (almost) equall blasphemy and pride prefer their own Merits and Workes of Supererogation as equall with Christs unvaluable Death, and Sufferings.

Thirdly, the *Familist*, who depend upon rare Revelations, and forsake the sure revealed Word of Christ.

Fourthly, *Seekers*, who deny the Churches and Ordinances of Christ.

Fifthly, *Antinomians*, who deny the Morrall Law to be the Rule of Christ.

Sixt'y, *Anabaptists*, who deny Civill Government to be proved of Christ.

Seventhly, The *Prelacy*, who will have their own Injunctions submitted unto in the Churches of Christ. These and the like your Civill Censors shall reach unto that the people of, and under your Government, may live a quiet and peaceable life in all godlinesse and honesty, and to the end that you may provoke Kings, Princes, and all that are in authority to cast downe their Crownes at the Feet of Christ, and take them up againe at his command

command to serve under his Standard as nursing Fathers, and nursing Mothers to the Churches and people of Christ; when your feete are once safely set on the shores of *America*, you shall set up and establish civill Government, and pray for the prosperity thereof, as you love the peace of his Churches, who hath called you to this service, he hath for that end shipped among you, some learned in the Law of God, and practised in rules of good reason or common Lawes proper to our *English* Nation. Be sure you make choyce of the right, that all people, Nations and Languages, who are soonly to submit to Christs Kingdome, may be followers of you herein, as you follow the Rule of Christ; your Magistrates shall not but open the Gates for all sorts. But know, they are Eyes of Restraint set up for Walles and Bulworks, to surround the *Sion* of God; Oh for *Jerusalem* her peace, see that you mind it altogether, you know right well that the Churches of Christ have not thrived under the tolerating Government of *Holland*, from whence the Lord hath translated one Church already to the place whither you are now to goe; and further it is well known, loose liberty cannot indure to looke Majesticall authority in the face. And also you shall finde erronious persons will contend with authority for upholding truth irrationally, denying it any power to condemne deceiveable Doctrines, and that upon this very ground, because Tyranny hath inforced error heretofore; be not borne downe with a multitude, neither let any flatter for preferment, which to prevent, honour shall be very chargeable among you; yet let not any deny to beare the burden and cumber of governing this people of Christ; for assuredly, although their recompence fall short from man, it shall not be forgotten with the Lord. Lastly,

The Church of Christ at *Plimoth* was planted in *New England*, 8. Yeares before any others.

CHAP. VI.

How the People of Christ ought to behave themselves in War-like Discipline.

YOu shall with all diligence provide against the Malignant adversaries of the truth, for assure your selves the time is at

hand wherein *Antichrist* will muster up all his Forces, and make war with the People of God : but it shall be to his utter overthrow. See then you store your selves with all sorts of weapons for war, furbrish up your Swords, Rapiers, and all other piercing weapons. As for great Artillery, seeing present meanes falls short, waite on the *Lord Christ*, and hee will stir up friends to provide for you : and in the meane time spare not to lay out your coyne for Powder, Bullets, Match, Armes of all sorts, and all kinde of Instruments for War: and although it may now seeme a thing incredible, you shall see in that Wilderneſſe, whither you are going, Troopes of stout Horsemen marshalled, and therefore fayle not to ship lusty Mares along with you, and see that withall dilligence you incourage every Souldier-like Spirit among you, for the Lord *Christ* intends to atchieve greater matters by this little handfull then the World is aware of ; wherefore you shall seeke and set up men of valour to lead and direct every Souldier among you, and with all diligence to instruct them from time to time.

Doctor *Wilson* gave 1000l. to *New England*, with which they stored them with great Guns.

Feare not the misse of men to fill your Townes, and compleat your companies ; for although at first struglings for truths advance there may but a small number appeare of sound judgement : yet shall you not prefer any to Office, whose zeale is not strong for the truth, for now the minde of *Christ* is to put out the Name of *Ammaleck* from under Heaven (I meane such as have persecuted the Churches and People of *Christ* in their low condition) and assuredly unsound *Saules* will spare such as should not be saved from destruction. Then be strong and of a good courage (all you that are to fight the Lords Battaile) that your Faith faile not at sight of the great Armies of *Gog* and *Magog* : and as for you, who shall be preferred to highest places in his New *England* Regiments, cause your Captaine and other inferior Officers to be diligent in their severall places, that you may lend helpe to your Countreymen, that ere long be will see a necessity of contending for the truth, as well as your selves in choyce of Military Officers ; Let faithfulnesse to the cause in hand, courage, activity and skill have the prehemency of honours; for although it may seeme a meane thing to be a New *England* Souldier, yet some of you shall have the battering and beating down,

down, ſcaling, winning and waſting the over-topping Towers of the Hierarchy; Lieutenants, Enſigne and Serjeants, exceed not your places, till Experience, Skill and true Valour promote you to higher honour, to which you ſhall be daily aſpiring. As the worthy incouragement of a Souldiers labour, let Militay diſcipline be had in high eſteeme among you. Gentlemen, Corporalls and fellow-Souldiers, keepe your weapons in a continuall readineſſe, ſeeing you are called to fight the Battails of your *Lord Chriſt*; who muſt raigne till hee hath put all his enemies under his Feet, his glorious Victories over *Antichriſt* are at hand, never yet did any Souldier rejoyce in dividing the ſpoyle after Victory, as all the Souldiers of *Chriſt* ſhall, to ſee his judgement executed upon the great Whore, and withall the Lambs bride prepared for him, who comes Skipping over & trampling down the great Mountaines of the Earth, whoſe univerſall Government will then appeare glorious, when not onely the *Aſſyrian*, *Babilonian*, *Perſian*, *Grecian* and *Roman* Monarchies ſhall ſubject themſelves unto him, but alſo all other new upſtart Kingdomes, Dukedomes, or what elſe can be named, ſhall fall before him; Not that he ſhall come perſonally to Reigne upon Earth (as ſome vainly imagine) but his powerfull Preſence and Glorious brightneſſe of his Goſpell both to *Jew* and *Gentile*, ſhall not onely ſpiritually cauſe the Churches of *Chriſt* to grow beyond number, but alſo the whole civill Government of people upon Earth ſhall become his, ſo that there ſhall not be any to move the hand, nor dog his tongue againſt his choſen, *And then ſhall the time be of breaking Speares into Mattocks, and Swords into Sithes*; and this to remaine to his laſt comming, which will be perſonally to overcome the laſt enemies of his Saints, even death, which hee will doe by the word of his Mouth, audibly ſpoken the World throughout.

Then all you, who are now, or ſhall hereafter be ſhipped for this Voyage, minde the worke of Chriſt, and not ſome following raigne, titles of honour, others eying the beſt Graſſe-platts and beſt Situation for Farmes and large Accommodations, crouding out Gods people from ſitting down among you. Wherefore above all beware of covetouſneſſe; all you that will be admitted into theſe ſelect Bands of *Chriſt Jeſus*, remember *Achan*,

whereas Rams Hornes could overthrow the high and ſtrong walles of *Jericho*, before his theft committed, after it the little number of the men of *Ai* could put the Hoſt of the living God to flight, ſee then you ſtand upon your watch continually in the ſtrength of *Chriſt*, for aſſuredly inſtead of caſting downe the enemies of *Chriſt*, thisſin will caſt down you utterly, diſinable you for ſtriking one ſtroke in the cauſe of *Chriſt*; and whereas he hath purpoſely pickt out this People for a patterne of purity and ſounduneſſe of Doctrine, as well as Diſcipline, that all ſuch may finde a refuge among you, and let not any Merchants, Inkeepers, Taverners and men of Trade in hope of gaine, fling open the gates ſo wide, as that by letting in all ſorts you mar the worke of *Chriſt* intended: neither ſhall ſuch labourers as hee hath pickt out to be Pyoneers in this Campe of his, drinke up like Spunges ſuch meanes as hee hath ſent to maintaine both Officers, and private Souldiers. Laſtly, let not ſuch as fight, ſet foote on Land to compoſe Townes for Habitations, take up large accommodations for ſale, to inrich themſelves with others goods, who are to follow them, but freely as you have received, ſo give out to others: for ſo ſoone as you ſhall ſeeke to ingroſſe the Lords waſt into your hands, he will eaſe you of your burden by making ſtay of any farther reſort unto you, and then be ſure you ſhall have waſt Land enough.

To this Commiſſion was added a ſtrong motive to this work as followeth: Namely, the great enmity betweene that one truth as it is in *Jeſus*, and all other unſound and undeceiveable Doctrines, together with the perſons that hold them; inſomuch, that they cannot ſtand in one Common-wealth long together, as ſixteene hundred yeares experience will teſtifie, the which *Moſes* layes down as one maine reaſon, why he might not admit of a toleration to worſhip God in *Egypt*. And therefore all you that believe the Scriptures, which ſo plainly prophecy the deſtruction of Antichriſt and all Antichriſtian Doctrines; Pray, pray, pray, pray continually with that valiant worthy *Joſhua* that the Sun may ſtand ſtill in *Gibeon*, and the Moone in the vally of *Aijalon*, for aſſuredly although ſome ſmall battailes may be fought againſt the enemies of *Chriſt*, yet the great day of their finall overthrow ſhall not come till the bright Sonne of that one cleare

truth

truth of *Christ*, ſtand ſtill in the Gentile Churches, that thoſe who fight the Lords Battells may plainly diſcerne his enemies in all places, where they finde them, as alſo ſuch as will continue fighting muſt have the World kept low in their eyes, as the Moon in the valley of *Aijalon*.

CHAP. VII.

Of the goodneſſe of God in helping his People to a large liberty in Spirituall things, under the hopes of gaine in Earthly things.

THis *Proclamation* being audibly publiſhed through the Ile of Great *Brittaine* by ſundry Herraulds, which *Chriſt* had prepared for that end: the rumour ran through Cities, Townes and Villages; when thoſe that were oppoſites heard it, ſome cried one thing, and ſome another, much like the tumult in the Town-hall at *Epheſus*, ſome ſaid let them goe, others cryed, ſweare them firſt, others ſaid let no Subſidy men paſſe, others would have ſtrict ſearch made for non-conformants, and that none of the late ſilenced Miniſters might paſſe into the Ships; Amidſt this great hurry the ſincere ſervants of *Chriſt* humbly ſeeke the Lords aſſiſtance in days of Humiliation, taking up ſome ſerious cogitations, how to begin this worthy worke, upon which it was thought meete a patterne ſhould be procured, compriſed after the manner of a Corporation-company or Brotherhood, with as large liberty for government of this Aſſociation, as could be got under the Broad Seale of *England*, which accordingly was done by adviſe of one Mr. *White* an honeſt Counſellor at Law, as alſo furthered by the honoured Mr. *Richard Belinham*, and under the name of many worthy perſonages, as Governour, Dep. Gov. Aſſiſtant and Freemen, &c. Granted, Ingroſſed and Sealed as holding of the manner of Eaſt *Greenwitch*, yeelding by way of homage the ſixth part of all ſuch Ore of Gold or Silver, as might for after time be found within the Limits of the ſaid Grant bounded on the North, with the moſt Northerly part of the pleaſant River of *Merimech*, one mile beyond, and on the South with the moſt Southern part of that oft frequented River com-

commonly called *Charles*, one mile beyond, with power to rule and govern in all those parts both by Sea and Land; To elect and set up all sorts of Officers, as well Superior as Inferior; to point out their power and places, to defend and maintaine the said Land, and Inhabitants thereof with all their lawfull liberties (against all such as at any time should Invade, Molest or Disturbe the same) as well by offensive as defensive War, as also to constitute and ordaine Lawes, &c. Thus these Souldiers of *Jesus Christ* prepared to advance his Kingly Government, much like *Samuel*, when he went to annoynt *David*, took up another errant, withall that the Malignant spirit of *Saul* might not hinder the worke, so those Worthies of *Christ* joyning themselves with Merchants and others, who had an eye at a profitable Plantation, who had not herein been deceived would they have stayed their time, but surely such mist not their marke, whose ayme was at the durable interest, unlesse the fault were their owne, neither let any man thinke *Christ* will not recompence those one way or other, who have been any way helpfull to his people in this his work; amongst whom the Author will not misse that good Gentleman, *Matthew Craddock* by the way of thankfullnesse to him, Mr. *Goff* and others this Verse is tendred:

For richest Jems and gainfull things most Merchants wisely venter:
Deride not then New England men, *this Corporation enter;*
Christ calls for Trade shall never fade, come Craddock *factors send:*
Let Mayhew *go and other more, spare not thy coyne to spend;*
Such Trades advance did never chance, in all thy Trading yet:
Though some deride thy losse, abide, her's gaine beyond mans wit.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the wonderfull Preparation the Lord Christ by his Providence, wrought for his peoples abode in this Western world.

NOw let all men know the admirable Acts of *Christ* for his Churches, and chosen, are universally over the whole Earth at one and the same time, but sorry man cannot so discourse of them; And therefore let us leave our *English* Nation in way of

of preparation for this Voyage intended, and tell of the marvelous doings of *Christ* preparing for his peoples arrivall in the Western World, whereas the *Indians* report they beheld to their great wonderment that perspicuous bright blazing Comet (which was so famously noted in *Europe*) anon after Sun set it appeared as they say in the *South-west*, about three houres continuing in their Horizon, for the space of thirty sleepes (for so they reckon their dayes) after which uncouth sight they expected some strange things to follow, and the rather, because not long before the whole Nation of the *Mattachusets* were so affrighted with a Ship that arrived in their Bay, having never seene any before, thus they report some persons among them discerning a great thing to move toward them upon the Waters, wondering what Creature it should be, they run with their light cannowes, (which are a kinde of Boates made of Birch Rindes, and sowed together with the rootes of white Cedar-Trees) from place to place, stiring up all their Countreymen to come forth, and behold this monstrous thing; at this sudden news the shores for many miles were filled with this naked Nation, gazing at this wonder, till some of the stoutest among them manned out these Cannowes, being armed with Bow and Arrowes, they approached within shot of the Ship, being becalmed they let fly their long shafts at her, which being headed with bone some stuck fast, and others dropped into the water, they wondering it did not cry, but kept quietly on toward them, till all of a sudden the Master caused a piece of Ordnance to be fired, which stroke such feare into the poore *Indians*, that they hasted to shore, having their wonders exceedingly increased; but being gotten among their great multitude, they waited to see the sequell with much amazement, till the Seamen firling up their salies came to an Anchor, mannedout their long bote, and went on shore, at whose approach, the *Indians* fled, although now they saw they were men, who made signes to stay their flight, that they may have Trade with them, and to that end they brought certaine Copper-Kettles; the *Indians* by degrees made their approach nearer and nearer till they came to them, when beholding their Vessells, which they had set forth before them, the *Indian* knocking them were much delighted with the sound, and much more astonished to see they would

not

not breake, being so thin, for attaining those Vessells they brought them much Bever, fraughting them richly away according to their desires, this was the first working providence of *Christ* to stir up our *English* Nation, to plant these parts in hope of a rich Trade for Bever-skins, and this made some of our Countrymen make their abode in these parts, whom this Army of *Christ* at their comming over found as fit helps to further their designe in planting the Churches of *Christ*; Who by a more admirable act of his Providence not long after prepared for his peoples arrivall as followeth.

The Summer after the blazing Starre (whose motion in the Heavens was from *East* to *West*, poynting out to the sons of men the progresse of the glorious Gospell of *Christ*, the glorious King of his Churches) even about the yeare 1618. a little before the removeall of that Church of *Christ* from *Holland* to *Plimoth* in New *England*, as the ancient *Indians* report, there befell a great mortality among them, the greatest that ever the memory of Father to Sonne tooke notice of, chiefly desolating those places, where the *English* afterward planted the Country of *Pockanoky*, *Agissawamg*, it was almost wholy deserted, insomuch that the Neighbour *Indians* did abandon those places for feare of death, fleeing more West & by South, observing the East and by Northern parts were most smitten with this contagion, the *Abarginny*-men consisting of *Mattachusets*, *Wippanaps* and *Tarratines* were greatly weakned, and more especially the three Kingdomes, or *Saggamore*-ships of the *Mattachusets*, who were before this mortality most populous, having under them seven Dukedomes or petty *Saggamores*, and the *Nianticks* and *Narrowganssits*, who before this came were but of little note, yet were they now not much increased by such as fled thither for feare of death, the *Pecods* (who retained the Name of a war-like people, till afterwards conquered by the *English*) were also smitten at this time. Their Disease being a sore Consumption, sweeping away whole Families, but chiefly yong Men and Children, the very seeds of increase, their *Powwowes*, which are their Doctors, working partly by Charmes, and partly by Medicine, were much amazed to see their *Wigwams* lie full of dead Corpes, and that now neither *Squantam* nor *Abbamocho* cou'd helpe, which are the

their good and bad God, and also their *Powwows* themselves were oft smitten with deaths stroke, howling and much lamentation was heard among the living, who being possest with great feare, oftimes left their dead unburied, their manner being such, that they remove their habitations at death of any, this great mortality being an unwonted thing, feare them the more, because naturally the Country is very healthy. But by this meanes *Christ* (whose great and glorious workes the Earth throughout are altogether for the benefit of his Churches and chosen) not onely made roome for his people to plant; but also tamed the hard and cruell hearts of these barbarous *Indians*, insomuch that halfe a handfull of his people landing not long after in *Plimoth*-Plantation, found little resistance, of whom the Author purposes not to speake particularly, being prevented by the honoured Mr. *Winslow*, who was an eye-witnesse of the worke: onely thus much by the way, they were sent to keepe possession for their Brethren and fellow Souldiers, who arrived eight yeares after them, as in processe of this story will God-willing appeare: and verily herein they quit themselves like men, or rather *Christ* for and by them, maintaining the place notwithstanding the multitude of difficulties they met withall at their first landing, being in doubtfull suspence what intertainment these Barbarians would give them, having with prayer supplicated the Lord in the Name of Christ their King and guide in this their undertaking, they manned out a Boate to discover what store of the Inhabitants were there. Now these men, whose courage exceeded the number, being guided by the provident hand of the most high, landed in some severall places; and by making fires gave signes of their approach, now the *Indians*, whose dwellings are most neer the water-side, appeared with their Bowes bent and Arrowes one the string, let fly their long shafts among this little company, whom they might soon have inclosed, but the Lord otherwise disposed of it, for one Captaine *Miles Standish* having his fowling-peece in a reddinesse, presented full at them, his shot being directed by the provident Hand of the most high God, strook the stoutest *Sachem* among them one the right Arme, it being bent over his shoulder to reach an Arrow forth his Quiver, as their manner is to draw them forth in fight, at this stroke they

all fled with great swiftnesse through the Woods and Thickets, then the *English*, who more thirsted after their conversion than destruction, returned to their Bote without receiving any damage, and soon after arrived where they left their Brethren, to whom they declared the good hand of God toward them, with thankfull acknowledgement of this great worke of his in preserving them; Yet did they all remaine full of incumbred thoughts, the *Indians*, of whose multitudes they had now some intelligence, together with experience of spirits, and also knew well without commerce with them they were not like long to subsist.

But hee, whose worke they went about, wrought so rare a Providence for them, which cannot but be admired of all that heare it. Thus it befell as they were discoursing in the Bote they had built for shelter, all of a sudden, an *Indian* came in among them, at whose speech they were all agast, he speaking in the *English* Language, *Much welcome Englishmen*, their wonder was the greater, because upon those Costes they supposed no *English* had so much as set foote, and verily Christ had prepared him on purpose to give his people intertainment, the *Indian* having lived in *England* two year or thereabout, after which he returned home, and at this time had wandred into those parts in company of other *Indians*, all this, and the condition of the neere adjoyning *Indians*, hee soon discovered unto them, at which they were transported beyond themselves very much, what with joy and the mixture of their former feare and affection intervening with the other, surprised all their senses of a sudden, that long it was ere each party could take its proper place, yea, and beyond all this *Christ Jesus*, by the power of his blessed Spirit, did now work upon all their faculties both of Soule and Body, the great impression of his present Providence might not soon be washed off with the following incumbred cares of a Desart Wilderness; but to contract, they made use of the present opportunity, and by the instrumentall meanes of this *Indian*, became acquainted and reconciled with most of the Neighbouring *Indians*. And afterward planted a Church of Christ there, and set up civill Government, calling the Name of the place *Plimoth*: under this jurisdiction there are ten Churches at this very day, this being the

first

first place any *English* resorted unto for the advancement of the Kingly Government of Christ in this *Westerne* World.

CHAP. IX.

Of the first preparation of the Marchant Adventurers, in the Mattachusets.

NOw it will be time to returne againe to *England*, to speake further of the people that wee left in way of preparation; who in the yeare 1628. sent forth some store of servants to provide against the wants of a Desart Wilderneſſe, amongst whom came over a mixt multitude, insomuch that very little appeared of the following worke, onely the much honoured Mr. *John Indicat*, came over with them to governe, a fit instrument to begin this Wilderneſſe-worke, of courage bold undaunted yet sociable, and of a chearfull spirit, loving and austere, applying himselfe to either as occasion served. And now let no man be offended at the Authors rude Verse, penned of purpose to keepe in memory the Names of such worthies as Christ made strong for himselfe, in this unwonted worke of his.

John Endicat *twice Governour of the* English, *inhabiting the* Mattachusets *Bay in* N. England.

STrong valiant John *Wilt thou march on, and take up station first,*
Christ call'd hath thee, his Souldier be, and faile not of thy trust;
Wilderness wants Christs grace supplants thē plant his Churches pure,
With Tongues gifted, and graces led, help thou to his procure;
Undanted thou wilt not allow, Malignant men to wast: (tast.
Christs Vineyard heere, whose grace should cheer, his well-beloved's
Then honoured be, thy Christ hath thee their Generall promoted:
To shew their love, in place above, his people have thee voted.
Yet must thou fall, to grave With all the Nobles of the Earth,
Thou rotting Worme, to dust must turn, and Worse but for new birth.

The place picked out by this People to settle themselves in, was in the besome of the out-stretched arme of *Cape Anne*, now called

called *Gloster*, but at the place of their abode they began to build a Town, which is called *Salem*, after some little space of time having made tryall of the Sordid spirits of the Neighbouring *Indians*, the most bold among them began to gather to divers places, which they began to take up for their owne, those that were sent over servants, having itching desires after novelties, found a reddier way to make an end of their Masters provision, then they cou'd finde meanes to get more; They that came over their own men had but little left to feed on, and most began to repent when their strong Beere and full cups ran as small as water in a large Land, but little Corne, and the poore *Indians* so far from relieving them, that they were forced to lengthen out their owne food with Acorns, and that which added to their present distracted thoughts, the Ditch betweene *England* and their now place of abode was so wide, that they could not leap over with a lope-staffe, yet some delighting their Eye with the rarity of things present, and feeding their fancies with new discoveries at the Springs approach, they made shift to rub out the Winters cold by the Fire-side, having fuell enough growing at their very doores, turning down many a drop of the Bottell, and burning Tobacco with all the ease they could, discoursing betweene one while and another, of the great progresse they would make after the Summers-Sun had changed the Earths white furr'd Gowne into a greene Mantell. Now the vernall of thirty nine being come, they addrest themselves to coste it as far as they durst for feare of loosing themselves, or falling into the hands of unknown *Indians*, being kept in awe by a report of a cruell people, not far of called the *Tarratines*. All this while little like-lihood there was building the Temple for Gods worsh'p, there being only two that began to hew stones in the Mountaines, the one named Mr. *Bright*, and the other Mr. *Blaxton*, and one of them began to build, but when they saw all sorts of stones would not fit in the building, as they supposed, the one betooke him to the Seas againe, and the other to till the Land, retaining no simbole of his former profession, but a Canonicall Coate.

CHAP. X.

Of the first Church of Christ, gathered at Salem *in the* Mattachusets *Government.*

THis yeare 1629. came over three godly Ministers of *Christ Jesus*, intending to shew his power in his peoples lowest condition as his manner is, thereby to strengthen their Faith in following difficulties, and now although the number of the faithfull people of Christ were but few, yet their longing desires to gather into a Church was very great; And therefore addressed themselves to finde out the blessed Rules of Christ for preserving herein, who through the assistance of his Blessed Spirit, found that the Word of God, penned by the Apostles in many Epistles, written to particular Churches, consisting of such as are beloved Saints, by calling appearing so in the judgement of Charity, being tryed by the rule of the word, not scandalous in their Lives, for the society of such they sought, and in these beginnings found very few, seven being the lest number a Church can be gathered, or conceived by just consequence from the Word of God. Having fasted and prayed with humble acknowledgement of their own unworthinesse to be called of Christ to so worthy a worke, they joyned together in a holy Covenant with the Lord, and one with another promising by the Lords Assistance to walke together in Exhorting, Admonishing, and Rebuking one another, and to cleave to the Lord with a full purpose of heart, according to the blessed Rules of his Word made known unto them; and further they seeing by light of Scripture the *Lord Christ* ascended up on high to give gifts unto men, not onely extraordinary as Apostles, *&c.* before the Canon of the Scripture was perfected, but also ordinary as Pastors and Teachers, and that such are to be fitted with gifts according, for so mighty a worke, as is the Feeding and Ruling the Flock of Christ. Wherefore they Elected and Ordained one Mr. *Higginson* to be Tracher of this first Church of *Christ*, set up in those parts, a man indued with grace apt to teach, and mighty in the Scriptures, Learned in the Tongues, able to convince gain-sayers, aptly applying the word to his hearers, who departed this life not long after, of whom it may be said:

The

The Reverend Mr. Higginson, *first Pastor of the Church of Christ at* Salem *in* New England.

WHat Golden gaine made Higginson *remove,*
From fertill Soyle to Wildernesse of Rocks;
'Twas Christs rich Pearle stir'd up thee toile to love,
For him to feed in Wildernesse his flocks.
First Teacher, he here Sheepe and Lambs together,
First crowned shall be, hee in the Heavens of all,
Christs Pastors here, but yet Christ folke had rather,
Him here retaine, blest he whom Christ hath call'd.

They also called to the Office of an Exhorting Elder Mr. *Scelton*, a man of a gratious Speech, full of Faith and furnished by the Lord with gifts from above, to begin this great worke of his, that makes the whole Earth to ring againe at this present day.

The Reverend Mr. Scelton *first Pastor of the Church of Christ, at* Salem *in* New England, 1630.

SCelton for Christ did leave his Native soile,
Christ Grace first wrought for him, or he had never
A Pastor been in Wildernesse to toile,
Where Christ his Flock doth into Churches gather;
For five yeares space to end thy War-faire thou,
Must meete with wantes, what Wants can be to him?
Whose Shepheard's Christ, Earths fullnesse hath for you;
And Heavens rich Crowne for thee, With's conquest win.

This Church of *Christ*, being thus begun, the Lord with the Water-spouts of his tender Mercy caused to increase and fructify. And now let every Eare listen, and every heart admire, and inlarge it selfe to the astonishment of the whole man at this wonderous worke of the great *Jehovah*; That in thrice seven yeares (after the beginning of this Worke) wrought such fearfull Desolations, and wonderfull Alterations among our *English* Nation,

Nation, and also in this dismall Desart, wasting the naturall Inhabitant with deaths stroke, and that as is former touched, the *Mattachusets*, who were a populous Nation, consisting of 30000 able men, now brought to lesse then 300. and in their roome and place of abode this poore Church of Christ consisting at their beginning, but of seven persons, increased to forty three Churches in joynt Communion one with the other, professing *One God, One Christ, and one Gospell*, and in those Churches about 7750. Soules in one profession of the Rules of *Christ*, and that which makes the worke more admirable in the Eyes of all beholders, mens habitations are cut out of the Woods and Bushes, neither can this place be entered by our *English* Nation, but by passing through a dreadfull and terrible Ocean of nine hundred Leagues in length.

CHAP. XI.

Of the Glorious beginnings of a thorough Reformation in the Churches of Christ.

FUrther know these are but the beginnings of Christs glorious Reformation, and Restauration of his Churches to a more glorious splendor than ever. Hee hath therefore caused their dazeling brightnesse of his presence to be contracted in the burning Glasse of these his peoples zeale, from whence it begins to be lefe upon many parts of the World with such hot reflection of that burning light, which hath fired many places already, the which shall never be quenched till it hath burnt up *Babilon* Root and Branch, and now let the Reader looke one the 102. *Psalme*, the Prophet *Isaia 66. Chapter*, take this sharpe Sword of Christs Word, and all other Scriptures of like nature, and follow on yee valiant of the Lord; And behold the worthies of *Christ*, as they are boldly leading forth his Troopes into these *Westerne* Fields, marke them well Man by Man as they march, terrible as an Army with Banners, croud in all yee that long to see this glorious sight, see ther's their glorious King *Christ* one that white Horse, whose hooses like flint cast not only sparkes, but flames of fi e in his pacher. Behold his Crown beset

set with Carbunkles, wherein the names of his whole Army are written. Can there be ever night in his Presence, whose eyes are ten thousand times higher than the Sun ? Behold his swiftnes all you that have said, where is the promise of his comming ? Listen a while, hear what his herauld proclaimes, *Babylon* is fallen, is fallen, both her Doctrine & Lordly rabble of Popes, Cardinalls, Lordly-Bishops, Friers, Monks, Nuns, Seminary-Priests, Jesuits, Ermites, Pilgrims, Deans, Prebends, Arch-Deacons, Commissaries, Officialls, Proctors, Somners, Singing-men, Choristers, Organist, Bellows-blowers, Vergers, Porters, Sextons, Beads-men, and Bel-ringers and all others who never had name in the Word of God; together with all her false Doctrines, although they may seeme otherwise never so contradictory as *Arians*, who deny the God-head of Christ, and *Gortenists*, who deny the Humanity of Christ: Papists, who thinke to merit Heaven by the Workes of the Law, *Antinomians*, who deny the Law of God altogether as a rule to walke by in the obedience of Faith, and deny good works to be the Frutit of Faith, *Arminians*, who attribute Gods Election, or Reprobation to the will of Man, and *Familists*, who forsake the revealed Will of God, and make men depend upon strong Revelations, for the knowledge of Gods Electing Love towards them. *Conformitants* or *Formalists*, who bring in a forme of worship of their owne, and joyne it with the worship God hath appointed in his Word; *Seekers*, that deny all manner of worship or Ordinances of *Christ Jesus*, affirming them to be quite lost, and not to be attained till new Apostles come.

CHAP. XII.

Of the voluntary banishment, chosen by this People of Christ, and their last farewell taken of their Country and Friends.

AND now behold the severall Regiments of these Souldiers of *Christ*, as they are shipped for his service in the *Western* World, part thereof being come to the Towne and Port of *Southamptan* in *England*, where they were to be shipped, that they

they might prosecute this designe to the full, one Ship called the *Eagle*, they wholy purchase, and many more they hire, filling them with the seede of man and beast to sow this yet untilled Wildernesse withall, making sale of such Land as they possesse, to the great admiration of their Friends and Acquaintance, who thus expostulate with them, What, will not the large income of your yearly revenue content you, which in all reason cannot chuse but be more advantagious both to you and yours, then all that Rocky Wildernesse, whither you are going, to run the hazard of your life? Have you not here your Tables filled with great variety of Foode, your Coffers filled with Coyne, your Houses beautifully built and filled with all rich Furniture? (or otherwise) have you not such a gainfull Trade as none the like in the Towne where you live? Are you not inriched daily? Are not your Children very well provided for as they come to years? (nay) may you not here as pithily practise the two chiefe Duties of a Christian (if Christ give strength) namely Mortification and Sanctification as in any place of the World? What helps can you have there that you must not carry from hence? With bold resolvednesse these stout Souldiers of Christ reply; as Death, the King of terror with all his dreadfull attendance inhumane and barbarous, tortures doubled and trebled by all the infernall furies have appeared but light and momentany to the Souldiers of *Christ Iesus*, so also the Pleasure, Profits and Honours of this World set forth in their most glorious splendor, and magnitude by the alluring Lady of Delight, proffering pleasant embraces, cannot intice with her *Syren* Songs, such Souldiers of Christ, whose aymes are elevated by him, many Millions above that brave Warrier *Vlysses*.

Now seeing all can be said will but barely set forth the immoveable Resolutions that Christ continued in these men; Passe on and attend with teares, if thou hast any, the following discourse, while these Men, Women and Children are taking their last farwell of their Native Country, Kindred, Friends and Acquaintance, while the Ships attend them; Many make choise of some solitary place to eccho out their bowell-breaking affections in bidding their Friends farwell, deare friends (sayes one) as neare as my owne soule doth thy love lodge in my brest, with

 thought

thought of the heart-burning Raviſhments, that thy Heavenly ſpeeches have wrought: my melting ſoule is poured out at preſent with theſe words, both of them had their farther ſpeach ſtrangled from the depth of their inward dolor, with breaſt-breaking ſobs, till leaning their heads each on others ſhoulders, they let fall the ſalt-dropping dews of vehement affection, ſtriving to exceede one another, much like the departure of *David* and *Jonathan:* having a little eaſed their hearts with the ſtill ſtreames of Teares, they recovered ſpeech againe. Ah! my much honoured friend, hath Chriſt given thee ſo great a charge as to be Leader of his People into that far remote, and vaſt Wilderneſſe, I, oh, and alas thou muſt die there and never ſhall I ſee thy Face in the fleſh againe, were thou called to ſo great a taske as to paſſe the pretious Ocean, and hazard thy perſon in Battell againſt thouſands of Malignant Enemies there? there were hopes of thy return with triumph, but now after two, three, or foure moneths ſpent with daily expectation of ſwallowing Waves, and cruell Pirates, you are to be Landed among barbarous *Indians*, famous for nothing but cruelty, where you are like to ſpend your days in a famiſhing condition for a long ſpace; Scarce had he uttered this, but preſently hee lockes his friend faſt in his armes, holding each other thus for ſome ſpace of time, they weepe againe, But as *Paul* to his beloved flock: the other replies what doe you weeping and breaking my heart? I am now preſt for the ſervice of our *Lord Chriſt*, to re-build the moſt glorious Edifice of Mount *Sion* in a Wilderneſſe, and as *John* Baptiſt, I muſt cry prepare yee the way of the Lord, make his paths ſtrait, for behold hee is comming againe, hee is comming to deſtroy *Antichriſt*, and give the whore double to drinke the very dregs of his wrath.

Then my deare friend unfold thy hands, for thou and I have much worke to doe, I and all Chriſtian Souldiers the World throughout, then hand in hand they leade each other to the Sandy-banks of the briniſh Ocean, when clenching their hands faſt, they unlooſe not til inforced to wipe their watery-eyes, whoſe conſtant ſtreames forced a watery-path upon their Cheekes, which to hide from the eyes of others they ſhun ſociety for a time, but being called by occaſion, whoſe bauld back-part none

can

can lay hold one; They thrust in among the throng now ready to take Ship, where they beheld the like affections with their own among divers Relations, Husbands and Wives with mutuall consent are now purposed to part for a time 900 Leagues asunder, since some providence at present will not suffer them to goe together, they resolve their tender affections shall not hinder this worke of Christ, the new Married and betrothed man, exempt by the Law of God from war, now will not claime their priviledge, but being constrained by the Love of Christ, lock up their naturall affections for a time, till the Lord shall be pleased to give them a meeting in this *Westerne* World, sweetly mixing it with spirituall love, in the meane time many Fathers now take their yong *Samuells*, and give them to this service of Christ all their Lives. Brethren, Sisters, Unkles, Nephewes, Neeces, together with all Kindred of bloud that binds the bowells of affection in a true Lovers knot, can now take their last farewell, each of other, although naturall affection will still claime her right, and manifest her selfe to bee in the body by looking out at the Windowes in a mournefull manner among this company, thus disposed doth many Reverend and godly Pastors of Christ present themselves, some in a Seamans Habit, and their scattered sheepe comming as a poore Convoy loftily take their leave of them as followeth, what dolefull dayes are these, when the best choise our Orthodox Ministers can make is to take up a perpetuall banishment from their native soile, together with their Wives and Children, wee their poore sheepe they may not feede, but by stoledred should they abide here. *Lord Christ*, here they are at thy command, they go, this is the doore thou hast opened upon our earnest request, and we hope it shall never be shut: for *Englands* sake they are going from *England* to pray without ceasing for *England*, O *England*! thou shalt finde *New England* prayers prevailing with their God for thee, but now woe alas, what great hardship must these our indeared Pastors indure for a long season, with these words they lift up their voyces and wept, adding many drops of salt liquor to the ebbing Ocean; Then shaking hands they bid adue with much cordiall affection to all their Brethren, and Sisters in Christ, yet now the Scorne and Derision of those times,

 and

and for this their great enterprise counted as so many crackt-braines, but Christ will make all the Earth know the wisdome he hath indued them with, shall over-top all the humane policy in the World, as the sequell wee hope will shew; Thus much shall suffice in generall to speak of their peoples farewell they tooke from time to time of their Country and Friends.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the charges expended by this poore People, to injoy Christ in his purity of his Ordinances.

AND now they enter the Ships, should they have cast up what it would have cost to people *New England* before hand, the most strongest of Faith among them would certainly have staggered much, and very hardly have set saile. But behold and wonder at the admirable Acts of Christ, here it is cast up to thy hand, the passage of the persons that peopled *New England* cost ninety five thousand pounds, the Swine, Goates, Sheepe, Neate and Horse, cost to transport twelve thousand pound, besides the price they cost, getting food for all persons for the time till they could bring the Woods to tillage amounted unto forty five thousand pounds; Nayles, Glasse and other Ironworke for their meeting-houses, and other dwelling houses before they could raise any meanes in the Country to purchase them, Eighteene thousand pounds. Armes, Powder, Bullet and Match, together with their great Artillery, twenty two thousand pounds: the whole sum amounts unto one hundred ninety two thousand pound, beside that which the Adventurers laid out in *England*, which was a small pittance compared with this, and indeed most of those that cast into this Banke were the chiefe Adventurers. Neither let any man thinke the sum above expressed did defray the whole ch rge of this Army, which amounts to above as much more, onely this sum lies still in banke, and the other they have had the income againe; This therefore is chiefly presented to satisfie such as thinke *New England men* have beene bad husbands in mannaging their Estates, assuredly here

here it lies in banke, put out to the greatest advantage that ever any hath beene for many hundred of yeares before, and verily although in casting it up some hundreds may be miscounted (for the Author would not willingly exceede in any respect) but to be sure Christ stands by and beholds every mite that (in the obedience of Faith) is cast into this Treasury: but what doe wee answering men? the money is all Christs, and certainly hee will take it well that (his,) have so disposed of it to his advantage; by this meanes hee hath had a great income in *England* of late, Prayers, Teares and Praise, and some Reformation; *Scotland* and *Ireland* have met with much of the profit of this Banke, *Virginia*, *Bermodas* and *Barbados* have had a taste, and *France* may suddenly meete with the like. Therefore repent you not, you that have cast in your Coyne, but tremble all you that with a penurious hand have not onely cast, in such as are taking out to hord it up in your Napkins, remember *Ananias* and *Saphirah*, how darest thou doe it in these dayes, when the Lord hath need of it? Gentle Reader make use of this memorable Providence of Christ for his *New England* Churches, where had this poore people this great sum of money? the mighty Princes of the Earth never opened their Coffers for them, and the generality of these men were meane and poore in the things of this life, but sure it is the work is done, let God have the glory, who hath now given them food to the full, and some to spare for other Churches.

CHAP. XIV.

Of the wonderfull preservation of Christ, in carrying his People Men, Women, Children, through the largest Ocean in the World.

AND now you have had a short survay of the charges of their *New England* Vayages, see their progresse being safe aboard weighing Anker, and hoysting saile they betooke them to the protection of the Lord on the wide Ocean, no sooner were they dispersed by reason of the widenesse of the Sea, but the *Arrabella* (for so they called the Eagle, which the company

ny purchased in honour of the Lady *Arrabella*, Wife to that godly Esquire, *Izack Johnson*) espied foure Ships, as they supposed, in pursuit of them, their suspition being the more augmented by reason of a report (when they lay in harbor) of foure Dunkerk-men of war, who were said to lie wating for their comming forth, at this sight they make preparation, according to their present condition, comforting one another in the sweete mercies of Christ: the weaker sex betooke them to the Ships hold, but the men one Decks waite in a readinesse for the enemies approach. At whose courage many of the Seamen wonder, not knowing under whose command these their passengers were, even he who makes all his Souldiers bold as Lions. Yet was he not minded to make triall of his peoples valiantcy in fight at this time, for the ships comming up with them proved to be their own Countrymen and friends, at which they greatly rejoyced, seeing the good hand of their God was upon them, and are further strengthened in Faith to rely one Christ, for the future time against all Leakes, Stormes, Rockes, Sands, and all other wants a long Sea-voyage procures, sustaining them with all meeknesse and patience, yet sensible of the Lords frownes, humbling their soules before him, and also rejoycing in his deliverances in taking the cup of Salvation, and paying the tribute of thankfulnesse to the most high, whose provident hand was diversly directed toward them, purposely to point out the great hardships they must undergoe in this their Christian warfare, and withall to tell them, although their difficulties were many and mournfull, yet their victories should be much more glorious and joyfull, eminently eyed of the whole World, but now keeping their course so neere as the winds will suffer them, the billowes begin to grow lofty and rageing, and suddenly bringing them into the vale of death, covering them with the formidable flouds, and dashing their bodies from side to side, hurling their unfixed goods from place to place at these unwonted workes. Many of these people amazed finde such opposition in nature, that her principles grow feeble, and cannot digest her food, loathing all manner of meat, so that the vitall parts are hindered from cooperating with the Soule in spirituall duties, insomuch that both Men, Women and Children are in a helplesse condition for

for present, and now is the time if ever of recounting this service they have, and are about to undertake for Christ; but he, who is very sensible of his peoples infirmities, rebukes the winds, and Seas for their sakes, and then the reverend and godly among them begin to exhort them in the name of the Lord, and from the Lord, being fitted with such words as much incourrages the worke they are going about, many of their horses and other Cattell are cast over board by the way, to the great disheartning of some, but Christ knew well how far his peoples hearts would be taken off the maine worke with these things. And therefore although he be very tender in providing outward necessaries for his, yet rather than this great worke (he intends) should be hindered, their Tables shall be spred but thinly in this wilderness for a time. After the Lord had exercised them thus severall ways, he sent Diseases to visit their Ships, that the desart Land they were now drawing near unto might not be deserted by them at first enterance, which sure it would have been by many, had not the Lord prevented by a troublesom passage: At forty dayes end, or thereabout, they cast to sound the Seas depth, and find them sixty fadom, by which they deem the bankes of New found Land are near, where they being provided with Cod-line and Hooke hale up some store of fish to their no small refreshing, and within some space of time after they approach the Cost of *New England*, where they are againe provided with Mackarell, and that which was their greater rejoycing, they discover Land, at sight thereof they blessed the Lord.

But before the Author proceed any further in this Discourse, take here a short survay of all the Voyages by Sea, in the transportation of these Armies of the great *Jehova*, for fifteene years space to the year 1643. about which time *England* began to indeavour after Reformation, and the Souldiers of Christ were set at liberty to bide his battells at home, for whose assistance some of the chiefe worthies of Christ returned back: the number of Ships that transported passengers in this space of time, as is supposed is 298. Men, Women and Children passing over this wide Ocean, as near as at present can be gathered, is also supposed to be 21200. or thereabout.

CHAP

CHAP. XV.

An Exhortation to all People, Nations and Languages, to indeavour the advancing of the Kingdome of Christ in the purity of his Ordinances, seeing he hath done, such admirable Acts for these poore shrubs.

ANd now all you whose affections are taken with wonderfull matters (Attend) and you that thinke Christ hath forgotten his poore despised people (Behold) and all you that hopefully long for Christs appearing to confound *Antichrist* (Consider) and rejoyce all yee his Churches the World throughout, for the Lambe is preparing his Bride, and oh ! yee the antient Beloved of Christ, whom he of old led by the hand from *Egypt* to *Canaan*, through that great and terrible Wildernesse, looke here, behold him whom you have peirced, preparing to peirce your hearts with his *Wonder-working Providence*, and to provoke you by this little handfull of his people to looke on him, and mourne. Yet let no man think these few weake Wormes would restraine the wnoderfull Workes of Christ, as onely to themselves, but the quite contrary, these but the Porch of his glorious building in hand, and if hee have shewed such admirable acts of his providence toward these, what will he doe when the whole Nation of *English* shall set upon like Reformation according to the direct Rule of his Word ? Assured confidence there is also for all Nations, from the undoubted promise of Christ himselfe.

The Winter is past, the Raine is changed and gone, come out of the holes of the secret places, feare not because your number is but small, gather into Churches, and let Christ be your King, yee *Presbytery*, Lord it not over them or any Churches, but feed every one, that one flock over which Christ hath made you overseers, and yee people of Christ give your *Presbytery* double honours, that they with you may keepe the watch of the Lord over his Churches. Yee *Dutch* come out of your hods-podge, the great mingle mangle of Religion among you hath caused the Churches of Christ to increase so little with you, standing at a

stay

ſtay like Corne among Weeds, Oh, yee *French*! feare not the great ſwarmes of *Locuſts*, nor the croking *Frogs* in your Land, Chriſt is reaching out the hand to you, look what hee hath done for theſe *Engliſh*, and ſure hee is no Reſpecter of Perſons, &c. yee *Germanes* that have had ſuch a bloudy bickering, Chriſt is now comming to your aide, then caſt off your looſe, and careleſſe kinde of Reformation, gather into Churches, and keepe them pure, that Chriſt may delight to dwell among you: oh *Italy*! The Seat and Center of the Beaſt, Chriſt will now pick out a People from among you for himſelfe, ſee here what wonders hee workes in little time. Oh! yee *Spaniards* and *Portugalls*, Chriſt will ſhew you the abominations of that beaſtly Whore, who hath made your Nations drunke with the Wine of her Fornication. Dread not that cruell murtherous Inquiſition, for Chriſt is now making Inquiſition for them, and behold, here how hee hath rewarded them, who dealt cruelly with theſe his people.

Finally, oh all yee Nations of the World, behold great is the worke the glorious King of Heaven and Earth hath in hand; beware of neglecting the call of Chriſt: and you the Seed of *Iſrael* both leſſe and more, the ratling of your dead bones together is at hand, Sinewes, Fleſh and Life: at the Word of Chriſt it comes Counſellers and Judges, you ſhall have as at the beginning to fight for you, as *Gidion, Bareck, Jeptha, Samſon &c.* then ſure your deliverance ſhall be ſudden and wonderfull, if Chriſt have done ſuch great things for theſe low Shrubs, what will his moſt Admirable, Excellent and wonderfull Worke for you be, but as the Reſurrection from the dead, when all the miraculous acts of his wonderfull power ſhewed upon *Pharoah*? for your fore-Fathers deliverance ſhall be ſwallowed up with thoſe far greater workes that Chriſt ſhall ſhew for your deliverance upon the whole World, by Fiers and Bloud deſtroying both *Pope* and *Turke*, when you ſhall ſee great ſmoake and flames aſcending up on high, of that great *Whore*, *Revel.* 14 & 11. *verſe*, and the 17. & 16. *verſe*, and the 18. the 8. and 18. *verſ.* *Then oh! you People of Iſrael gather together as one Man, and grow together as one Tree.* Ezek. 37. & 23. For Chriſt the great King of all the Earth is now going forth in his great Wrath and terrible In-

dignation to avenge the bloud of his Saints, *Ezek.* 38. & 19. *vers.* and now for the great and bloudy Battell of *Gog* and *Magog*, Rivers of bloud, and up to the Horse-bridles, even the bloud of those have drunke bloud so long, oh! dreadfull day, when the patience and long-suffering of Christ, that hath lasted so many hundreds of yeares shall end, what wonderous workes are now suddenly to be wrought for the accomplishment of these things! Then judge all you (whom the *Lord Christ* hath given a discerning spirit) whether these poore *New England* People be not the fore runners of Christs Army, and the marvelous providences which you shall now heare, be not the very Finger of God, and whether the Lord hath not sent this people to Preach in this Wilderness, and to proclaime to all Nations, the neere approach of the most wonderfull workes that ever the Sonnes of men saw. Will not you believe that a Nation can be borne in a day? here is a worke come very neare it; but if you will believe you shall see far greater things than these, and that in very little time, and in the meane time looke on the following Discourse.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the admirable Acts of Christs Providence, in delivering this his people in their Voyages by Sea, from many foule dangers.

YOu have heard of about 198. Ships passing the perillous Ocean, of all which I heare of but one that ever miscarried; yet shall you here see some of the great dangers they were in the Ship, this Author came in a foggy morning, anon by breake of day was ready to be steamed by a Pirate, but being unready for fight they passed by; others by a fog, have been delivered from farther chase of them, so that of this great number never did any Pirate make one shot at them, according to best intelligence. Their deliverance from leakes also hath been no lesse wonderfull, some so neare sinking, that the loving affection betweene Husband and Wife, hath caused them to fould each other in their Armes, with Resolution to die together, and make the Sea their

their Grave, yet not ceasing to call on the Lord, their present helpe in time of need, who is minded to manifest his great care for this his people to all that shall come to hear thereof. And therefore directs to meanes for freeing their ships, being now ready to founder in the depthlesse Ocean. And further, as if these deliverances were too little to expresse the tender care *Christ* hath of his, to free them from all dangers, those that occupy their businesse in the deepe, and see the Wonders of God upon the waters, are taken with great astonishment to behold the extraordinary hand of the most High, in transportation of this people, in that their Ships all of a sudden are brought so neer the ground, and yet strike not their Pilots, missing ofttimes of their skill on those unwandered Coasts, but their *Jehovah* hee misses not to be an exact Pilot in the most thickest foggs and darkest nights, for thus it befell.

The night newly breaking off her darknesse, and the day-light being clouded with a grosse vapor, as if nights Curtaines remained halfe shut, the Sea-men and Passengers standing on the Decks, suddenly fixed their eyes one a great Boat (as they deemed) and anon after they spied another, and after that another; but musing on the matter, they perceived themselves to be in great danger of many great Rocks, with much terror and affrightment, they turned the Ship about, expecting every moment to be dasht in pieces against the Rocks. But he whose providence brought them in, Piloted them out againe, without any danger, to their great Rejoycing. And assuredly (so extraordinarily eminent and admirable to the eyes of many beholders, was the wonderfull workes in magnifying the Rich grace toward this his people in prefering them) that many Masters of Ships left their Sea-imployment for a time, and chose rather to suffer the wants of a Wildernesse with the people of God, than to increase their Estates in a full-fed Land, and verily so taken they were, that they fell down at *Christs* Feet, and were placed by him as living stones, Elect and Pretious in his Churches; also many other Seamen were brought to seeke after *Christ* in his Ordinances, by which it appeares some great worke, by some far surpassing all this, hath *Christ* ere long to doe, that hee thus fitteth Instruments. Then all you that occupy shipping prepare for his

service, who will assuredly prove the best owner that ever you went to Sea for.

Furthermore, the condition of those persons passed the Seas, in this long and restlesse Voyage (if rightly considered) will more magnifie the grace of *Christ* in this great Worke. First, such were many of them that never before had made any path through the Waters, no not by boat, neither so much as seene a Ship, others so tenderly brought up that they had little hope of their Lives continuance under such hardships, as so long a Voyage must needs inforce them to indure, others there were, whose Age did rather call for a quiet Couch to rest them on, than a pinching Cabbin in a Reeling Ship, others whose weake natures were so borne downe with Disease, that they could hardly craule up the Ships-side, yet ventured their weake Vessells to this *Westurne* World. Here also might you see weakly Women, whose hearts have trembled to set foote in Boate, but now imboldened to venter through these tempestuous Seas with their young Babes, whom they nurture up with their Breasts, while their bodies are tossed on the tumbling Waves; also others whose Wombes could not containe their fruit, being ready for the Worlds-light, travailed and brought forth upon this depthlesse Ocean in this long Voyage, lively and strong Children yet living, and like to prove succeeding Instruments in the Hands of *Christ*, for furthering this worke; among other *Sea-borne Cotten*, now a young student in a Colledge in *Cambridge*, being Son to that Famous and Renowned Teacher of *Christ*, M. *John Cotten*; by all this and much more that might be said, for allmost every one you discourse withall will tell you of some Remarkeable Providence of God shewed toward them in this their Voyage, by which you may see the Worke of *Christ* is not to bee laid aside because of difficulties.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVII.

Of the first leading of these People of Christ, when the Civill Government was Established.

BUt to goe on with the Story, the 12 of *July* or thereabout 1630. these Souldiers of *Christ* first set foote one this *Westerne* end of the World; where arriveing in safety, both Men, Women and Children. On the North-side of *Charles* River, they landed neare a small Island, called *Noddells* Island, where one Mr. *Samuel Maverick* then living, a man of a very loving and curteous behaviour, very ready to entertaine strangers, yet an enemy to the Reformation in hand, being strong for the Lordly Prelaticall power one this Island, he had built a small Fort with the helpe of one Mr. *David Tompson*, placing therein foure Murtherers to protect him from the *Indians*. About one mile distant upon the River ran a small creeke, taking its Name from Major Gen. *Edward Gibbons*, who dwelt there for some yeares after; One the South side of the River one a point of Land called *Blaxtons* point, planted Mr. *William Blaxton*, of whom we have formerly spoken: to the South-East of him, neare an Island called *Tompsons* Island lived some few Planters more, these persons were the first Planters of those parts, having some small Trading with the *Indians* for *Beaver*-Skins, which moved them to make their aboade in those parts, whom these first Troopes of *Christs* Army, found as fit helpes to further their worke. At their arrivall those small number of Christians gathered at *Salem*, greatly rejoycing and the more, because they saw so many that came chiefly for promoting the great Work of *Christ* in hand, the Lady *Arrabella* and some other godly Women aboad at *Salem*, but their Husbands continued at *Charles* Town, both for the settling the civill Government, and gathering another Church of *Christ*. The first Court was holden aboard the *Arrabella* the 23. of *August*. When the much honoured *John Wintrope* Esq. was chosen Governour for the remainder of that yeare, 1630. Also the worthy *Thomas Dudly* Esq. was chosen Deputy Governour, and Mr. *Simon Brodestreet* Secretary, the people after their long Voyage were many of them troubled

with the *Scurvy*, and some of them died: the first station they tooke up was at *Charles* Towne, where they pitched some Tents of Cloath, other built them small Huts, in which they lodged their Wives and Children. The first beginning of this worke seemed very dolorous; First for the death of that worthy personage *Izaac Johnson* Esq. whom the Lord had indued with many pretious gifts, insomuch that he was had in high esteeme among all the people of God, and as a chiefe Pillar to support this new erected building, He very much rejoyced at his death, that the Lord had been pleased to keepe his eyes open so long, as to see one Church of *Christ* gathered before his death, at whose departure there was not onely many weeping eyes, but some fainting hearts, fearing the fall of the present worke. For future Remembrance of him mind this *Meeter*.

Izaac Johnson Esquire, beloved of Christ and his people, and one of the Magistrates of *New England*.

WHat mov'd thee on the Seas upon such toyle With Lady-taking;
Christs drawing love all strength's above, When way for his hee's making.
Christ will have thee example be, honoured with's graces, yeilding
His Churches aid, foundation laid, now new one Christ a building.
Thy Faith, Hope, Love, Joy, Meeknesse prove improved for thy Lord,
As he to thee, to people be, in Government accord.
Oh! people Why, doth Christ deny this worthies life to lengthen?
Christ onely trust, Johnsons *turnd dust, and yet hee's crownd and strengthend.*

The griefe of this people was further increased by the sore sicknesse which befell among them, so that almost in every Family Lamentation, Mourning, and woe was heard, and no fresh food to be had to cherish them, it would assuredly have moved the most lockt up affections to Teares no doubt, had they past from one Hut to another, and beheld the piteous case these people were in, and that which added to their present distresse was the want of fresh water, for although the place did afford plenty,

plenty, yet for present they could finde but one Spring, and that not to be come at, but when the tide was downe, which caused many to passe over to the South-side of the River, where they afterward erected some other Townes, yet most admirable it was to see with what Christian courage many of these Souldiers of *Christ* carried it amidst all these calamities, and in *October*, the Governour Deputy and Assistants, held their second Court on the South-side of the River; Where they then began to build, holding correspondency with *Charles* Towne, as one and the same.

At this Court many of the first Planters came, and were made free, yet afterward none were admitted to this fellowship, or freedome, but such as were first joyned in fellowship with some one of the Churches of *Christ*, their chiefest aime being bent to promote his worke altogether. The number of Freemen this yeare was 110. or thereabout.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of the second Church of Christ, gathered at Charles *Towne in the* Mattacusets *Bay*, 1631.

AND now the new-come Souldiers of *Christ* strengthen themselves in him, and gather a Church at *Charles* Towne, whose extent at present did reach to both sides of the River, and in very little time after was divided into two Churches, the Reverend and judicious Mr. *John Wilson* was called to be Pastor thereof, a Man full of Faith, Courage and Zeale, for the truth of *Christ* persecuted, and hunted after by the usurping Prelates (and forced for present to part from his indeared Wife) yet honoured by *Christ*, and made a powerfull instrument in his hands for the cutting downe of Error, and Schisme, as in the sequell of this History will appeare, in whose weakenesse *Christs* power hath appeared.

The

The Grave and Reverend Mr. *John Wilson*, now Paſtor of the Church of Chriſt at *Soſton*, in *New England*.

JOhn VVilſon *will to Chriſts will ſubmit,*
In Wilderneſſe, where thou haſt Trialls found,
Chriſt in new making did compoſe thee fit,
And made thy Love zeale, for his truth abound.
Then it's not Wilſon, *but Chriſt by him hath,*
Error cut down when it o'retopping ſtood,
Thou then 'Gainſt it didſt ſhew an holy wrath;
Saving mens ſoules from this o're-flowing floud.
They thee deprave, thy Miniſtrey diſpiſe,
By thy thick utterance ſeeke to call Men back,
From hearing thee, but Chriſt for thee did riſe.
And turnd the wheel-right over them to crack.
Yea, cauſed thee with length of dayes to ſtand,
Steadfaſt in's houſe in old Age fruit to bring,
I and thy ſeed raiſe up by his command;
His Flock to feed, rejoyce my Muſe and ſing.
That Chriſt doth duſt regard ſo plentionſly,
Rich gifts to give, and heart to give him his,
Eſtate and perſon thou ſpends liberally;
Chriſt thee, and thine will Crown with laſting Bliſſe.

This, as the other Churches of *Chriſt*, began with a ſmall number in a deſolate and barren Wilderneſſe, which the Lord in his wonderfull mercy hath turned to fruitfull Fields. Wherefore behold the preſent condition of theſe Churches compared with their beginnings; as they ſowed in teares, ſo alſo have they Reaped in joy, and ſhall ſtill ſo go on if plenty and liberty marre not their proſperity. This Towne of *Charles* is ſituated one the North-ſide of *Charles* River, from whence it tooke its Name, the River being about five or ſix fathom deepe; Over againſt the Town many ſmall Iſlands lieing to the Seaward of it, and Hills one either ſide. By which meanes it proves a very good harbor for Ships, which hath cauſed many Sea-men and Merchants to

ſit

sit downe there, the forme of this Towne in the frontire piece thereof, is like the Head, Neck and Shoulders of a Man, onely the pleasant, and Navigable River of *Mistick* runs through the right shoulder thereof, and by its neare approach to *Charles* River in one place makes a very narrow neck, by which meanes the chiefe part of the Towne, whereon the most building stands, becomes a Peninsula: it hath a large Market-place neer the water-side built round with Houses, comly and faire, forth of which there issues two streetes orderly built with some very faire Houses, beautified with pleasant Gardens and Orchards, the whole Towne consists in its extent of about 150. dwelling Houses. Their meeting house for Sabbath assembly stands in the Market-place, very comly built and large, the Officers of this Church are at this day one Pastor, and one Teacher, one Ruling Elder, and three Deacons, the number of Soules are about 160. wonderfull it is to see that in so short a time such great alterations *Christ* should worke for these poore people of his: their Corne Land in Tillage in this Towne is about 1200. Acres, their great Cattell are about 400. head, Sheepe neare upon 400. as for their horse you shall hear of them, Godwilling, when we come to speak of their Military Discipline.

CHAP. XIX.

Of the Third Church of Christ gathered at Dorchester, 1631.

THe third Church of *Christ* gathered under this Government was at *Dorchester*, a frontire Town scituated very pleasantly both for facing the Sea, and also its large extent into the main Land, well watered with two small Rivers; neere about this Towne inhabited some few ancient Traders, who were not of this select band, but came for other ends, as *Morton* of *Merrymount*, who would faine have resisted this worke, but the provident hand of *Christ* prevented. The forme of this Towne is almost like a Serpent turning her head to the North ward; over against *Tompsons* Island, and the Castle, her body and wings being chiefly built on, are filled somewhat thick of Houses, onely

that one of her Wings is clipt, her Tayle being of such a large extent that shee can hardly draw it after her ; Her Houses for dwelling are about one hundred and forty, Orchards and Gardens full of Fruit-trees, plenty of Corne-Land, although much of it hath been long in tillage, yet hath it ordinarily good crops, the number or Trees are neare upon 1500. Cowes, and other Cattell of that kinde about 450. Thus hath the Lord been pleased to increase his poore dispersed people, whose number in this Flock are neare about 150. their first Pastor called to feede them was the Reverend, and godly Mr. *Maverick*.

Mr. *Wareham* and other of their Teaching Elders, you shall reade of when the *Canecktoco* is planted.

MAveruck, *thou must put period to thy dayes,*
In Wildernesse thy Kindred thee provoke
To come, but Christ doth thee for high ends Raise ;
Amongst his worthies to strike many a stroke.
Thy godly Life, and Doctrine speake, though thou
In dust art laid, yet Christ by thee did feede
His scattered Lambes, they gathered are by you ;
Christ calls thee home, but flock he leaves to feede.

CAHP. XX.

Of the Fourth Church of Christ gathered at Boston, 1631.

AFter some little space of time the Church of *Christ* at *Charles* Town, having their Sabbath assemblies oftenest on the South side of the River, agreed to leave the people on that side to themselves, and to provide another Pastor for *Charles* Towne, which accordingly they did. So that the fourth Church of *Christ* issued out of *Charles* Towne, and was seated at *Boston*, being the Center Towne and Metropolis of this Wildernesse worke (but you must not imagine it to be a Metropolitan Church) invironed it is with the *Brinish* floods, saving one small Istmos, which gives free accesse to the Neighbour Townes; by Land on the South side, on the North-west, and North-East, two constant Faires are kept for daily traffique thereunto, the forme of this Towne is like a heart, naturally scituated for Fortifications, having two Hills on the frontice part thereof next the

the Sea, the one well fortified on the superfices thereof, with store of great Artillery well mounted, the other hath a very strong battery built of whole Timber, and filled with Earth, at the descent of the Hill in the extreme poynt therof, betwixt these two strong armes lies a large Cave or Bay, on which the chiefest part of this Town is built, over-topped with a third Hill, all three like over-topping Towers keepe a constant watch to fore-see the approach of forrein dangers, being furnished with a Beacon and lowd babling Guns, to give notice by their redoubled eccho to all their Sister-townes, the chiefe Edifice of this City-like Towne is crowded on the Sea-bankes, and wharfed out with great industry and cost, the buildings beautifull and large, some fairely set forth with Brick, Tile, Stone and Slate, and orderly placed with comly streets, whose continuall inlargement presages some sumptuous City. The wonder of this moderne Age, that a few yeares should bring forth such great matters by so meane a handfull, and they so far from being inriched by the spoiles of other Nations, that the states of many of them have beene spoiled by the Lordly Prelacy, whose Lands must assuredly make Restitutions. But now behold the admirable Acts of *Christ*, at this his peoples landing, the hideous Thickets in this place were such, that Wolfes and Beares nurst up their young from the eyes of all beholders, in those very places where the streets are full of Girles and Boys sporting up and downe, with a continued concourse of people. Good store of Shipping is here yearly built, and some very faire ones: both Tar and Mastes the Countrey affords from its own soile; also store of Victuall both for their owne and Forreiners-ships, who resort hither for that end: this Town is the very Mart of the Land, *French*, *Portugalls* and *Dutch*, come hither for Traffique.

CHAP. XXI.

Of the Fift Church of Christ gathered at Roxbury, 1631.

THe fift Church of *Christ* was gathered at *Roxbury*, scituated between *Boston* and *Dorchester*, being well watered with coole and pleasant Springs issuing forth the Rocky-hills, and with

ſmall Freſhets, watering the Vallies of this fertill Towne, whoſe forme is ſomewhat like a wedge double pointed, entring betweene the two foure-named Townes, filled with a very laborious people, whoſe labours the Lord hath ſo bleſt, that in the roome of diſmall Swampes and tearing Buſhes, they have very goodly Fruit-trees, fruitfull Fields and Gardens, their Heard of Cowes, Oxen and other young Cattell of that kind about 350. and dwelling-houſes neere upon 120. Their ſtreetes are large, and ſome fayre Houſes, yet have they built their Houſe for Church-aſſembly, deſtitute and unbeautified with other buildings. The Church of *Chriſt* here is increaſed to about 120 perſons, their firſt Teaching *Elder* called to Office is Mr. *Eliot* a yong man, at his comming thither of a cheerfull ſpirit, walking unblameable, of a godly converſation, apt to teach, as by his indefatigable paines both with his own flock, and the poore *Indians* doth appeare, whoſe Language he learned purpoſely to helpe them to the knowledge of God in *Chriſt*, frequently Preaching in their *Wigwams*, and Catechizing their Children.

Mr. *Eliot* Paſtor of the Church of Chriſt at *Roxbury*, in *New England*, much honoured for his labours in the Lord.

GReat is thy worke in Wilderneſſe, Oh man,
Young Eliot *neere twenty yeares thou haſt,*
In Weſterne World with miccle toile thy ſpan
Spent well-neere out, and now thy gray hayrs graceſt,
Are by thy Land-Lord Chriſt, who makes uſe of thee
To feede his flock, and heathen people teach
In their own Language, God and Chriſt to ſee;
A Saviour their blind hearts could not reach,
Poore naked Children come to learne Gods Mind
Before thy face with reverend regard;
Bleſſe God for thee may theſe poore heathen blind,
That from thy mouth Chriſts Goſpell ſweete have heard.
Eliot *thy Name is, through the wild woods ſpread,*
In Indians *mouths frequent's thy fame, for why?*

In

In sundry shapes the Devills made them dread;
And now the Lord makes them their Wigwams *fly,*
Rejoyce in this, nay rather joy that thou,
Amongst Christs Souldiers hast thy name sure set,
Although small gaine on Earth accrew to you,
Yet Christ to Crowne will thee to Heaven soone set.

CHAP. XXII.

Of the Sixth Church of Christ, gathered at Linn. 1631.

THe Sixth Church of *Christ* was gathered at *Linn*, betweene *Salem* and *Charles* Towne, her scituation is neere to a River, whose strong freshet at breaking up of Winter filleth all her Bankes, and with a furious *Torrent* ventes it selfe into the Sea; This Towne is furnished with Mineralls of divers kinds, especially Iron and Lead, the forme of it is almost square, onely it takes two large a run into the Land-ward (as most Townes do) it is filled with about one hundred Houses for dwelling; Here is also an Iron Mill in constant use, but as for Lead they have tried but little yet. Their meeting-house being on a levell Land undefended from the cold North west-wind; And therefore made with steps descending into the Earth, their streetes are straite and comly, yet but thin of Houses, the people mostly inclining to Husbandry, have built many Farmes Remote there, Cattell exceedingly multiplied, Goates which were in great esteeme at their first comming, are now almost quite banished, and now Horse, Kine and Sheep are most in request with them, the first feeder of this flock of *Christ* was Mr. *Stephen Batchelor*, gray and aged, of whom as followeth:

THrough Ocean large Christ brought thee for to feede,
His wandering flock with's word thou hast oft taught,
Then teach thy selfe with others thou hast need;
Thy flowing fame unto low ebbe is brought.
Faith and Obedience Christ full near hath joyn'd,
Then trust on Christ, and thou againe mayst be
Brought on thy race though now far cast behinde,
Run to the end, and crowned thou shalt be.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of the seventh Church of Christ gathered at Water-Towne, 1631.

THe Seaventh Church of *Christ* gathered out of this wandering Race of *Jaccobites* was at *Water-Towne*, scituate upon one of the Branches of *Charles* River, a fruitfull plat, and of large extent, watered with many pleasant Springs, and small Rivulets, running like veines throughout her Body, which hath caused her inhabitants to scatter in such manner, that their Sabbath-Assemblies prove very thin, if the season favour not, and hath made this great Towne (consisting of 160. Families) to shew nothing delightfull to the eye in any place; this Towne began by occasion of Sir *Richard Saltingstall*, who at his arrivall, having some store of Cattell and servants, they wintered in those parts: this Town aboundes in severall sorts of Fish at their seasons, Basse, Shad, Alewifes, Frost-fish, and Smelts: their herd of Kine, and Cattell of that kinde are about 450. with some store of Sheepe and Goates, their Land in tillage is neere upon 1800. Acres, this Church is increased to neer about 250. soules in Church-fellowship, their first Pastor was Mr. *Phillips*, a man mighty in the Scriptures, and very dilligent to search out the minde of *Christ* therein contained, of whom as followeth:

THe pennury of Wilderuesse shall not
Daunt Phillips, *and diswade his undertaking*
This Voyage long: for Christ hath made him hot
With zeal for's truth, thy native soile forsaken
To follow Christ his bannisht flock to feede,
With restlesse toile thus honour'd Christ hath thee,
Then it maintaine though thou thy people neede;
Christ would thou shouldst of them aye honoured be,
Till death thou hast been souldier in this War,
Darke types the shaddowes of good things now come,
By thee have been unfoulded very far;
Cleer'd baptimes light from error breck'd by some.

As by thy worke in Print appeares this day,
Though thou thy days hast ended on this Earth,
Yet still thou livest in Name and Fame alway;
Christ thee poore dust doth crowne with lasting Mirth.

CHAP. XXIV.

Of the great cheerefulnesse of their Souldiers of Christ, in and under the penuries of a Wildernesse.

THese were the beginnings of these resolute Souldiers of *Christ Jesus* in the yeare, 1631. Even to lay the Foundation of their severall Churches of *Christ*, built onely on him as their chiefe Corner Stone. But as his chosen *Israel* met with many difficulties after their returne from Captivity, in building the Temple and City, which they valiantly waded through; So these weake wormes (Oh Christ to thy praise be it spoken) were most wonderfully holpen in such distresses, as to appearance of man seemed to be both hopelesse, and helplesse, threatning destruction to the whole building, and far from accomplishing such great things as you have in part seene already, and shall in the following discourse (God willing) see more abundantly, adding a strong testimony to the work, that as it was begun by *Christ*, so hath it beene carried on by him, and shall to the admiration of the whole World be perfected in his time, and unlesse men will be wilfully blinde, they must needs see and confesse the same, and that the influence thereof hath already run from one end of the Earth unto the other.

This yeare 1631. *John Winthrop* Esq. was chosen Governour, pickt out for the worke, by the provident hand of the most high, and inabled with gifts accordingly, then all the folke of *Christ*, who have seene his face and beene partaker of the same, remember him in this following Meeter.

John

John Winthrope Esq. Eleven times Governour of the *English* Nation, inhabiting the *Mattacusets* Bay in *New England*.

WHy leavest thou John, *thy station, in* Suffolk, *thy own soile,*
Christ will have thee a pillar be, for's people thou must toyle,
He chang'd thy heart, thē take his part, 'gainst prelates proud invading
(His Kingly throne) set up alone, in wilderness their shading.
His little flocks from Prelates knocks, twice ten years rul'd thou hast,
With civill sword at Christs word, and eleven times been trast.
By Name and Note, with peoples vote, their Governour to be,
Thy means hast spent, 'twas therefore lent, to raise this work by thee.
Well arm'd and strong with sword among, Christ armies marcheth he,
Doth valiant praise, and weak one raise, with kind benignity.
To lead the Van, 'gainst Babylon, *doth worthy* Winthrop *call,*
Thy Progeny, shall Battell try, when Prelacy shall fall.
With fluent Tongue, thy Pen doth run, in learned Latine phrase,
To Sweads, French, Dutch, thy Neighbours, which thy lady rhetorick
Thy bounty feeds, Christs servants needs, in wilderness of wants (praise.
To Indians thou Christs Gospell now, 'mongst heathen people plants.
Yet thou poore dust, now dead and must, to rottennesse be brought,
Till Christ restore thee glorious, more then can of dust be thought.

The much honoured *Thomas Dudly* Esquire was chosen Deputy Governour, and the number of Free-men added was about 83. Those honoured persons who were now in place of Government, having the propagation of the Churches of *Christ*, in their eye laboured by all meanes to make roome for Inhabitants, knowing well that where the dead carkass is, thither will the Eagles resort. But herein they were much opposed by certaine persons, whose greedy desire for land much hindered the worke for a time, as indeed all such persons do at this very day, and let such take notice how these were cured of this distemper, some were taken away by death, and then to be sure they had Land enough, others fearing poverty, and famishment, supposing the present scarcity would never be turned into plenty, removed themselves away, and so never beheld the great good the Lord hath done,

done for his people, but the valiant of the Lord waited with patience, and in the misse of beere supplied themselves with water, even the most-honoured as well as others, contentedly rejoycing in a Cup of cold water, blessing the Lord that had given them the taste of that living water, and that they had not the water that slickes the thrist of their naturall bodies, given them by measure, but might drinke to the full; as also in the absence of Bread they feasted themselves with fish, the Women once a day, as the tide gave way, resorted to the Mussells, and Clambankes, which are a Fish as big as Horse-mussells, where they daily gathered their Families food with much heavenly discourse of the provisions *Christ* had formerly made for many thousands of his followers in the wildernesse. Quoth one, my Husband hath travailed as far as *Plimoth*(which is neere 40 miles,) and hath with great toile brought a little Corne home with him, and before that is spent the Lord will assuredly provide: quoth the other, our last peck of Meale is now in the Oven at home a baking, and many of our godly Neighbours have quite spent all, and wee owe one Loafe of that little wee have; Then spake a third, my husband hath ventured himselfe among the *Indians* for Corne, and can get none, as also our honoured Governour hath distributed his so far, that a day or two more will put an end to his store, and all the rest, and yet methinks our Children are as cheerefull, fat, and lusty with feeding upon those Mussells, Clambanks and other Fish as they were in *England*, with their fill of Bread, which makes mee cheerfull in the Lords providing for us, being further confirmed by the exhortation of our Pastor to trust the Lord with providing for us; whose is the Earth and the fulnesse thereof. And as they were incouraging one another in *Christs* carefull providing for them, they lift up their eyes and saw two Ships comming in, and presently this newes came to their Eares, that they were come from *Jacland* full of Victualls, now their poore hearts were not so much refreshed in regard of the food they saw they were like to have, as their soules rejoyced in that *Christ* would now manifest himselfe to be the Commissary Generall of this his Army, and that hee should honour them so far as to be poore Sutlers for his Camp, they soone up with their Mussells, and hie them home to stay their hungry stomacks.

After this manner did *Christ* many times graciously provide for this his people, even at the last cast.

CHAP. XXV.

Of the Lords gracious protection of his people, from the barbarous cruelties of the Heathen.

ABout this time the *Indians* that were most conversant amongst them, came quaking and complaining of a barbarous and cruell people called the *Tarratines*, who they said would eat such Men as they caught alive, tying them to a Tree, and gnawing their flesh by peece-meales off their Bones, as also that they were a strong and numerous people, and now comming, which made them flee to the *English*, who were but very few in number at this time, and could make but little resistance, being much dispersed, yet did they keepe a constant watch, neglecting no meanes *Christ* had put into their hands for their owne safety, in so much that they were exceedingly weakned with continued labour, watching and hard diet, but the Lord graciously upheld them in all, for thus it befell neere the Towne of *Linn*, then called *Sauguſt*, in the very dead of the night (being upon their watch, because of the report that went of the *Indians* approach to those parts) one Lieutenant *Walker*, a man indued with faith, and of a couragious spirit, comming to relieve the Centinell being come up with him, all of a sudden they heard the Sticks crack hard by them, & withall he felt something brush hard upon his shoulder, which was an *Indian* arrow shot through his Coat, and the wing of his buffe-Jacket. Upon this hee discharged his Culliver directly toward the place, where they heard the noise, which being deeply loden brake in pieces, then they returned to the Court of Guard, and raised such small forces as they had; comming to the light they perceived he had an other Arrow shot through his Coat betwixt his Legs. Seeing this great preservation they stood upon their Guard till Morning, expecting the *Indians* to come upon them every moment, but when daylight appeared, they soone sent word to other parts, who gathered together, and tooke counsell how to quit themselves of

these

these *Indians*, whose approach they demed would be sudden, they agreed to discharge their great Guns, the redoubling eccho rattling in the Rocks caused the *Indians* to betake themselves to flight (being a terrible unwonted sound unto them) or rather he who put such trembling feare in the *Assyrians* Army, struck the like in these cruell *Canniballs*. In the *Autumne* following, the *Indians*, who had all this time held good correspondency with the *English*, begin to quarrell with them about their bounds of Land, notwithstanding they purchased all they had of them, but the Lord put an end to this quarrell also, by smiting the *Indians* with a sore Disease, even the small Pox; of the which great numbers of them died, yet these servants of *Christ* minding their Masters businesse, were much moved in affection toward them to see them depart this life without the knowledge of God in Christ. And therefore were very frequent among them for all the noysomenesse of their Disease, entring their *Wigwams*, and exhorting them in the Name of the Lord. Among others one of the chiefe *Saggamores* of the *Mattachusets*, whom the *English* named *Saggamore John*, gave some good hopes, being alwayes very courteous to them, whom the godly, and much honour'd among the *English*, visiting a little before his death, they instructing him in the knowledge of God. Quoth hee by and by mee Mattamoy may be my two Sons live, you take them to teach much to know God.

Accordingly the honoured Mr. *John Winthrop*, and the Reverend Mr. *John Wilson* tooke them home, notwithstanding the infectiousnesse of the Disease their Father died of. The mortality among them was very great, and increased among them daily more and more, insomuch that the poore Creatures being very timorous of death, would faine have fled from it, but could not tell how, unlesse they could have gone from themselves; Relations were little regarded among them at this time, so that many, who were smitten with the Disease died helplesse, unlesse they were neare, and known to the *English*: their *Powwowes*, Wizards, and Charmers, *Athamochas* Factors were possest with greatest feare of any. The Winters piercing cold stayed not the strength of this hot Disease, yet the *English* endeavouring to visit their sick *Wigwams*, helpe them all they could, but as they

they entred one of their matted Houses, they beheld a most sad spectacle, death having smitten them all save one poore Infant, which lay on the ground sucking the Breast of its dead Mother, seeking to draw living nourishment from her dead breast. Their dead they left oft-times unburied, wherefore the *English* were forced to dig holes, and drag their stinking corps into them. Thus did the Lord allay their quarrelsome spirits, and made roome for the following part of his Army. This yeare came over more supplies to forward the worke of Christ.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of the gratious provisions the Lord made for his people.

THe yeare 1632. *John Winthrope* Esquire, was chosen Governour againe, and the antient *Thomas Dudly* Esquire, was Deputy Governour, a man of a sound judgement in matters of Religion and well read, bestowing much labour that way, of whom as followeth:

The honoured, aged, stable and sincere servant of Christ, zealous for his truth Thomas Dudly, *Esq. foure times Governour of the* English *Nation, in the* Mattacusets, *and first Major Generall of the Millitary Forces.*

WHat Thomas *now believe dost thou that riches men may gaine,*
In this poore Plot Christ doth allot his people to sustaine;
Rich Truth thou'lt buy and sell not, why no richer Jem can be,
Truths Champion in campion, Christ's grace hath placed thee,
With civill Sword, at Christs Word, early cut off wilt thou, (*low.*
Those Wolvish sheep, amongst flocks do creep, and damned doctrine
To trembling age, thou valiant sage, one foot wilt not give ground,
Christs Enemies from thy face flies, his truth thou savest sound.
Thy lengthened dayes, to Christs praise, continued are by him:
To set by thee his people free, from foes that raging bin.
Wearied with yeares, it plaine appeares, Dudly *not long can last,*
It matters not, Christ Crown thee got, its now at hand, hold fast.

This

This yeare was the first choise of Magistrates by free-men, whose number was now increased, fifty three or thereabout, to declare the manner of their Government is by the Author deferred till the year. 1637. where the Reader may behold Government both in Churches and Common-wealth, to be an institution of the Lord, and much availeable through his blessing for the accompl shment of his promises to his people.

This year these fore-runners of the following Army of Christ, after the sight of many of the admirable Acts of his providence for them, begun to take up steddy resolution through the helpe of him to wade through the Ocean, they were farther like to meete withall, and therefore began to plant the yet untilled Earth, having as yet no other meanes to teare up the bushy lands, but their hands and howes, their bodies being in very ill temper by reason of the Scurvy (a Disease in those dayes very frequent) to undergoe such extremity, but being prick'd on with hungers sharpe gode, they keepe doing according to their weake abilities, and yet produce but little food for a long season, but being perswaded that Christ will rather raine bread from Heaven, then his people should want, being fully perswaded, they were set on the worke at his command. Wherefore they followed on with all hands, and the Lord (who hath the Cattell of thousand Hills, and the Corne of ten thousand Vallies, the whole Earth, and fulnesse of it) did now raise up fresh supplies to be added to these both of men and provision of food, men no lesse valiant in Faith then them, the former amongst whom was the Reverend Mr. *Welds* and Mr. *James*, who was welcomed by the people of Christ at *Charles* Towne, and by them called to the Office of a Pastor, where hee continued for some yeares, and from thence removed to *New haven*, upon some seed of prejudice sowne by the enemies of this worke. But good Reader doe thou behold, and remember him farther in the following Lines;

THy Native soile, Oh James *did thee approve,*
Gods people there in Lincolneshire *commend;*
Thy courteous speech and Worke of Christian love,
Till Christ through Seas did thee on Message send.

With learned skill his mind for to unfold,
His people in New England *thou must feed,*
But one sad breach did cut that band should hold;
Then part wilt thou least farther jars should breed.
Yet part thou wilt not with Christs Truth, thy crowne
But my Muse waile that any souldier should,
In fighting slip, why James *thou falleſt not downe,*
Back thou retreats their valiant fighting, hold
Faſt on thy Christ, who thine may raiſe with thee,
His bands increaſe, when leaders he provides,
Thy Son young ſtudent may ſuch bleſſing be;
Thy loſſe repayre, and Christ thee crown beſides.

Although the great ſtraites this Wilderneſſe people were in for want of food, was heard of among the godly people in *England*, yet would they not decline the worke, but men of Eſtates ſold their poſſeſſions, and bought plenty of foode for the Voyage, which ſome of them ſent before hand, by which meanes they were provided for, as alſo the Lord put it into the hearts of ſuch as were Maſters, and Undertakers of Ships to ſtore their Veſſells ſo well that they had to ſpare for this peoples need, and further Chriſt cauſed abundance of very good Fiſh to come to their Nets and Hookes, and as for ſuch as were unprovided with theſe meanes, they caught them with their hands, and ſo with Fiſh, wild Onions and other Herbs were ſweetly ſatisfied till other proviſions came in, here muſt labouring men a little be minded, how ill they recompenced thoſe perſons, whoſe eſtates helpe them to food before they could reape any from the Earth, that forgetting thoſe courteſies they ſoon by exceſſive priſes took for their worke, made many File-leaders fall back to the next Ranke, advancing themſelves in the meane time. About this time the Church of Chriſt at *Roxbury*, being a diligent people, early prevented their Brethren in other Churches by calling the Reverend Mr. *Welds* to be their Paſtor, of whom you may ſee ſomewhat farther in the following lines:

To

TO worke oh Welds! *in wilderneſſe betime*
Chriſt thee commands, that thou his folke ſhould's follow:
And feede his flock in Covenant band combine,
With them through him his glorious name to hallow;
Seven yeares thou ſtoutly didſt wade through with toile,
Theſe deſart cares, back by advice againe,
Thou didſt returne unto thy native ſoile,
There to advance Chriſts Kingdome now remaine.
In Pulpit, and with Pen thou haſt the truth
Maintained, and clear'd from ſcandalous reproach
Chriſts churches here, and ſhew'd their laſting Ruth,
That dare 'gainſt Chriſt their own inventions breach;
Then ſage, in age, continue ſuch to be,
Till Chriſt thee crowne, his gifts to thee are free.

This yeare of ſad diſtreſſes was ended with a terrible cold Winter, with weekly Snowes, and fierce Froſts betweene while congealing *Charles* River, as well from the Towne to Sea-ward, as above, inſomuch that men might frequently paſſe from one Iſland to another upon the Ice. Here Reader thou muſt be minded of an other admirable Act of Chriſt for this yeare, in changing the very nature of the ſeaſons, moderating the Winters cold of late very much, which ſome impute to the cutting downe the woods, and breaking up the Land; But Chriſt have the praiſe of all his glorious Acts. About this time did the valiant in faith, and Reverend Paſtor Mr. *John Wilſon* returne to *England*, and ſurely the power of Chriſt hath notably appeared in this weake ſorry man. You muſt needs ſee the Author will flatter no man, yet will he not be wanting to tell the noble Acts of Chriſt Jeſus, in making men ſtrong for himſelfe, here is one borne up in the armes of his mercy, often through the perillous Seas night and dayes, yea: weeks and months upon the great deepe, and now having with his owne eyes beheld the manifold troubles theſe poore were in, yet at this very time hies him back to his Native ſoile, where his indeared Wife did yet remaine, purpoſely to perſwade her to caſt her cares upon the Lord, as he himſelf had already done, and then aſſuredly the wants of a Wilderneſſe would

would never hurt her: at the departure of this holy Man of God, many of his peoples hearts waxed very sad, and having looked long for his returne; Their eyes now began to faile in missing of their expectation, they according to their common course in time of great straites, set and appointed a day wholy to be spent in seeking the pleasing Face of God in Christ, purposing the Lord assisting to afflict their soules, and give him the honour of his All-seeingness, by a downe right acknowledgement of their sinnes, but the Lord, whose Grace is alwayes undeserved, heard them before they cried, and the afternoone before the day appointed brought him, whom they so much desired, in safety to shore, with divers other faithfull servants of Christ ready armed for the Battell, the day was turned to a day of rejoycing and blessing the Lord, even the mighty God of *Iacob*, the God of Armies is for us a refuge high *Shela*.

The yeare 1633. the honoured *John Winthrope* Esquire, was chosen Governour againe, and *Thomas Dudly* Esq. Deputy Governour, the number of Freemen added, or Souldiers listed was 46. the Winters Frost being extracted forth the Earth, they fall to tearing up the Roots, and Bushes with their Howes; even such men as scarce ever set hand to labour before, men of good birth and breeding, but comming through the strength of Christ to war their warfare, readily rush through all difficulties, cutting down of the Woods, they inclose Corne fields, the Lord having mitigated their labours by the *Indians* frequent fiering of the woods, (that they may not be hindered in hunting Venson, and Beares in the Winter season) which makes them thin of Timber in many places, like our Parkes in *England*, the chiefest Corne they planted before they had Plowes was *Indian* Graine, whose increase is very much beyond all other, to the great refreshing of the poore servants of Christ, in their low beginings, all kinde of Gardens Fruits grew very well, and let no man make a jest at Pumpkins, for with this fruit the Lord was pleased to feed his people to their good content, till Corne and Cattell were increased.

And here the Lords mercy appeared much in that those, who had beene formerly brought up tender, could now contentedly feed on bare and meane Diet, amongst whom the Honoured

and

and upright hearted in this worke of Christ, Mr. *Increase Nowell*, shall not be forgotten, having a diligent hand therein from the first beginning.

INcrease shalt thou, with honour now, in this thy undertaking,
Thou hast remain'd as yet unstaind, all errors foule forsaking;
To poore and rich, thy Justice much hath manifested bin:
Like Samuel Nathanaell, Christ *hath thee fram'd within;*
Thy faithfulnesse, people expresse, and Secretary they
Chose thee each year, by which appeare, their love With thee doth stay.
New Nowell *see Christ call'd hath thee, and work thou must for him,*
In beating down the triple Crown, and all that his foes ben.
Thus doest thou stand by Christ fraile man, to tell his might can make
Dust do his will, With graces fill, till dust to him he take.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of the gratious goodnesse of God, in hearing his peoples prayers in times of need, and of the Ship-loades of goods the Lord sent them in.

HEre againe the admirable Providence of the Lord is to be noted, That whereas the Country is naturally subject to drought, even to the withering of their summers Fruits, the Lord was pleased, during these yeares of scarcity, to blesse that small quantity of Land they planted with seasonable showers, and that many times to the great admiration of the Heathen, for thus it befell: the extreame parching heate of the Sun (by reason of a more constant clearnesse of the Aire then usually is in *England*) began to scorch the Herbs and Fruits, which was the chiefest meanes of their livelyhood, they beholding the Hand of the Lord stretched out against them, like tender hearted Children, they fell down on their knees, begging mercy of the Lord, for their Saviours sake, urging this as a chiefe argument, that the malignant adversary would rejoyce in their destruction, and blaspheme the pure Ordinances of CHRIST, trampling down his Kingly Commands with their owne inventions, and in uttering these words, their eyes dropped down many teares, their

their affections prevailing so strong, that they could not refraine in the Church-Assembly. Here admire and be strong in the Grace of Christ, all you that hopefully belong unto him, for as they powred out water before the Lord, so at that very instant, the Lord showred down water on their Gardens and Fields, which with great industry they had planted, and now had not the Lord caused it to raine speedily, their hope of food had beene lost: but at this these poore wormes were so exceedingly taken, that the Lord should shew himselfe so neere unto their Prayers, that as the drops from Heaven fell thicker, and faster, so the teares from their eyes by reason of the sudden mixture of joy and sorrow, and verily they were exceedingly stirred in their affections, being unable to resolve themselves, which mercy was greatest, to have a humble begging heart given them of God, or to have their request so suddenly answered.

The *Indians* hearing hereof, and seeing the sweet raine that fell, were much taken with Englishmens God, but the Lord seeing his poore peoples hearts were to narrow to beg, his bounties exceeds toward them at this time, as indeed hee ever hitherto hath done for this Wilderneſſe-People, not onely giving the full of their requests, but beyond all their thoughts, as witnesse his great worke in *England* of late, in which the prayers of Gods people in *New England* have had a great stroke; These people now rising from their knees to receive the rich mercies of Christ, in the refreshed fruits of the Earth; Behold the Sea also bringing in whole Ship-loades of mercies, more being filled with fresh forces, for furthering this wonderfull worke of Christ, and indeed this yeare came in many pretious ones, whom Christ in his grace hath made much use of in these his Churches, and Common-wealth, insomuch that these people were even almost over-ballanced with the great income of their present possessed mercies, yet they addresse themselves to the Sea shore, where they courteously welcom the famous servant of Christ, grave godly and judicious *Hooker*, and the honoured servant of Christ, M *John Haynes*, as also the Reverend and much desired Mr. *John Cotton*, and the Retoricall, Mr. *Stone*, with divers others of the sincere servants of Christ, comming with their young, and with their old, and with their whole substance, to doe him service in

this

this Desart wildernesse. Thus this poore people having now tasted liberally of the salvation of the Lord every way, they deeme it high time to take up the Cup of thankfulnesse, and pay their vowes to the most high God, by whom they were holpen to this purpose of heart, and accordingly set apart the 16. day of *October* (which they call the eighth Moneth, not out of any pevish humor of singularity, as some are ready to censor them with, but of purpose to prevent the Heathenish and Popish observation of Dayes, Moneths and Yeares, that they may be forgotten among the people of the Lord) this day was solemnly kept by all the seven Churches, rejoycing in the Lord, and rendering thanks for all their benefits.

Here must not be omitted the indeared affections Mr. *John Wilson* had to the worke in hand, exceedingly setting forth (in his Sermon this day) the Grace of Christ in providing such meet helps for furthering thereof, really esteeming them beyond so many Ship-loading of Gold; manifesting the great humility Christ had wrought in him (not complementing, but in very deede prefering the Reverend Mr. *John Cotton*, many hundreds before himselfe, whom they within a very little time after called to the Office of a Teaching Elder of the Church of Christ at *Boston*, where hee now remaines, of whom as followeth:

WHen Christ intends his glorious Kingdome shall
Exalted be on Earth, he Earth doth take,
Even sinfull Man to make his worthies all;
Then praise I Man, no Christ this Man doth make,
Sage, sober, grave and learned Cotten *thou:*
Mighty in Scripture, without Booke repeat it,
Annatomise the sence, and shew Man how
Great mysteries in sentence short are seated.
Gods Word with's word comparing oft unfould:
The secret truths Johns *Revelations hath*
By thee been open'd, as were was of old;
Shewes cleere, and weere 'gainst Romes whore is Gods Wrath.
Then Churches of Christ, rejoyce and sing,
John Cotten *hath Gods minde, I dare believe,*

Since he from Gods Word doth his Witnesse bring ;
Saints cries are heard they shall no longer grieve.
That song of songs, 'twixt Christ and's Church thou hast
Twice taught to all, and sweetly shewed the way,
Christ would his Churches should, in truth stand fast;
And cast off mans inventions even for aye.
Thy labours great have met with catching cheats,
Mixing their Brasse With thy bright Gold, for why ?
Thy great esteeme must cover their ill feates,
Some soile thou gett'st, by comming them so nie.
But i'ts wipt off, and thou Christs Champion left ,
The Faith to fight for Christ hath arm'd thee well,
His worthies would not, thou shoulds be bereft,
Of honours here thy Crown shall soon excell.

These people of God having received these farther helps, to instruct, and build them up in the holy things of Christ, being now greatly incouraged, seeing the Lord was pleased to set such a broad Seale to their Commission for the worke in hand, not onely by his Word and Spirit moving thereunto, but also by his Providence in adding such able instruments for furthering this great worke of Reformation, and advancing the Kingdome of Christ, for which they spent this day of rejoycing, and sure the Lord would have all that hear of it know, their joy lay not in the increase of Corne, or Wine, or Oyle, for of all these they had but very little at this time, yet did they not spare to lend such as they had unto the poore, who could not provide, and verily the joy ended not with the day, for these active instruments of Christ, Preaching with all instancy the glad Tidings of the Gospell of *Iesus Christ*, rejoyced the Heart of this People much.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of the Eighth Church of Christ gathered at Cambridge, 1633.

AT this time those who were in place of civill Government, having some addition Pillars to under-prop the building, began

begun to thinke of a place of more safety in the eyes of Man, then the two frontire Towns of *Charles* Towne, and *Boston* were for the habitation of such as the Lord had prepared to Governe this Pilgrim People. Wherefore they rather made choice to enter farther among the *Indians*, then hazard the fury of malignant adversaries, who in a rage might pursue them, and therefore chose a place scituate on *Charles* River, betweene *Charles* Towne, and Water-Towne, where they erected a Towne called New-Towne, now named *Cambridge*, being in forme like a list cut off from the Broad-cloath of the two fore-named Towns, where this wandering Race of *Jacobits* gathered the eighth Church of Christ. This Town is compact closely within it selfe, till of late yeares some few stragling houses have been built, the Liberties of this Town have been inlarged of late in length, reaching from the most Northerly part of *Charles* River, to the most Southerly part of *Merrimeck* River, it hath well ordered streets and comly pompleated with the faire building of *Harver* Colledge, their first Pastor was the faithfull and laborious Mr. *Hooker*, whose Bookes are of great request among the faithfull people of Christ; Yee shall not misse of a few lines in remembrance of him.

COme, Hooker, *come forth of thy native soile:*
Christ, I will run, sayes Hooker, *thou hast set*
My feet at large, here spend thy last dayes toile;
Thy Rhetorick shall peoples affections whet.
Thy Golden Tongue, and Pen Christ caus'd to be
The blazing of his golden truths profound,
Thou sorry Worme its Christ wrought this in thee;
What Christ hath Wrought must needs be very sound.
Then looke one Hookers *workes, they follow him*
To Grave, this Worthy resteth there a While:
Die shall he not that hath Christs warrier bin;
Much lesse Christs Truth, cleer'd by his peoples toile.
Thou Angell bright, by Christ for light now made,
Throughout the World as seasoning salt to be,
Although in dust thy body mouldering fade;
Thy Head's in Heaven, and hath a crown for thee.

The people of this Church and Towne have hitherto had the chiefest share in spitituall blessings, the Ministry of the Word, by more then ordinary instruments as in due time and place (God willing) you shall farther heare, yet are they at this day in a thriving condition in outward things, also both Corne and Cattell, Neate and Sheepe, of which they have a good flocke, which the Lord hath caused to thrive much in these latter dayes then formerly.

This Towne was appointed to be the seate of Government, but it continued not long, this yeare a small gleane of Rye was brought to the Court as the first fruits of English graine, at which this poore people greatly rejoyced to see the Land would beare it, but now the Lords blessing that way hath exceeded all peoples expectation, cloathing the Earth with plenty of all kinde of graine. Here minde I must the Reader of the admirable acts of Christs Providence toward this people, that although they were in such great straites for foode, that many of them eate their Bread by waight, and had little hopes of the Earths fruitfullnesse, yet the Lord Christ was pleased to refresh their spirits with such quickning grace, and lively affections to this Temple-worke, that they did not desert the place; and that which was more remarkable, when they had scarce houses to shelter themselves, and no doores to hinder the *Indians* accesse to all they had in them, yet did the Lord so awe their hearts, that although they frequented the *Englishmens* places of aboade, where their whole substance, weake Wives and little ones lay open to their plunder; during their absence being whole dayes at Sabbath-Assemblies, yet had they none of their food or stuffe diminished, neither Children nor Wives hurt in the least measure, although the *Indians* came commonly to them at those times, much hungry belly (as they use to say) and were then in number and strength beyond the *English* by far.

Yet further see the great and noble Acts of Christ toward this his wandering people, feeling againe the scarcity of foode, and being constrained to come to a small pittance daily, the Lord to provide for them, causeth the Deputy of *Ireland* to set forth a great Ship unknowne to this people, and indeed small reason in his own apprehensions why he should so do (but Christ will have

have it so.) This Ship arriving, being filled with food, the godly Governors did so order it that each Town sent two men aboard of her, who tooke up their Townes allowance, it being appointed before hand, what their portion should be, to this end that some might not by all, and others be left destitute of food. In the vernall of the yeare 1634. This people being increased, and having among them many pretious esteemed instruments for furthering this wonderous worke of Christ, they began to thinke of fortifying a small Island about two miles distant from *Boston* to Sea-ward, to which all the Vessells come in usually and passe. To this end the honoured Mr. *John Winthrope* with some 8. or 10. persons of note, tooke boate and arrived on the said Island in a warme Sun shineday, just at the breaking up of Winter as they deemed, but being they were sudden surprised with a cold North-west storme (which is the sharpest winde in this Country) freezing very vehemently for a day and a night, that they could not get off the Island, but were forced to lodge there, and lie in a heape one upon another (on the ground) to keepe themselves from freezing.

This yeare 1634. the much honoured *Thomas Dudly* Esquire, was chosen Governor, and Mr. *Roger Ludlow* Deputy Governor, the Freemen added to this little Common-wealth this year were about two hundred and foure, about this time a sincere servant of *Christ* Mr. *Stone* was added to the Church of *Christ* at New-towne, as a meet helpe to instruct the People of Christ there, with the above named Mr. *Hooker*, and as he hath hetherto bin (through the blessing of God) an able instrument in his hands to further the worke. So let him be incourraged with the Word of the Lord in the spirit of his might to go on. 1634.

THou well smoth'd Stone *Christs Work-manship to be:*
In's Church new laid his weake ones to support,
With's word of might his foes are foild by thee;
Thou daily dost to godlinesse exhort.
The Lordly Prelates people do deny
Christs Kingly power Hosanna *to proclaime,*
Mens mouths are stopt, but Stone *poore dust doth try,*
Throughout his Churches none but Christ must raigne.

Mourne

Mourne not Oh Man, thy youth and learning's spent:
In desart Land, my Muse is bold to say,
For glorious Workes Christ his hath hither sent;
Like that great Worke of Resurrection day.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of the Lords remarkable providence toward his indeared servants M. Norton *and Mr.* Shepherd.

NOw my loving Reader, let mee lead thee by the hand to our Native Land, although it was not intended to speake in particulars of any of these peoples departure from thence, purposing a generall relation should serve the turne, yet come with mee and behold the wonderous worke of *Christ* in preserving two of his most valiant Souldiers, namely Mr. *John Norton*, and that soule ravishing Minister Mr. *Thomas Shepheard*, who came this yeare to *Yarmouth* to ship themselves for *New England*, where the people of God resorted privately unto them to hear them Preach, during the time of their aboade the Enemies of Christs Kingdome were not wanting to use all meanes possible to intrap them, in which perilous condition they remained about two months, waiting for the Ships readinesse, in which time some persons eagerly hunting for Mr. *Thomas Shepheard*, began to plot (for apprehending of him) with a Boy of sixteene or seventeene yeares of Age, who lived in the House where hee Lodged to open the doore for them at a certaine houre in the night; But the Lord Christ, who is the Shepheard of *Israel* kept a most sure watch over his indeared servants, for thus it befell, the sweet words of grace falling from the of lips of this Reverend and godly Mr. *Thomas Shepheard* in the hearing of the Boy (the Lords working withall) hee was perswaded this was an holy man of God, and therefore with many troubled thoughts, began to relate his former practise, although hee had a great some of money promised him, onely to let them in at the houre and time appointed; but the Boy, the more neere the time came, grew more pensive and sad, insomuch that his Master taking

taking notice thereof began to question him about the cause of his heavinesse, who being unwilling to reveale the matter, held of from confessing a long time, till by urgent and insinuating search of his godly Master, with teares hee tells that on such a night hee had agreed to let in Men to apprehend the godly Preacher. The good Man of the house forthwith gave notice thereof unto them, who with the helpe of some well-affected persons was convay'd away by boate through a back Lane, the men at the time appointed came to the house, where finding not the doore open (when they lifted up the Latch) as they expected, they thrust their staves under it to lift it from the hookes, but being followed by some persons, whom the good man of the house had appointed for that end: yet were they boulstred out in this their wicked act by those who set them one worke. Notwithstanding they were greatly ashamed when they mist of their end.

But the Lord Christ intending to make his *New England* Souldiers the very wonder of this Age, brought them into greater straites, that this *Wonder Working Providence* might the more appeare in their deliverance, for comming a shipboard, and hoiseing saile to accomplish their Voyage, in little time after they were tossed and sore beaten with a contrary winde, to the losse of the Ships upper worke, with which losse and great perill they were driven back againe, the *Lord Christ* intending to confirme their Faith in shewing them, that although they were brought back, as it were into the mouth of their enemies, yet hee could hide them from the hand of the Hunter, for the space of six moneths longer or thereabout, even till the Spring of the yeare following, at which time (God willing) you shall hear of them againe, in the meane time the Master, and other Sea-men made a strange construction of the sore storme they met withall, saying, their Ship was bewitched, and therefore made use of the common Charme ignorant people use, nailing two red hot horse-shoos to their maine mast. But assuredly it was the *Lord Christ*, who hath command both of Winds and Seas, and now would have his people know he hath delivered, and will deliver from so great a death.

CHAP. XXX.

Of the Ninth Church of Christ, gathered at Ipswitch.

THis year came over a farther supply of Eminent instruments for furthering this admirable Worke of his, amongst whom the Reverend and judicious servant of Christ Mr. *Nathaniel Ward*, who tooke up his station at the Towne of *Ipswich*, where the faithfull servants of Christ gathered the Ninth Church of his. This Towne is scituated on a faire and delightfull River, whose first rise or spring begins about five and twenty Miles farther up in the Countrey, issuing forth a very pleasant pond. But soone after it betakes its course through a most hideous swamp of large extent, even for many Miles, being a great Harbour for Beares: after its comming forth this place, it groweth larger by the income of many small Rivers, and issues forth in the Sea, due East over against the Island of *Sholes*, a great place of fishing for our *English* Nation, the peopling of this Towne is by men of good ranke and quality, many of them having the yearly Revenue of large Lands in *England* before they came to this Wildernesse, but their Estates being imployed for Christ, and left in banke, as you have formerly heard, they are well content till Christ shall be pleased to restore it againe to them or theirs, which in all reason should be out of the Prelates Lands in *England*. Let all those, whom it concernes (to judge) consider it well, and do Justice herein.

This Towne lies in the *Saggamoreship*, or Earldome of *Aggawam*, now by our *English* Nation called *Essex*. It is a very good Haven Towne, yet a little barr'd up at the Mouth of the River, some Marchants here are, (but *Boston*, being the chiefest place of resort of Shipping, carries away all the Trade) they have very good Land for Husbandry, where Rocks hinder not the course of the Plow: the Lord hath beene pleased to increase them in Corne and Cattell of late; Insomuch that they have many hundred quarters to spare yearly, and feed, at the latter end of Summer, the Towne of *Boston* with good Beefe: their Houses are many of them very faire built with pleasant Gardens and Orchards, consisting of about one hundred and forty Families.

Their

Their meeting-house is a very good prospect to a great part of the Towne, and beautifully built, the Church of Christ here consists of about one hundred and sixty soules, being exact in their conversation, and free from the Epidemicall Disease of all Reforming Churches, which under Christ is procured by their pious Learned and Orthodox Ministery, as in due place (God willing) shall be declared, in the meane time, look on the following Meeters concerning that Souldier of Christ Master *Nathaniel Ward.*

THou ancient Sage, come Ward *among*
Christs folfe, take part in this great worke of his,
Why do'st thou stand and gaze about so long;
Do'st war in jest, why, Christ in earnest is,
And hath thee arm'd with weapons for that end,
To wound and heale his enemies submitting,
Not carnally, then to this worke attend;
Thou hast prevail'd the hearts of many hitting.
Although the Presbytery unpleasant jar,
And errors daily in their braines new coyne:
Despayer not, Christs truth they shall not mar;
But with his helpe such drosse from Gold refine.
What Man do'st meane to lay thy Trumpet downe?
Because thy son like Warrier is become,
Hold out or sure lesse bright will be thy crowne;
Till death Christs servants labour is not done.

At this time came over the much honoured Mr. *Richard Bellingham*, whose Estate and person did much further the civill Government of this wandering people, hee being learned in the Lawes of *England*, and experimentally fitted for the worke, of whom I am bold to say as followeth:

RIchardus now arise must thou, Christ seed hath thee to plead,
His peoples cause, with equall Laws, in wilderness them lead;
Though slow of speech, thy counsell reach, shall each occation well,
Sure thy sterne looke it cannot brook, those wickedly rebell.

With labours might, thy pen indite doth Lawes for peoples learning:
That judge with skill, and not with will, unarbitrate discerning;
Bellingham *thou on valiant now, stop not in discontent,*
For Christ with crown, will thee renown, then spend for him, be spent;
As thou hast done, thy race still run till death, no death shall stay,
Christs work of might, till Scripture light, bring Resurection day.

As also about this time for further incouragement in this work of Christ, hee sent over the Reverend servant of his Mr. *Lothrop* to helpe on with the planting of *Plimoth*, which increased but little all this time, although shee be the elder sister of all the united Colonies; Some reasons in due place may be rendered. This Reverend Minister was soone called to Office by the Church of Christ at *Scituate*.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of the Church of Christ gathered at Newberry,

IN the latter end of this yeare, two sincere servants of Christ, inabled by him with gifts to declare his minde unto his people, came over this broad Ocean, and began to build the Tenth Church of Christ at a Towne called *Newberry*, their names being Mr. *James Noise*, and Mr. *Thomas Parker*, somewhat differing from all the former, and after mentioned Churches in the preheminence of their Presbytery, and it were to be wished that all persons, who have had any hand in those hot contentions, which have fallen out since about Presbyterian and Independent Government in Churches, would have looked on this Example, comparing it with the Word of God, and assuredly it would have stayed (all the godly at lest) of either part from such unworthy expressions as have passed to the grief of many of Gods people; And I doubt not but this History will take of that unjust accusation, and slanderous imputation of the rise of that floud of errors and false Doctrines sprung up of late, as flowing from the Independent or rather congregationall Churches. But to follow on, this Town is scituate about twelve miles from *Ipswitch*, neere upon the wide venting streames of *Merrimeck* River, whose

whose strong current is such, that it hath forced its passage through the mighty Rocks, which causeth some sudden falls, and hinders Shipping from having any accesse far into the Land, her bankes are in many places stored with Oken Timber of all sorts, of which, that which they commonly call'd white Oke, is not inferiour to our *English* Timber; in this River lie some few Islands of fertill Land, this Towne is stored with Meddow and upland, which hath caused some Gentlemen, (who brought over good Estates, and finding then no better way to improve them) to set upon husbandry, amongst whom that Religious and sincere hearted servant of Christ Mr. *Richard Dummer*, sometime a Magistrate in this little Common-wealth, hath holpen on this Town, their houses are built very scattering, which hath caused some contending about removall of their place for Sabbath-Assemblies, their Cattell are about foure hundred head, with store of Corne-land in tillage, it consists of about seventy Families, the soules in Church fellowship are about an hundred, the teaching Elders of this Congregation have carried it very lovingly toward their people, permitting of them to assist in admitting of persons into Church-society, and in Church-censures, so long as they Act regularly, but in case of their male-administration, they assume the power wholly to themselves, their godly life and conversation hath hitherto been very amiable, and their paines and care over their flock not inferiour to many others, and being bound together in a more stricter band of love then ordinary with promise to spend their dayes together (if the Lord please) and therefore shall not be disunited in the following Verse:

LOe here Loves twinnes by Christ are sent to Preach
In wilderneſſe his little flock among,
Though Christs Church-way you fully cannot reach;
So far hold fast as you in's word are strong.
Parker *thy paines with Pen, and Preaching hath*
Roomes buildings left in Prelacy cast downe,
Though 'gainst her thou defer Gods finall wrath;
Keepe warring still, and sure thou shalt have crowne.

Thy Brother thou oh Noiſe *haſt helpe to gvide:*
Chriſt tender Lambs within his fold to gather,
From Eaſt to Weſt thou doſt Chriſts Warrier bide;
Faint not at laſt, increaſe thy fighting rather.

CAHP. XXXII.

Of good ſupply, and ſeaſonable helpes the Lord Chriſt was pleaſed to ſend to further his Wilderneſſe worke, and particular for his Churches of Charles *Towne, and* Ipſwich, *and* Dorcheſter.

YEt farther for the incouragement of the people of Chriſt in theſe their weak beginnings, he daily brings them in freſh ſupplies, adding this yeare alſo the reverend and painfull Miniſter of his Goſpell Mr. *Zachary Simmes*, who was invited ſoone after his comming over to aſſiſt in planting of another Church of *Chriſt*, but the place being remote from the pretious ſervants of *Chriſt* already ſetled, he choſe rather to joyne with ſome Church among them, and in a ſhort ſpace after hee was called to the Office of a Teaching Elder in the Church of *Chriſt* at *Charles* Towne, together with Mr. *James*, who was then their Paſtor, as you have formerly heard. Among all the godly Women that came through the perilous Seas to war their warfare, the wife of this zealous Teacher, Mrs. *Sarah Simmes* ſhall not be omitted, nor any other, but to avoid tediouſneſſe. the vertuous Woman, indued by Chriſt with graces fit for a Wilderneſſe condition, her courage exceeding her ſtature, with much cheerfulneſſe did undergoe all the difficulties of theſe times of ſtraites, her God through Faith in *Chriſt* ſupplying all her wants with great induſtry, nurturing up her young Children in the feare of the Lord, their number being ten both Sons and Daughters, a certaine ſigne of the Lords intent to people this vaſt Wilderneſſe: God grant they may be valiant in Faith againſt Sin, Satan and all the enemies of *Chriſts* Kingdome, following the example of their Father, and Grandfather, who have both ſuffered for the ſame, in remembrance of whom theſe following lines are placed.

Come

COme Zachary, *thou must reedifie,*
Christ Churches in this Desart Land of his,
With Moses *zeale stampt unto dust defie*
All crooked wayes that Christ true Worship misse.
With Spirits sword and armor girt about:
Thou lay'st on load proud Prelats crowne to crack,
And wilt not suffer Wolfes thy flock to rout;
Though close they creepe, with sheepe skins on their back.
Thy Fathers Spirit doubled is upon
Thee Simmes, *then war, thy Father fighting died,*
In prayer then prove thou like Champion;
Hold out till death, and Christ will crown provide.

After these poore people had welcomed with great joy their newcome Guests, all of a sudden they spy two tall Ships, whose colours shewed them to be some forrein Nation, at which time this little handfull of people began to be much troubled, deeming them to be Rovers, they gathered together such forces as their present condition would afford, very ill-fitted as then to rescue an enemy, but their Lord and Master *Christ Jesus* would not suffer any such to come, and instead of enemies brought in friends, even Dutchmen to furnish them with farther necessary Provision.

For the yeare 1635. the honoured Mr. *John Haines* was chosen Governour, and the honoured Mr. *Richard Bellingham* Deputy Governour, the number of Free-men added to this little Common-wealth, were about one hundred forty and five. The time now approaching, wherein the *Lord Christ* would have his people come from the Flaile to the Fan, threshing out much this yeare, increasing the number of his Troopes, and valiant Leaders, the Ships came thicker and faster filled with many worthy personages; Insomuch that the former people began to forget their Poverty, and verily Cold, Purity, Peace and Plenty run all in one channell, Gods people here should sure have met with none other, but the still waters of Peace and Plenty for back and belly soone contract much mudde, as you shall heare (God willing) in the following History: this yeare came in the honoured

Sir

Sir *Henry Vaine*, who aboad not long in this worthy worke, yet mind him I will in the following Lines.

Sir Henry Vaine *once Governour of the English People in* New England.

THy Parents Vaine, *of worthy fame, in Christ and thou for him:*
Through Ocean wide in new World trid a while his warrier bin.
With small defeat thou didst retreat to Brittaine ground againe,
There stand thou stout, for Christ hold out, Christs Champion ay (remaine.

Also at this time Christ sent over the much honoured and upright hearted servant of his *Richard Saltingstall* Esquire, Son to the before-named Sir *Richard Saltingstall*, who being weary of this Wildernesse worke, returned home againe not long before, and now his Son being chose to the Office of a Magistrate, continued for some good space of time, helping on the affaires of this little Common wealth, to the honour of Christ, who hath called him: both Father and Son are here remembred.

THou worthy Knight, Saltingstall *hight, her's gaine doth gold exceed*
Then trifle not, its to be got, if thou can'st see thy neede.
Why wilt thou back, and leave as wreck, this worthy Worke begun,
Art thou back-bore, Christ will send more, and raise instead thy son.
His Fathers gon, young Richard *on here valiantly doth War,*
For Christ his truth, to their great Ruth, *Heathens opposers are:*
To study thou, thy mind dost bow, and daily good promote,
Saltingstall *why, then dost thou fly, let all Gods people note.*
That thou wilt stand, in thy own Land, Christ there thē strengthen thee
With grace thee heate, that thy retreate may for his glory be:
At ending day, he thee array, with Glory will not faile,
Breaking graves bands, with his strong hands, and free dust from death's goale.

Among these Troopes of Christs Souldiers, came at this time, the godly servant of Christ Mr. *Roger Harlackenden*, a young Gentleman valiant in Faith, and appointed by Christ to assist his people

People in this Desart, he was chose to the Office of a Magistrate, as also to be a choise Leader of their Military Forces, which as yet were but in a strange posture; And therefore till the yeare 1644. (at which time the Countrey was really placed in a posture of War, to be in a readinesse at all times) there shall not be any thing spoken concerning their Military Discipline, the continuance of this Souldier of Christ was but short, the Lord taking him to rest with himselfe.

HArlackenden, *among these men of note Christ hath thee seated:*
In warlike way Christ thee aray, with zeal, and love well heated.
As generall belov'd of all, Christ Souldiers honour thee:
In thy young yeares, courage appeares, and kinde benignity.
Short are thy days, spēt to his praise, whose Church work thou must aid,
His work shall bide, silver tride, but thine by death is staid.

The number of Ministers that came over this yeare was about eleaven, and many other like faithfull servants of Christ, among whom arrived those two Reverend and laborious servants of his Mr. *Norton*, and Mr. *Shepheard*, of whose narrow escape you have heard the last yeare: Mr. *Norton*, was called to the Office of a Teaching Elder at the Towne of *Ipswich* to the Church of Christ there, where Mr. *Warde* as yet remained in Office. Also the learned labours of this Souldier of Christ are obvious to our Countreymen, hee Preaching there, the blessing of God hath not onely built up many in the Knowledge of Christ, but also been the meanes of converting diverse soules, turning them from the power of Satan to Faith in Christ, whom the Lord long continue; you shall further hear of Christs gratious assisting of him in the first and last Synod holden here at *Cambridge*, and in the meane time let no man be offended that the Author quickens up his own dull affections, in telling how largely the Lord hath bestowed his Graces upon these Instruments of his, although sinfull dust and ashes.

THou Noble Norton, *who art honoured by*
Thy Christ, with learned Arguments doth fill
Thy mouth with might new errors to destroy ;
And force deceivers silently to yeild.
Weake dust waite on thy Christ for further strength :
Who doth his Davids *make as Angels bright,*
To trample down his enemies at length ;
All breake or bow unto his Kingdomes might.
Illettered Men and Women that doe love,
Preheminence, condemne thy learned skill,
But Christ hath given his blessing from above
Unto thy workes the World with light to fill.
Christs faithfull servants met in Synod, take
Thee for their Pen-men Scriptures light to cleere,
With Scripture shew what Government Christ gave ;
To's Churches till himselfe againe appeare.

Here my indeared *Reader*, I must mind thee of the industrious servant of Christ Mr. *John Wilson*, who this yeare landed the third time upon this *American* shore from his Native Country, where now againe by the Divine Providence of Christ, hee narrowly escaped the Hunters hands, being cloathed in a Country-mans habit, passing from place to place, declared to the people of God what great Workes Christ had already done for his people in *New England*, which made many Christian soules long to see these admirable Acts of Christ, although it were not to be injoyed, but by passing through an Ocean of troubles, Voyaging night and day upon the great deep, which this zealous servant of Christ had now five times passed over : at this time came over the Sage, grave, reverend and faithfull servant of Christ M. *Richard Mather*, indued by the Lord with many Heavenly gifts, of a plaine and upright spirit, apt to teach, full of gratious expressions, and Resolvedly bent to follow the truth, as it is in Jesus, hee was anon after his comming called to Office in the Church of Christ at the Towne of *Dorchester*, to assist in the Worke of the Lord, with Mr. *Maverick*, whose worke not long after was ended by death, leaving Mr. *Mather* alone to continue the same.

With

WIth cheerfull face Mather *doth toile indure*
In wilderneſſe, ſpending the prime of's age,
To build Chriſts Churches, and ſoules health procure;
In battell thou doſt deepe thy ſelfe ingage.
Marvell not Man that Mather *through an hoſt*
Of enemies doth breake, and fighting ſtands,
It's Chriſt him keepes, of him is all his boaſt;
Who power gives to do, and then commands.
With gratious ſpeech thy Maſters Meſſage thou
Declareſt to all, and all wouldſt have ſubmit,
That to his Kingdome every knee might bow;
But thoſe reſiſt his ſword ſhall ſurely hit,
Till age doth crown thy head with hoary hairs:
Well haſt thou warr'd, till Mathers *young againe,*
Thy ſon in fight his Fathers ſtrength repairs;
Father and Son beate down Chriſts foes amaine.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Of the beginning of the Churches of Chriſt, to be planted at Canectico, *and firſt of the Church of Chriſt removall to* Hartford, 1635.

THis yeare the ſervants of Chriſt, who peopled the Towne of *Cambridge*, were put upon thoughts of removing, hearing of a very fertill place upon the River of *Canectico* low Land, and well ſtored with Meddow, which is greatly in eſteeme with the people of *New England*, by reaſon the Winters are very long. This people ſeeing that Tillage went but little on, Reſolved to remove, and breed up ſtore of Cattell, which were then at eight and twenty pound a Cow, or neare upon, but aſſuredly the Lord intended far greater matters than man purpoſes, but God diſpoſes theſe men, having their hearts gone from the Lord, on which they were ſeated, ſoone tooke diſlike at every little matter, the Plowable plaines were too dry and ſandy for them, and the Rocky places, although more fruitfull, yet to eate their bread with toile of hand, and how they deemed it unſupportable;

And therefore they onely waited now for a people of ſtronger Faith than themſelves were to purchaſe their Houſes and Land, which in conceipt they could no longer live upon, and accordingly they met with Chapmen, a people new come, who having bought their poſſeſſions, they highed them away to their new Plantation With whom went the Grave and Reverend ſervant of Chriſt Mr. *Hooker*, and Mr. *Stone*, for indeed the whole Church removed, as alſo the much honoured Mr. *Haynes* & divers other men of note for the place, being out of the *Mattacuſets* Patten; they erected another Government, called by the *Indian* name, *Canecticu*, being farther incouraged by two honourable perſonages, the Lord *Say*, and Lord *Brookes*, who built a Forreſt at the mouth of the River, and called it *Say-brook* Forreſt: paſſing up the River they began to build a Towne, which they called *Hartford*, where this Church of Chriſt ſat down their ſtation, there went to theſe parts alſo the Reverend Mr. *Wareham*, and divers from the Towne of *Dorcheſter*. The place of ſetling themſelves, and erecting a Towne was far upon the River, the part next the Sea being very Rocky, but on the banke of this River they planted the good Towne of *Hartford*, and eſtabliſhed civill Government: of their gathering into a Church, you have formerly heard. Onely here minde the gratious ſervant of *Chriſt*, Mr. *Wareham*, whoſe long labours in this worke are expreſt.

WIth length of dayes Chriſt crowned hath thy head.
In Wilderneſſe to mannage his great War,
'Gainſt Antichriſt by ſtrength of him art lead;
With ſteady hand to ſling thy ſtone from far.
That groveling in his gore may lie ſmit downe
This mighty Monſter, that the Earth hath taken,
With's poyſons ſweet in cup of Gold drunke down;
Dead drunke thoſe lie whom Chriſt doth not awaken.
But Wareham *thou by him art ſent to ſave,*
With's word of truth Chriſt to their ſoules apply,
That deadly ſin hath laid in rotting Grave
Dead, live in Chriſt here, and Eternally.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXIV.

of Cambridge *second Church, being the* 11. *of Christ gathered in the* Mattacusets, *and of further supply for* Salem *Church.*

THese people and Church of *Christ* being thus departed from Newtowne, the godly people, who came in their roomes, gathered the eleaventh Church of *Christ*, and called to the Office of a Pastor, that gratious sweete Heavenly minded, and soule-ravishing Minister, Mr. *Thomas Shepheard*, in whose soule the Lord shed abroad his love so abundantly, that thousands of souls have cause to blesse God for him, even at this very day, who are the Seale of his Ministrey, and hee a man of a thousand, indued with abundance of true saving knowledge for himselfe and others, yet his naturall Parts were weake, but spent to the full as followeth:

NO hungr Hawke poore Patridge to devoure
More eager is, then Prelates Nimrod power
Thomas *to hunt, my Shephard sweet pursue*
To seas brinke, but Christ saves his soule for you;
Sending thee Shepheard, safe through Seas awaie,
To feede his flock unto thy ending day,
Where (sheepe seek wolves) thy bosome lambs would catch;
But night and day thou ceasest not to watch.
And warne with teares thy flock of cheaters vile,
Who in sheepes cloathing would the weak beguile,
With dropping dewes from thy lips Christ hath made
Thy hearers eyes oft water springing blade.
With pierced hearts they cry aloud and say,
Shew us sweet Shepheard our salvations way,
Thy lovely speech such ravishment doth bring:
Christ gives thee power to heale as well as sting,
Thou gates sets ope for Christ thy King to enter;
In hearts of many spirits joy to center,
But mourne my Muse, hang downe thy head with woe,
With teares, sighs, sobs lament thy Shepheard so.

(Why?) hee's in Heaven, but I one Earth am left:
More Earthly, 'cause of him I am bereft.
Oh Christ, Why dost thou Shepheard take away,
In erring times when sheepe most apt to stray.

The many Souldiers and Officers of *Christ* that came over this yeare, moved some wonder in the mindes of those, whom he had beene pleased to give a great measure of discerning, yet here they fell abundantly short, deeming almost an impossibility of improving their Talents in this Wildernesse, the *Indian*-people being uncapable of understanding their Language, the *English* congregations that were already set downe, being fully furnished with Teaching Elders, and that which was most strange they were perswaded they should meet with no enemies to oppose them, as if *Christ* would lead them forth into the Field in vaine. But *Christ Iesus*, having the hearts of all Men opened before him, soon shewed them, their worke, and withall made roome for them to set downe, I and many more beside, yea, and beyond expectation made this poore barren Wildernesse become a fruitfull Land unto them that waited on him for the accomplishing thereof, feeding them with the flower of Wheat, as in its time and place (*God willing*) shall be shewed, although it pleased him this yeare to visit them, and try them againe with a great scarcity of Bread, by reason of the multitude that came brought somewhat shorter Provisions then ordinary, which caused them to be in some straites. But their *Lord Christ* gives out a Word of command to those, who occupy their businesse in the great deepe, to furnish from *Ireland* some Ships laden with food for his people.

Also hee commands the Winds and the Seas to beare up these Ships, and blow them forth on their way, till they arrive among his people in *New England*, whose appetities were now sharpe-set for Bread. One poore man among others deeming hee had found out some forsaken Barnes of the *Indians* (whose manner is to lay up their Corne in the Earth, lighteh one a grave, where finding bones of the dead instead of Corne, hee was taken with feare of this, as a sad omen that hee should then die for want of food, but in this hee proved no true Prophet, for the Lord

Lord was pleased to bring in seasonable supply, and the man is living at this very day. This yeere came over the Famous servant of *Christ* M. *Hugh Peters*, whose courage was not inferiour to any of these transported servants of *Christ*, but because his native Soile hath had the greatest share of his labours, the lesse will be said of him here, hee was called to Office by the Church of *Christ*, at *Salem*, their former Pastor, the Reverend M. *Higginson*, having ended his labours resting with the Lord.

With courage bold Peters *a Souldier stout*
In Wildernesse for Christ begins to war,
Much worke he finds 'mongst people, yet hold out;
With fluent tongue he stops phantastick jar.
Swift Torrent stayes of liberties large vent:
Through crooked wayes of error daily flowing,
Shiloes *soft streames to bath in would all bent;*
Should he while they in Christian freedome growing.
But back thou must, thy Talents Christs will have
Improved for him, his glory is thy crowne,
And thou base dust till he thee honour gave;
It matters not though the world on thee do frown.

CHAP. XXXV.

Of the Twelfth Church of Christ gathered at Concord.

YEt further at this time entered the Field two more valiant Leaders of *Christs* Souldiers, holy men of God, Mr. *Buckly* and M. *Jones*, penetrating further into this Wildernesse then any formerly had done, with divers other servants of Christ: they build an Inland Towne, which they called *Concord*, named from the occasion of the present time, as you shall after heare: this Towne is seated upon a faire fresh River, whose Rivulets are filled with fresh Marsh, and her streames with Fish, it being a branch of that large River of *Merrimeck Allwifes*, and Shad in their season come up to this Towne, but *Salmon* and *Daice* cannot come up, by reason of the Rocky falles, which causeth their

their Meddowes to lie much covered with water, the which these people together with their Neigbour Towne, have severall times assayed to cut through but cannot, yet it may be turned another way with an hundred pound charge as it appeared, this Towne was more populated once then now it is (some faint-hearted Souldiers among them fearing the Land would prove barren, sold their possessions for little, and removed to a new Plantation, (which have most commonly a great prize set on them) the number of Families at present are about 50. their buildings are conveniently placed chiefly in one straite streame under a sunny-banke in a low levell, their heard of great Cattell are about 300. the Church of Christ here consists of about seventy soules, their teaching Elders were Mr. *Buckly*, and Mr. *Jones*, who removed from them with that part of the people, who went away, so that onely the reverend grave and godly Mr. *Buckly* remaines.

Concord the 12. Church.

Riches and honours Buckly *layes aside*
To please his Christ, for whom he now doth war,
Why Buckly *thou hast Riches that will bide,*
And honours that exceeds Earths honour far.
Thy bodies worne, and dayes in Desert spent
To feede a few of Christs poore scattered sheepe,
Like Christ's bright body, thy poore body rent;
With Saints and Angells company shall keepe.
Thy Tongue, and Pen doth to the World declare:
Christs covenant with his flock shall firmly stand,
When Heavens and Earth by him dissolved are;
Then who can hold from this his Worke at hand.
Two Bucklies *more Christ by his grace hath taken,*
And sent abroad to mannage his great wars.
Its Buklies *joy that Christ his sons new making,*
Hath placest in's churches for to shine as Stars.

This holy and sincere servant of Christ was put upon the greater tryall, by reason he and his were tenderly brought up, and now by the provident hand of Christ were carried far into this desart-land, where they met with some hardships for a long time, till the place was well peopled, they lived barely.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Of the laborious Worke Christs people have in planting this Wilderneſſe ſet forth in the building the Towne of Concord, *being the firſt in-land Towne.*

NOw becauſe it is one of the admirable acts of Chriſt Providence in leading his people forth into theſe Weſterne Fields, in his providing of Huts for them, to defend them from the bitter ſtormes this place is ſubject nnto, therefore here is a ſhort Epitome of the manner how they placed downe their dwellings in this Deſart Wilderneſſe, the Lord being pleaſed to hide from the Eyes of his people the difficulties they are to encounter withall in a new Plantation, that they might not thereby be hindered from taking the worke in hand; upon ſome inquiry of the *Indians*, who lived to the North-weſt of the Bay, one Captaine *Simon Willard* being acquainted with them, by reaſon of his Trade, became a chiefe inſtrument in erecting this Town, the land they purchaſe of the *Indians*, and with much difficulties traveling through unknowne woods, and through watery ſcrampes, they diſcover the fitneſſe of the place, ſometimes paſſing through the Thickets, where their hands are forced to make way for their bodies paſſage, and their feete clambering over the croſſed Trees, which when they miſſed they ſunke into an uncertaine bottome in water, and wade up to the knees, tumbling ſometimes higher and ſometimes lower, wearied with this toile, they at end of this meete with a ſcorching plaine, yet not ſo plaine, but that the ragged Buſhes ſcratch their legs fouly, even to wearing their ſtockings to their bare skin in two or three houres; if they be not otherwiſe well defended with Bootes, or Buskings, their fleſh will be torne: (that ſome being forced to paſſe on without further proviſion) have had the bloud trickle downe at every ſtep, and in the time of Summer the Sun caſts ſuch a reflecting heate from the ſweet Ferne, whoſe ſcent is very ſtrong, ſo that ſome herewith have beene very nere fainting, although very able bodies to undergoe much travell, and this not to be indured for one day, but for many, and verily did not the Lord incourage their naturall parts (with hopes of a new and

ſtrange diſcovery, expecting every houre to ſee ſome rare ſight never ſeene before ; they were never able to hold out, and breake through : but above all, the thirſting deſires theſe ſervants of Chriſt have had to Plant his Churches, among whom the forenamed Mr. *Jones* ſhall not be forgotten.

IN Deſart's depth where Wolves and Beares abide,
There Jones *ſits down a Wary Watch to keepe,*
O're Chriſts deare flock, Who now are wandered wide ;
But not from him, whoſe eyes ne're cloſe with ſleepe.
Surely it ſutes thy melancholly minde,
Thus ſolitary for to ſpend thy dayes,
Much more thy ſoule in Chriſt content doth finde,
To worke for him, Who thee to joy Will raiſe.
Leading thy ſon to Land, yet more remote,
To feede his flock upon this Weſterne waſt :
Exhort him then Chriſts Kingdome to promote ;
That he With thee of laſting joyes may taſt.

Yet farther to tell of the hard labours this people found in Planting this Wilderneſſe, after ſome dayes ſpent in ſearch, toyling in the day time as formerly is ſaid ; like true *Jacob*, its they reſt them one the Rocks where the night takes them, their ſhort repaſt is ſome ſmall pittance of Bread, if it hold out, but as for Drinke they have plenty, the Countrey being well watered in all places that yet are found out, their farther hardſhip is to travell, ſometimes they know not whether, bewildred indeed without ſight of Sun, their compaſſe miſcarrying in crouding through the Buſhes, they ſadly ſearch up and down for a known way, the *Indians* paths being not above one foot broad, ſo that a man may travell many dayes and never find one. But to be ſure the directing Providence of Chriſt hath beene better unto them than many paths, as might here be inſerted, did not haſt call my Pen away to more waighty matters ; yet by the way a touch thus, it befell with a ſervant maide, who was travelling about three or foure miles from one Towne to another, loofing her ſelfe in the Woods, had very diligent ſearch made after her for the ſpace of three dayes, and could not poſſible be found, then

then being given over as quite loſt, after three dayes and nights, the Lord was pleaſed to bring her feeble body to her own home in ſafety, to the great admiration of all that heard of it. This intricate worke no whit daunted theſe reſolved ſervants of Chriſt to goe on with the worke in hand, but lying in the open aire, while the watery Clouds poure down all the night ſeaſon, and ſometimes the driving Snow diſſolving on their backs, they keep their wet cloathes warme with a continued fire, till the renewed morning give freſh opportunity of further travell; after they have thus found out a place of aboad, they burrow themſelves in the Earth for their firſt ſhelter under ſome Hill-ſide, caſting the Earth aloft upon Timber; they make a ſmoaky fire againſt the Earth at the higheſt ſide, and thus theſe poore ſervants of Chriſt provide ſhelter for themſelves, their Wives and little ones, keeping off the ſhort ſhowers from their Lodgings, but the long raines penetrate through, to their great diſturbance in the night ſeaſon: yet in theſe poore *WigWames* (they ſing Pſalmes, pray and praiſe their God) till they can provide them houſes, which ordinarily was not wont to be with many till the Earth, by the Lords bleſſing, brought forth Bread to feed them, their Wives and little ones, which with ſore labours they attaine every one that can lift a hawe to ſtrike it into the Earth, ſtanding ſtoutly to their labours, and teare up the Rootes and Buſhes, which the firſt yeare beares them a very thin crop, till the ſoard of the Earth be rotten, and therefore they have been forced to cut their bread very thin for a long ſeaſon. But the Lord is pleaſed to provide for them great ſtore of Fiſh in the ſpring time, and eſpecially Alewives about the bigneſſe of a Herring, many thouſands of theſe, they uſed to put under their *Indian* Corne, which they plant in Hills five foote aſunder, and aſſuredly when the Lord created this Corne, hee had a ſpeciall eye to ſupply theſe his peoples wants with it, for ordinarily five or ſix graines doth produce ſix hundred.

As for fleſh they looked not for any in thoſe times (although now they have plenty) unleſſe they could barter with the *Indians* for Veniſon or Rockoons, whoſe fleſh is not much inferiour unto Lambe, the toile of a new Plantation being like the labours of *Hercules* never at an end, yet are none ſo barbarouſly bent

(under the *Mattacusets* especially) but with a new Plantation they ordinarily gather into Church-fellowship, so that Pastors and people suffer the inconveniences together, which is a great meanes to season the sore labours they undergoe, and verily the edge of their appetite was greater to spirituall duties at their first comming in time of wants, than afterward: many in new Plantations have been forced to go barefoot, and bareleg, till these latter dayes, and some in time of Frost and Snow: Yet were they then very healthy more then now they are: in this Wildernesse-worke men of Estates speed no better than others, and some much worse for want of being inured to such hard labour; having laid out their estate upon cattell at five and twenty pound a Cow, when they came to winter them with in-land Hay, and feed upon such wild Fother as was never cut before, they could not hold out the Winter, but ordinarily the first or second yeare after their comming up to a new Plantation, many of their Cattell died, especially if they wanted Salt-marshes: and also those, who supposed they should feed upon Swines flesh were cut short, the Wolves commonly feasting themselves before them, who never leave neither flesh nor bones, if they be not scared away before they have made an end of their meale, as for those who laid out their Estate upon Sheepe, they speed worst of any at the beginning (although some have sped the best of any now) for untill the Land be often fed with other Cattell Sheepe cannot live; And therefore they never thrived till these latter dayes: Horse had then no better successe, which made many an honest Gentleman travell a foot for a long time, and some have even perished with extreame heate in their travells: as also the want of English graine, Wheate, Barly and Rie proved a sore afflicion to some stomacks, who could not live upon *Indian* Bread and water, yet were they compelled to it till Cattell increased, and the Plowes could but goe: instead of Apples and Peares, they had Pomkins and Squashes of divers kinds, their lonesome condition was very grievous to some, which was much aggravated by continuall feare of the *Indians* approach, whose cruelties were much spoken of, and more especially during the time of the *Pequot* wars.

Thus this poore people populate this howling Desart, marching

marching manfully on (the Lord assisting) through the greatest difficulties, and sorest labours that ever any with such weak means have done.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Of the Thirteenth Church of Christ gathered at Hingham, 1636.

AT this time also came to shore the servant of Christ Master *Peter Hubbord*, whom the Lord was pleased to make use of for feeding his people in this Wilderness, being called to Office by the Church of Christ at the Town of *Hingham*, which is scituate upon the Sea coasts South-east of *Charles* River, being a place nothing inferiour to their Neighbours for scituation, and the people have much profited themselves by transporting Timber, Planke and Mast for Shipping to the Town of *Boston*, as also Ceder and Pine-board to supply the wants of other Townes, and also to remote parts, even as far as *Barbadoes*. They want not for Fish for themselves and others also.

This Towne consisted of about sixty Families, the forme is somewhat intricate to describe, by reason of the Seas wasting crookes, where it beates upon a mouldering shore, yet have they compleat streetes in some places, the people joyned in Church covenant in this place, were much about an hundred soules, but have been lessened by a sad unbrotherly contention, which fell out among them, wasting them every way, continued already for seven yeares space, to the great griefe of all other Churches, who held out the right hand of fellowship unto them in Brotherly communion, which may (the Lord helping) demonstate to all the true Churches of *Christ* the World throughout, although they be distanced by place or Nation, yet ought they never to take up such an Independent way, as to reject the advise and counsell of each other, for although the Lord *Christ* have completed his commission in giving full power to every particular Church to exercise all his Ordinances in and toward their owne body, yet hath the Lord so dispensed his gifts, that when the one want, the other shall abound both in spirituall and tem-

porall, that by giving and receiving mutuall love may be maintained, the intire truthes of *Christ* continued, the Churches of *Christ* supported, superiority of any may be avoided, and all such as raise discord among Brethren may be retarded, the downfall of Antichrist, and restauration of that antient people of the Lord furthered, through the Unity of *Christs* Churches the World throughout: this Church I hope will give signall to others (the Lord assisting) that they split not upon the Rock. Of their Pastors I shall say no more, but this at present.

OH Hubbard! Why do'st leave thy native soile?
Is't not to War 'mongst Christ's true worthies here,
What wilt give out, thou'lt loose thy former toile?
And starve Christs flock, which he hath purchast deare.
What would's thou have, speake plaine, truth bides the light:
To Gods Word goe, it's that must triall be,
Hath cruell sword, not het one thy side right,
Increase in love, and thou wilt Justice see.
With humble, holy, learned men converse,
Thee and thy flock they would in one unite,
And all the fogs of selfe conceit disperse;
Thee and thy sons the Lord Christ guide aright.

Some other of the Ministers of Christ arrived this yeare 1635. As Mr. *Flint*, Mr. *Carter*, and Mr. *Walton* and some others, of whom we shall speake (by the Lord assistance) in due time and place, in the meane time here is to be remembred Mr. *Thomas Flint* a sincere servant of *Christ*, who had a faire yearly Revenue in *England*, but having improved it for Christ, by casting it in the common Treasury, as it appeares in the former part of this History, he waites on the Lord for doubling his Talent, if it shall seeme good unto him so to doe, and the meane time spending his person for the good of his people in the Office of a Magistrate.

A

AT Christs commands, thou leav'st thy lands, and native habitation:
His folke to aid, in Desart straid, for Gospells Exaltation,
Flint Hardy *thou, wilt not allow, the underminding Fox,*
With subtill skill, Christs vines to spill, thy sword shall give the knocke.
Yet thou base dust, and all thou hast is Christ's, and by him thou:
Art made to be, such as we see, hold fast for ever now.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Of the placing down of many Souldiers of Christ, and gathering the Church of Christ at Sandwitch *in* Plimouth *patten, and further supply for the Churches of* Ipswich *and* Linne.

THis yeare 1636. Sir *Henry Vaine*, was chosen Governour, and *Iohn Winthrope* Esquire Deputy Governour, the number of Freemen added were about eighty three. This yeare came over the much honoured Mr. *Fenwick*, a godly and able instrument to assist in helping to uphold the civill Government of the second, and third Colonies here planted, by the Divine Providence of the most high God, hee having purchased the Plantation of *Saybrooke* Fort, became a good incourager to the Church of Christ at *Hartford*, where the reverend Mr. *Hooker*, and Mr. *Stone* were Officers. In remembrance of whom a few lines take here.

FEnwick *among this Christian throng, to wilderness doth flee:*
There learn'd hast thou, yet further how, Christ should advanced be.
Who for that end, doth back thee send, their Senator to sit;
In native soile, for him still toile, While thou hast season fit,
His Churches peace, do thou not cease, With their increase to bring,
That they and thee, in lasting Glee, may Hallelujah sing.

The beginning of this yeare was spent in accommodating these new come Guests in the former yeare, whose numbers was neer about three thousand, and now they began to be perswaded they should be a setled people, not minding the present dangers they were in, as you shall hear anon, onely in the meane time take

take notice of further supply the Lord Christ was pleased to send before the cattell increased to its strength, among whom the aged, and long continned Souldiers of Christ Jesus Mr. *Partrich*, as also Mr. *Nathaniel Rogers* an able disputant, whose mouth the Lord was pleased to fill with many arguments for the defence of his truth, Mr. *Samuel Whiting*, who hath also, with keeping to the patterne of sound and wholesome Doctrine, much stopped the spreading Leaven of the Pharises, Mr. *Partrich* was called to Office at a Towne then named *Dukes Berry* in *Plimoth* Government, scituated upon the Sea-coast, where the people of Christ being gathered into a Church, Ordained him to be their Pastor.

IN thine owne soile well rooted in the truth,
Thou didst stand fast by Prelates power unbow'd,
But Laude *layes load on Gods folke to his* Ruth,
By whom thou mayst, no longer, be alow'd.
Then Partrich *thou thy wings begins to spread*
Of Faith and Love to flie these long Seas o're,
To wilderness where thou Christs Lambes hast fed;
With's sinsere Milke this fourteene yeare and more.
But now with age thy Almon Tree doth flourish,
Yet spreading like the Palme Tree dost thou stand,
I'th house of God Christ Roote thy Boughs do nourish;
And for thy head he hath a Crowne in's hand.

Mr. *Nathaniel Rogers* being landed, after a long and tedious Voyage at Sea, was welcomed by the Church of Christ at *Ipswitch*, where the Reverend and Judicious Mr. *Nathaniel Ward*, although a very able Preacher, and much desired, yet for some naturall infirmity (himselfe being best privy unto) desired to be unbound of his ingagement with his people in point of Office: that being left to his liberty, hee might Preach more seldom, in whose stead the Church called to Office this Reverend and Holy Man of God Mr. *Nathaniel Rogers*, whose labours in this *Westerne* World, have been very much: a very sweet heavenly minded man, of whom the Author is bold to say as followeth:

Through

THrough boystrous Seas thy brittle frame of Man
It safely is in Christ's sweet armes infold,
No wonder then thou weake dust stoutly can
Preach Christs in's truths, why he doth thee uphold?
Why Rogers *he thee over-Sea hath fett*
Against the day of Battell, now at hand,
No sooner are thy feet one those shores set,
But Leaders do Christ truth withstand.
Undaunted thou these Westerne Fields dost enter,
Filld with the spirits ready sword at hand,
Ingage thou wilt thy selfe, 'mongst hardships venter;
Valiant thou foughtst under thy Christ's command.
And yet with all men wouldst have peace thy aime,
If deepe to wound, and sweetly then to say,
Come to my Christ, hee'l heale your wounds againe;
Canst but submit hee'l never say thee nay.
With learned Method thou Gods Word divides:
Long labouring that each soule may take his part,
Thy gratious speech with grave impression bides;
Thus Christ by thee is pleas'd to win the heart.
My Muse lament, Nathaniel *is decaying:*
Why dost thou grutch him Heaven, such toile hath had,
In Christ his Vineyard rather be thou praying;
That in Christs armes he resting may be glad.

Mr. *Samuel Whiting* was well welcomed by the Church of *Christ* at *Cawgust*, which Towne, being now of age to receive an English name, was called *Linne*, where this Reverend man now hath his aboade.

THy ardent Love, the countlesse Oceans measure
Quench cannot, for thy love on him is set,
Who of true love hath aie the depthlesse Treasure,
Doth thine increase, least thou should'st, his forget.
Love Christ in's truths my Whiting *thou hast done:*
Thou wilt not suffer with their leaven sower,
False Doctrines 'mongst thy tender flock to run;
Timely cut off wilt thou all those devour.

Samuel *mourne not thy strength in Desart's spent:*
Rather rejoyce thy Christ makes use of thee
Soules to convert, his Kingdomes large extent
From East to West shall shortly setled be.
Thine Eyes and Eares have seen and heard great things
Done by thy Christ, shewes he thy toile accepts,
Though thy weake flesh weaker to dust hee'l bring;
Thy quickned spirit increast in his joy leaps.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Of the first appearing in the Field, of the enemies of Christs people in point of Reformation.

AND now to follow our first simile of a Souldier, the Lord Christ having safely landed many a valiant Souldier of his on these Westerne shores, drawes hither also the common enemies to Reformation, both in Doctrine and Discipline; But it was for like end, as the Lord sometime drew *Sisera* the Captaine of *Jabins* army to the River *Kishon* for their destruction, onely herein was a wide difference; there *Sisera* was delivered into the hands of a Woman, and here *Sisera* was a woman; their weapons and warre was carnall, these spiritual!; there *Jabin* was but a man, here *Jabin* was the common enemy of mans salvation.

In the yeare 1636. the Angels of the severall Churches of Christ in *N. England* sounding forth their silver Trumpets, heard ever and anon the jarring sound of ratling Drums in their eares, striking up an alarum to the battell, it being a frequent thing publikely to oppose the pure and perfect truths of Christ (delivered by the mouth of his Ministers) and that by way of question as the Pharises, Sadduces and Herodians did Christ. But to bring this disorderly worke of theirs into some order, for assuredly could the Author come up to relate the full of the matter in hand, it would through the mercy of Christ make much for the good of Gods people the World throughout, and helpe to discover the last (I hope) but most subtile practises of Satan to hinder the Restauration of the purity of Christs Ordinances in his Churches in all places; As also used by him and his instruments

to

to divert the hands of those, to whom it belongs, from pulling downe Antichrist, to which end he stirreth up some of his instruments (well educated in the Masking schoole of Hippocrisy) to take upon them this long Voyage, giving them in charge by all meanes to carry it more close, then his Jesuites had done, and for their paines they should have the honours to be counted such, as were of a sharper sight, and deeper discerning then any others. Satan, knowing right well that at the fall of Antichrist hee must be chained up for a thousand years, strives with all the wicked craft his long experienced maliciousnesse could possibly invent, to uphold the same, having already perswaded many that his Kingdome was wholy ruinated with our English Nation, and so diswaded them a long time from further prosecuting against him. But Antichrists Kingdome, as it plainly appeares by Scripture, consists chiefly in two parts, his deceaveible Doctrines, and his Kingly power. The first of these being in measure abolish'd, the latter was still retained by the Prelacy, and some Lording Presbytery in greater or lesser measure, as they could attaine unto it.

Now Satan, who is daily walking to and fro compassing the Earth, seeing how these resolved Souldiers of Christ in *New England* with indefatigable paines laboured, not onely the finall ruine of Antichrist, in both, but also the advance of Christs Kingdome, in seting up daily Churches according to his first institution. Wherefore he sets upon a new way to stop (if it were possible) this worke of Reformation, and seeing no other way will serve, he stirs up instruments to cry down Antichrist as much as the most, I and more too, but by this project they should leade people as much out of the way on the other hand, and in the Doctrinall part of Antichrists Kingdome, fall to more horrid Blasphemies then the Papist (as God willing) you shall heare some of them did, namely the *Gortenist*, who most blasphemously professe themselves to be personally the Christ: and as for the other part of his Kingdome, namely the power or Dominion of the beast, this they should with all violence batter downe also, but it must be none other then to make way for their owne exaltation, and pay them their wages in the former page promised them, as also withall to overthow the authority Christ hath ordained

dained to be continued in his Churches, in and under him, and furthermore to lock up the Sword of Civill Government for ever, especially in matters that concerne the foure first Commands of God, a cunning way to save the beasts head whole.

You have now heard of the intention, you shall now see their actions. The *Lord Christ* in his boundlesse mercy give all his people eyes to see, and hearts to believe, that after they have in measure escaped the filthy pollutions of the beast, they may not againe be intangled with these damnabled Doctrines, stealing away their hearts by degrees, under a seeming shew of pulling down Antichrist. The Embassadors of *Christ Jesus*, having full liberty to deliver their masters minde, Preach unto all the Doctrine of Free grace, beseeching them to be reconciled unto God in Christ, and that the revealed will of God is, that all should be saved, and come to the knowledge of the truth, and that God hath given his onely begotten Son, *That whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting Life.* Yet withall minding them that Faith is the gift of God, and none can come unto Christ, but such as the Father drawes, and withall that the whole will not see any need of the Phisitians, but the sick, adding also that none can come to the sight of his sicknesse or dead condition but by the Law of God, unlesse they be quicker sighted then the Apostle; They indevour also to build up others in their holy Faith, that they might come to see the Love of God in Christ, which passeth knowledge, and to this end they shew them the fruits of Faith which worketh by love, and that love will be obedient to all the commands of Christ, who saith, *if you love me keepe my Commandements*; And further that Faith purifies the heart, and that a constant supply must be had from Christ. With these and the like sound and wholsome truths the Ministers of Christ feeds their severall flocks in *New England*, drawing their Doctrines plainly from their Text, and substantially backing them with store of Scripture, and undeniable reason, and then delivering to every Man his portion.

But this good old way would not serve the turne with certaine Sectaries that were hither come, who like cunning Sophisters, seeing the bent of the peoples hearts (after so many mercies received) was to magnifie the rich Grace of God in Christ; they

they began to tell the people, (yet very privately) that the most, if not all the Ministers among them Preached a Covenant of workes, either course or fine, and with a what doe you say to this. They begin to spread their Errors and Heresies, laying the foundation of them as nere the truth as possible they can, the easier to deceive, but in the prosecution, to be sure they ran far enough from it, but to begin; First, they quarrell with the Doctrine of Faith in Christ, and say, a Soule is justified without it.

CHAP. XL.

Of the cunning policy of Satan in that machevillian Principle, divide and overcome, and of the two first dividing Principles, by which many errors were brought in.

AND verily Satans policy here (as in all places where the Lord Christ is acknowledged) was to keepe men from that one right way, by the which hee applies himselfe to the soule, no marvell then if so many Errours arise, like those fained heads of *Hidra*, as fast as one is cut off two stand up in the roome, and chiefly about the uniting of a soule to Christ by Faith. Their Errors in this point they reported to be the judgement of the Reverend and Judicious Mr. *John Cotten*; But hee having spoken for himselfe in his answer to Mr. *Baily*, I forbeare, onely this by the way, take notice of these subtill Projectors, the Erronist I meane, who perceiving this holy man of God Mr. *Cotten* was, and yet is in great esteeme with the people of God, for the great grace Christ hath bestowed upon him in his deepe discerning the mysteries of godlinesse, as also discerning some little difference betweene him, and the other Elders about this point, comment upon it, and in large at their pleasure, and then in daily venting their deceivable Doctrines, like subtill Logicians, bring in this as their strongest argument in the last place. I'le tell you Friend, Neighbour, Brother, if you will forbeare to speake of it till you hear farther, this is the judgement of Mr. *Cotten*, when he, it may be had never heard of it, or at least wise, when they brought this their bastardly brat to him, they put another vizard on the face

of

of it: but that you may understand their way of broaching their abominable errors, it was in dividing those things the Lord hath united in his worke of conversion continued, carrying on a Soule to Heaven in these foure Particulars.

. Dividing etweene the Vord, and the Vord.

First, in dividing betweene the word and the word, under pretence of a legall Gospell, perswading the people their Ministers were legall Preachers, teaching them little better then Popery, and unfit for Gospell Churches, denying them to be any Ministers of Christ that Preach any preparation worke, by shewing men what the Law requires. Here's nothing sayes one of them, but Preaching out of the Law and the Prophets, truly sayes another of them I have not heard a pure Gospell Sermon from any of them, but sure they were both troubled with the Lethargy, or read not the Gospell themselves, for they may finde the Apostles, yea, and Christ himselfe Preached good Gospell sure, out of the Law and the Prophets.

. Christ and is Graces.

Secondly, in separating Christ and his Graces, in manifesting himselfe to be in the Soule, and this they say makes much for the magnifying of Free-grace, and indeed they made it so free, that the soule that receives it shall never taste any of it by their consent, but remaine still a dry branch as before; these legall Pharisees, sayes one of them, tell us of a thing they call inherent grace, and of a man being made a new creature, but I am sure the best of them goe on in their legall duties and performances still, sorrowing for sinne hearing of Sermons, observing duty Morning and Evening, and many such like matters. Tush man sayes another of them, you shall hear more then this, I was discoursing with one of their Scholasticall Preachers Disciples, a professed convert, and yet when he came to pray, he beg'd for forgivenesse of his sins, I asked him why he used that vaine repetition, since hee did believe he was justified by Christ already, and hee made me an answer not worth repeating, but when I told him God could see no sinne in his people, no more then I could see that which was covered close from my eye sight; hee told mee I spake little lesse then blasphemy, so ignorant are these men, and their learned guides also; who perswade them the more they have of the in-dwelling of the Spirit of Christ, the better they shall be inabled to these legall duties. Nay, quoth the other, I can tell you more

more then all this, they make it an evidence of their good estate, even their sanctification, and yet these men would make people believe they are against Popery.

By this discourse of theirs, you may see the manner how these Erronious, and Hereticall persons batter off the fruit from the goodly branches of Christs vines & make bare the flourishing trees planted in the house of the Lord, and yet professe themselves to be Schollars of the upper forme, that have learned as far as their Masters can teach them, but let me tell you friends you'l prove but trewants if you fall thus to Robbing of Orchards, and its an offence far beyond petty Larceny, to rob Christs Garden, let your pretences be what they will: can it possible be for the magnifying of Christs Grace that the branches growing upon his root should remaine fruitlesse? no assuredly, herein God is glorified that his people bring forth much fruit, yet many of these new Gospellers had another plea, hypocrites have a seeming shew of Saints graces by which they deceive themselves and others; And therefore because Felons and Traytors coyne counterfeit Gold, therefore true Gold should not passe for current, but the intent of the Author is to prosecute the History, these errours being confuted already by the able servants of Christ, whom the Lord in his mercy brought hither for that purpose.

CHAP. XLI.

Of the two latter dividing Principles under which these Erronists fought.

THe third dividing tenent, by which these persons prosecuted their errors at this time, was betweene the Word of God, and the Spirit of God, and here these Sectaries had many prety knacks to delude withall, and especially to please the Femall Sex, they told of rare Revelations of things to come from the spirit (as they say) it was onely devised to weaken the Word of the Lord in the mouth of his Ministers, and withall to put both ignorant and unlettered Men and Women, in a posture of Preaching to a multitude, that they might be praised for their able Tongue. Come along with me sayes one of them, i'le bring you

3. The Word, and the spirit.

you to a Woman that Preaches better Gospell then any of your black-coates that have been at the Ninneversity, a Woman of another kinde of spirit, who hath had many Revelations of things to come, and for my part, saith hee, I had rather hear such a one that speakes from the meere motion of the spirit, without any study at all, then any of your learned Scollers, although they may be fuller of Scripture (I) and admit they may speake by the helpe of the spirit, yet the other goes beyond them. Gentle Reader, thinke not these things fained, because I name not the parties, or that here is no witnesse to prove them, should I so do: neither of both is the cause I assure you, but being somewhat acquainted with my own weakenesse, should the Lord withdraw the light of his word, and also I verily believe some of them are truly turned againe to the truth, the which I wish to all, yet by relating the story all men may see what a spirit of giddinesse they were given up to, and some of them to strong delusions, even to most horrid and damnable blasphemies, having itching eares, or rather proud desires to become Teachers of others, when they grosly erred in the first Principles of Religion themselves. There was a man in one of the farthest Townes of the *Mattachusets* Government, where they had no Ministers for the present, he being much desirous to shew himselfe some body in talking to as many as hee could get to hear him one the Sabbath day, missing some of his Auditors, he meets with one of them some few dayes after, they passing over the water together, where were you quoth he on the Sabbath day that you were not at the meeting? we had a notable piece of Prophecy, quoth the man that was missing, who was it that Preached? The other replying not: his Wife being in presence, answered; it was my husband, nay wife, quoth he thou shoulds not have told him, teach him to stay at home another time.

By this and divers other such like matters, which might be here inserted, you may see how these Sectaries love the preheminence, and for this end seeke to deprive the Ministers of Christ inveigling as many as they can in the head, that they take to much upon them (just like the rebellious *Korath*, *Dathan*, and *Abiram*) scoffing at their Scholler-like way of Preaching, wherein the grosse dissimulation of these erronious persons hath appeared

peared exceedingly, as for instance first of a Woman, even the grand Mistris of all the rest, who denied the Resurrection from the dead, shee and her consorts mightily rayling against learning, perswading all they could to take heed of being spoyled by it, and in the meane time, shee her selfe would dispute (forsooth) and to shew her skill that way, here is a falacy quoth she in this syllogisme: as also one of the *Gortonists*, as shallow a pated Scholler as my selfe, far from understanding Latine, much lesse any other Language the Scriptures were writ in, yet when hee would hold out some of the best of his false Doctrines, as namely, that there were no other Devills but wicked men, nor no such thing as sin. Quoth he that place in the fourth *Psalme*, where men commonly read, *stand in awe and sin not*, in the originall it is read *stand in awe and misse not*. But to go on, at this time there were many strange Revelations told both of Men and Women, as true some of them said as the Scripture, so that surely had this Sect gone on awhile, they would have made a new Bible, and their chief Mistris when she was shipt for *N. England*, what will you say quoth she, and it hath beene revealed to me that we shall be there in six weekes, and one of the femall *Gortonists* said, she was a Prophetesse, and it was revealed unto her, that shee must prophecy unto the People in the same words the Prophet *Ezekiel* did, as also a lusty big man to defend this tenent held forth to his Pastor before the whole Congregation, that the spirit of Revelation came to him as he was drinking a pipe of Tobacco.

The fourth dividing way to bring in their Heresies, was to devide betweene Christ and his Ordinances, and here they plaid their game to purpose, even to casting down of all Ordinances as carnall, and that because they were polluted by the Ordinance of man, as some of these Sectaries have said to the Minister of Christ, you have cast off the crosse in Baptisme, but you should do well to cast off Baptisme it selfe; as also for the Sacrament of the Lords Supper, for to make use of Bread, or the juce of a silly Grape to represent the Body and Bloud of Christ, they accounted it as bad as Negromancy in the Ministers of Christ to performe it. But seeing there will be occasion to bring in a bedronle of these Blasphemies in the yeare (43) and (44) take the lesse here; onely minde that these persons being first bewildred

4. Christ, and his Ordinances.

in the deniall of Infants being Baptized, could neither finde right faith to be Baptized into, nor yet any person rightly constituted to Baptize remaining. Seekers they came to this, but yet here must not be omitted the slights these Erronists had to shoulder out the Officers Christ hath ordained, and set up in his Churches; and verily in this point they sided directly with the Papist and Prelates, although in most of the other they went directly out of the way on the other hand. Ignorance say the Papist is the Mother of devotion, its better say the Protestant Prelates to have (a blind sir *John*) one that cannot tell how to Preach, provided he will conforme to our Ceremonies, than to have one that will Preach constantly, and not conforme also: these Erronist, shewing themselves to be whelps of the same litter, Cry out against a learned Presbitery, as the onely way to captivate liberty, and herein the transformed Devill came to shew his Hornes, for why, his errors would not take where the people were followers of their seeing guids, and if it be well noted, here is the Master-piece of all their knavery, the which comes in after this manner, The Lording Prelacy, Popes, Cardinalls, Bishops, Deanes, &c. Were ordinarily brought up at the University to learning, and have most tyrannically abused it: usurping over the People of Christ, and exercised most inhumane and barbarous cruelty upon them; as also the Presbyterian Kirke by these Provinciall Classes, men of learning having robbed the particular Congregations of their just and lawfull priviledges, which Christ hath purchased for them. Each Congregation of his being invested with full power to Administer all the Ordinances he hath ordained, in and toward their owne Members; and further learned men in some places, feeding the people for their Tith-sake in a Parishioniall way, desire the upholding thereof, lest their fat Benefices should grow leane.

Now the Redemption of the people of Christ out of all these bondages, being full of difficulty to attaine, as is abundantly witnessed in the great hardship Gods people have undergon in this Wildernesse-worke; as also much more by that bloudy war so long continued in our Native Country, and the two adjacent Kingdomes. This makes a very faire bottome for those to build upon, who would have the sluce of authority in the Officers of

of Christs Churches plucked up, that so their errors might flow in like a floud; And therefore they impannell a Jury of their own Sectaries to passe upon all such as put a higher esteem upon their Pastors and Teachers (in point of discerning the holy things of God) then upon other men, who returne in their Verdit as finding them guilty of the crime above expressed, either as party, or privy abetters unto them, upon this the Vote goes for advancing such men as will let them out line enough for such as will worke without wages, and give to every man liberty to exercise a large conscience, provided it be his own, and as for authority they would have none used, as being a thing two opposite to liberty. My friend cast off as much of thy owne power as thou canst, and beware of Lording it over Gods Heritage, but I pray thee let Christ alone with his, which he hath given to his Pastors and Teachers in administring the holy things of God, peculiar to their Office, and tremble all you Presbyterians, who to please the people prostrate the authority Christ hath put upon the Eldrs of his Churches as Officers, to the resolute liberty of man: the people may and ought to call them to Office, to the which Christ hath united double honour and authority, and appointed them to be had in high esteeme for their worke-sake, being Embassadors of *Christ Jesus*. This may no man take from them, nor yet they themselves cast off, and yet all this makes nothing for the Papall, Prelaticall, Classicall or Parishionall authority of the Presbitery, for it holds onely in their ruling well, while they rule for Christ, they must and shall have the power hee hath put upon their Office. From these foure dividing Tenents by the cunning art of these deceivers, were forescore grosse errours broached secretly, sliding in the darke like the Plague, proving very infectious to some of the Churches of CHRIST in their Members.

Foureſcore Errors derived from these four heads, and spread abroad in *N. England*.

CHAP. LXII.

Of sad effects of the pitifull and erronious Doctrines broached by the Sectuaries.

THe number of these infectious persons increasing now, having drawn a great party on their side, and some consider-

able persons they grow bold, and dare question the sound and wholesome truths delivered in publick by the Ministers of *Christ*. Their Church-meetings are full of Disputes in points of difference, and their love-Feasts are not free from spots, in their Courts of civill Justice some men utter their Speeches in matters of Religion very ambiguously, and among all sorts of persons a great talke of new light, but verily it proved but old darknesse, such as sometime over-shadowed the City of *Munster*; But blessed be the *Lord Christ*, who now declared himselfe to be a helpe at hand for his poore *New England* Churches, being now in their infancy, whose condition at present was very dolorous, and full of difficulties, insomuch that the better part of this new transported people stood still many of them gazing one upon another, like Sheepe let loose to feed on fresh pasture, being stopped and startled in their course by a Kennell of devouring Wolves. The weaker sort wavered much, and such as were more growne Christians hardly durst discover the truth they held one unto another, the fogs of errour increasing the bright beames of the glorious Gospell of our *Lord Christ* in the Mouth of his Ministers could not be discerned through this thick mist by many, and that sweete refreshing warmth that was formerly felt from the spirits influence, was now turned (in these Erronists) to a hot inflamation of their owne conceited Revelations, ulcerating and bringing little lesse then frenzy or madnesse to the patient, the Congregation of the people of God began to be forsaken, and the weaker Sex prevailed so farre, that they set up a Priest of their own Profession and Sex, who was much thronged after, abominably wresting the Scriptures to their own destruction: this Master-piece of Womens wit, drew many Disciples after her, and to that end boldly insinuated her selfe into the favour of none of the meanest, being also backed with the Sorcery of a second, who had much converse with the Devill by her own confession, and did, to the admiration of those that heard her, utter many speeches in the Latine Tongue, as it were in a trance, this Woman was wonted to give drinkes to other Women to cause them to conceive, how they wrought I know not, but sure there were Monsters borne not long after, as you shall hear in the following History.

Oh

Oh yee *New England* Men and Women, who hath bewitched you that you should not obey the truth? And indeed Satan, to make sure worke with semblance of Preaching the Doctrine of Free-gree by his instruments, makes shew of out-bidding all the Orthodox, and godly Ministers in the Countrey, pretending their Preaching to be but a Covenant of workes, supposing by this meanes to silence them without a Bishop, and lest the civill power should stand up for their aid, they threaten them with the high displeasure of Christ for persecuting his people, which as they said these erronious persons with their new light, were the onely Men and Women that were pure Gospell Preachers. Thus the poore people of Christ, who kept close to his antient truths invironed with many straites, having expended their Estates to voyage far through the perillous Seas, that their eyes might behold their Teachers, and that they might injoy the protection of a godly civill Government, began to deeme themselves in a more dolorous condition then when they were in the Commissaries Court, and Prelates Prisons, the hideous waves in which their brittle Barques were sometimes covered, as they passed hither, were nothing so terrible in the apprehension of some as was this floud of errors violently beating against the bankes of Church and civill Government, the wants of this Wildernesse, and pinching penury in misse of Bread, put them to no such paine by gnawing on their empty stomacks, with feare of famishing, as did the misse of the Administration of Christ in his Word and Ordinances, leaving the soule in a languishing condition for want of a continuall supply of *Christ* in his Graces.

CHAP. LXIII.

Of the sorrowfull condition of the people of Christ, when they were incountred with these erronists at their first landing.

BUt to end this dismall yeare of sixteene hundred thirty six, take here the sorrowfull complaint of a poore Soule in misse of its expectation at landing, who being incountered with some of these Erronists at his first landing, when he saw that good old way of *Christ* rejected by them, and hee could not skill in that

new light, which was the common theame of every mans Discourse, hee betooke him to a narrow *Indian* path, in which his serious Meditations soone led him, where none but senceleſſe Trees and eccohing Rocks make answer to his heart-easeing mone. Oh quoth he where am I become, is this the place where those Reverend Preachers are fled, that *Christ* was pleased to make use of to rouse up his rich graces in many a drooping soule; here have I met with some that tell mee, I must take a naked *Christ*. Oh, woe is mee if *Christ* be naked to mee, wherewith shall I be cloathed, but methinks I most wonder they tell me of casting of all godly sorrow for sin as unbeseeming a Soule, that is united to *Christ* by Faith, and there was a little nimbled tongued Woman among them, who said she could bring me acquainted with one of her own Sex that would shew me a way, if I could attaine it, even Revelations, full of such ravishing joy that I should never have cause to be sorry for sinne, so long as I live, and as for her part shee had attained it already: a company of legall Professors, quoth she lie poring on the Law which *Christ* hath abolished, and when you breake it then you breake your joy, and now no way will serve your turne, but a deepe sorrow. These and divers other expressions intimate unto men, that here I shall finde little increase in the Graces of *Christ*, through the hearing of his word Preached, and other of his blessed Ordinances. Oh cunning Devill, the *Lord Christ* rebuke thee, that under pretence of a free and ample Gospell shuts out the Soule from partaking with the Divine Nature of *Christ*, in that mysticall Union of his Blessed Spirit creating, and continuing his Graces in the Soule: my deare *Christ*, it was thy worke that moved me hither to come, hoping to finde thy powerfull presence in the Preaching of the Word, although administred by sorry men, subject to like infirmities with others of Gods people, and also by the glasse of the Law, to have my sinfull corrupt nature discovered daily more and more, and my utter inabillity of any thing that is good, magnifying hereby the free grace of *Christ*; who of his good will and pleasure worketh in us to will, and to doe working all our works in us, and for us.

But here they tell me of a naked *Christ*, what is the whole life of a Christian upon this Earth? But through the power of

Christ

Christ to die to sinne, and live to holinesse and righteousnesse, and for that end to be diligent in the use of meanes: at the uttering of this word he starts up from the greene bed of his complaint, with resolution to hear some one of these able Ministers Preach (whom report had so valued) before his will should make choyce of any one principle, though of crossing the broade Seas back againe, then turning his face to the Sun, he steered his course toward the next Town, and after some small travell hee came to a large plaine, no sooner was hee entred thereon, but hearing the sound of a Drum he was directed toward it by a broade beaten way, following this rode he demands of the next man he met what the signall of the Drum ment, the reply was made they had as yet no Bell to call men to meeting; and therefore made use of a Drum, who is it, quoth hee, Lectures at this Towne. The other replies, I see you are a stranger, new come over, seeing you know not the man, it is one Mr. *Shepheard*, verily quoth the other you hit the right, I am new come over indeed, and have been told since I came most of your Ministers are legall Preachers, onely if I mistake not they told me this man Preached a finer covenant of workes then the other, but however, I shall make what hast I can to heare him. Fare you well, then hasting thither hee croudeth through the thickest, where having stayed while the glasse was turned up twice, the man was metamorphosed, and was faine to hang down the head often, least his watry eyes should blab abroad the secret conjunction of his affections, his heart crying loud to the Lords ecchoing answer, to his blessed spirit, that caused the Speech of a poore weake pale complectioned man to take such impression in his soule at present, by applying the word so aptly, as if hee had beene his Privy Counseller, cleering Christs worke of grace in the soule from all those false Doctrines, which the erronious party had afrighted him withall, and now he resolves (the Lord willing) to live and die with the Ministers of *New England*; whom hee now saw the Lord had not onely made zealous to stand for the truth of his Discipline, but also of the Doctrine, and not to give ground one inch.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLIIII.

The Congregationall Churches of Christ are neither favourers of sinfull opinions, nor the Lords over any, or many Churches, or mens Consciences.

AND here Christian Reader the Author according to his former practice, must minde thee of the admirable providence of Christ toward his *New England* Churches, in preserving them from these erronious spirits, that have hitherto in all places dog'd the sincere servants of Christ, when ever they have set upon a through Reformation, as stories doe abundantly testify, which thing the reverend *Calvine* and divers others, have declared. But seeing the boasting Prelates in these times are ready to say their Lordly power kept these errours under, its plaine otherwise: for Satan saw while people were under their yoake of humane inventions, they were far enough from exalting the Kingdome of Christ; And therefore he reserved these errours, for his last shifts, and further you shall see in the following story that the *Lord Christ* reserved this honour for those, whose love hee had inlarged to follow him in a dezart wilderneſſe, even with the sharpe sword of the Word, timely to cut off the heads of this *Hidra*; but yet there are two sorts of persons in our Native Country, whom the Elders and Brethren here do highly honour in Christ, and prefer before themselves, namely the godly Presbyterian party, and the Congregationall sincere servants of *Christ*, both which the Author could wish, (that with bowells of compassion, sweet simpathising affection of Brethren knit together in that transcendent love of Christ, which couples all his distanced flockes together) they would seriously ponder this History, which through the Authors weakeneſſe wants much of measure, but nothing of the truth of things, so far as a shallow capacity can reach. Of the first sort named, I could wish the Reverend Mr. *Ruterford*, Mr. *Bayle*, Mr. *Rathbone*, Mr. *Paget*, Mr. *Ball*, &c. would but informe themselves further by the truth of this History, supposing they cannot chuse but in a good measure be satisfied already with the pacificatory and meeke answers of as many Reverend and godly Elders of ours.

Now

Now that I would they ſhould take notice of is, that the Churches of Chriſt in *New England*, and their Officers have hitherto been ſo far from imbracing the erronious Doctrines of theſe times, that through the powers of Chriſt they have valiantly defended the truth, and cut down all deceiveable Doctrine; the like hath not been done for many ages heretofore. Reverend and beloved in Chriſt, could your eyes but behold the efficacy of loving counſell in the Communion of congregationall Churches, and the reverend reſpect, honour and love, given to all Teaching Elders, charity commands me to thinke you would never ſtand for Claſſicall injunctions any more, neither Dioceſan, nor Provinciall authority can poſſible reach ſo far as this royall Law of love in communion of Churches: verily its more univerſall then the Papall power, and aſſuredly the dayes are at hand, wherein both *Jew* and *Gentile* Churches ſhall exerciſe this old Modell of Church Government, and ſend their Church ſalutations and admonitions from one end of the World unto another, when the Kingdomes of the Earth are become our *Lord Chriſts*; Then ſhall the exhortation of one Church to another prevaile more to Reformation, then all the thundering Bulls, excomunicating Lordly cenſures, and ſhamefull penalties of all the Lording Churches in the World, and ſuch ſhall be, and is the efficacy of this intire love one to another, that the withdrawing of any one Church of *Chriſt*, according to the Rule of the word from thoſe that walke inordinatly, will be more terrible to the Church or Churches ſo forſaken, then an Army with Banners: yea, and it may be added, becauſe civill Government is like to turne nurſe in more places then one, this royall Law of love ſhall become the Law of Nations, and none will ſuffer their ſubjects to rebell againſt it; but to our beloved brethren in *England* on the other hand, the Reverend Mr. *Burroughs*, Mr. *Goodwin*, &c.

This ſeemeth you have apprehended our Churches and civill Government, to be too ſtrict in dealing with perſons for their ſinfull opinions, I wiſh the offenders be none of your intelligencers, who to be ſure will make the worſt of things, I know you are in charity with us; And therefore a few words will ſatisfie, which I hope you want not from your good friends our Reverend Elders, who could wiſh you as much happineſſe as our ſelves

to expell error before it grew to that height to cry downe the sound and wholesome truths: casting durt on our Orthodox and godly Ministery, I wish you open your mouths wide enough to be filled with this blessing, the Lord hath done great, and unexpected things for you, and why not this? one and twenty yeares experience hath taught us that Errors and Heresies are not broached, and held out here by tender consciences, such as are weak in the Faith, but by such as think them Scholers of the upper forme, such as would teach the most ablest Christian among us another Gospell, and further we finde our Erronist wanting a common enemy to contend withall, as you have fallen foule of our godly Magistrates and Ministers, and will not suffer us quietly to injoy the Ordinance of *Christ*, for which wee hither came, buzzing our people in the eare with a thing they call liberty, which when any have tasted a smack of, they can no more indure to hear of a Synod or gathering together of able, and Orthodox Christians, nor yet of communion of Churches, but would be independant to purpose, and as for civill Government they deem Religion to be a thing beyond their Sphere.

CHAP. XLV.

Of the civill Government in N. England, *and their nurture of the people upon their tender knees.*

THe vernall of the yeare 1637. being now in his prime, and as the season of the yeare grew hotter, so the minds of many were hot in the eager pursuite of their selfe conceited opinions, and verily had not authority stept in, it was much to be doubted they would have proceeded from words to blowes, great hold and keepe there was about choice of Magistrates this yeare, the choyce being retarded by a paper call'd a Petition, but indeed a meere device to hinder the election, till the erronious party were strengthened, their number increasing daily, but the Lord *Christ* gratiously providing for the peace of his people toward the end of the day the honoured *John Winthrope* Esquire, was chosen Governour, and *Thomas Dudly* Esq. Deputy Governor: the number of free-men added this year was about. 125.

Here

Here according to promise the Reader shall have an accoumpt of the civill Government of this little Common-wealth, as their whole aime in their removall from their Native Country, was to injoy the liberties of the Gospell of *Christ*, so in serving up civill Government, they daily direct their choice to make use of such men as mostly indeavour to keepe the truths of *Christ* pure and unspotted, and assuredly they can digest any wrongs or injuries done them in their estates, or trade, better then the wresting of their right in the freedome of the Gospell, out of their hands, and this the Erronist knowing right well (to save their heads whole) perswade men it is not for civill Government to meddle with matters of Religion ; and also to helpe out with their damnable Doctrines, they report it in all places, where they be come, that *New England* Government doth persecute the people and Churches of *Christ* ; which to speake truth they have hitherto beene so far from, that they have indeavoured to expell all such beasts of prey, (who will not be reclaimed) that here might be none left to hurt or destroy in all Gods holy Mountaine, and therefore are ready to put the Churches of *Christ* in minde of their duty herein ; yea, and sometimes going before them in their civill censures that they may not onely professe the truth, but also hate every false way, not that they would compell men to believe by the power of the Sword, but to indeavour all may answer their profession ; whether in Church Covenant or otherwise, by knowing they beare not the Sword in vaine. Neither doe they exercise civill power to bring all under their obedience to a uniformity in every poynt of Religion, but to keepe them in the unity of the spirit, and the bond of peace, nor yet have they ever mixed their civill powers with the authority peculiarly given by *Christ* to his Churches and Officers of them, but from time to time have laboured to uphold their priviledges, and only communion one with another.

The chiefe Court or supreame power of this little Common-wealth, consists of a mixt company, part Aristocracy, and part Democracy of Magistrates, that are yearly chosen by the major Vote of the whole body of the Free-men throughout the Country ; and Deputies chosen by the severall Townes, they have hitherto had about 12, or 13. Magistrates in the Colony

of the *Mattacusets*, the other Colonies have not above five or six, they have hitherto beene Volunteers, governing without pay from the people, onely the Governor of the *Mattacusets* hath some yeares 100 l. allowed him, and some years lesse, many of the Magistrates are already remembred, yet with some of the first came hither Mr. *Simon Brodestreet*, in this short Meeter is he remembred.

NOw Simon *yong, step in among, these worthies take thy place:*
All day to toile in vinyard, while Christ thee upholds with grace;
Thee wisdom grave betime he gave, and tongue to utter it,
That thou mightst be a blessing free, and for this calling fit.
Thy counsell well, advis'd dost tell, with words ordered compleat;
Thy memory, doth amplifie, meeting with matters great.
Broad liberty, do thou deny, Brodstreet *Christ would thee have,*
For's truth contend, strong reason spend, it from aspersion save.
He furnish't thee, with these gifts free, to last he must them make,
Still adding more, to thy old store, till he thee to him take.

The Lord was pleased to furnish these his people with some able instruments in most of their Townes, that were skill'd in Common-wealth work, out of which they chose their Deputies, whose number was ordinarily between 30. and 40. some of them there will be occasion to speake of among their Military Men, but see here the *Wonder-Working Providence of Sions Saviour*, appears much in gathering together stones to build up the walls of *Jerusalem* (that his *Sion* may be surrounded with Bulworkes and Towres) with a whispering word in the eares of his servants, he crosses the Angles of *England* from *Cornewall* to *Kent*, from *Dover* to *Barwick*, not leaving out *Scotland* and *Wales*; Wise men are perswaded to the worke without arguing like *Elisha*, when *Elias* cast his mantle on him, so these men make no stop, but say suffer me onely to sell my inheritance, and I will away for *New England*. And now I could wish our Brethren in *England* would not be angry with us for making such hast. Brethren you know how the case stood with our Ministers, as it was with *Gideon*, who could thresh out no Corne, but hee must doe it secretly to hide it from the *Midianites*, who spread the Land like

like Grashoppers, no more could they thresh and cleane up any Wheate for the Lords Garner, but the Prelates would presently be upon their backs, and plow long furrowes there, and you may believe it, if you will (for it is certaine) many, had not this little number gone forth to blow their Trumpets, and breake their Pitchers, making the brightnesse of their Lamps appeare, surely the host of the *Midianites* had never been put to flight, and if still any of our Brethren shall contend with us, wee answer with *Gideon*, the Lord hath delivered into your hands the chiefe Princes of *Midian*, and what were we able to do in comparison of you; yet shall we not cease to follow on the worke of Reformation, although weake and faint, till the Lord be pleased to free his *Israel* from all their enemies; and verily *England* hath not wanted the Prayers of the poore people of *Christ* here. And also some of our chiefe helpes both for Church-worke, Military and common-wealth-worke; yet through the Lords mercy, we still retaine among our Democracy the godly Captaine *William Hathorn*, whom the Lord hath indued with a quick apprehension, strong memory, and rhetorick, volubillity of speech, which hath caused the people to make use of him often in publick service, especially when they have had to do with any forrein Government, Mr. *Nathaniel Duncan* learned in the Latine and French tongue, a very good accountant. Wherefore he is called to the place of Auditor Generall for the County. Mr. *John Glovar* a man strong for the truth, a plaine sincere godly man, and of good abilities. Captaine *Daniel Gookin*, who was drawen hither from *Virginia*, by having his affection strongly set on the truths of *Christ*, and his pure Ordinances; being indued by the Lord with good understanding Captaine *William Tinge*, sometime Treasurour for the County, but being absent for some space of time in *England*, Mr. *Richard Russell* was chosen in his roome, Mr. *Edward Rawson* a young man, yet imployed in Common-wealth affaires a long time, being well beloved of the inhabitants of *Newbery*, having had a large hand in her Foundation; but of late he being of a ripe capacity, a good yeoman and eloquent inditer, hath beene chosen Secretary for the Country, Mr. *William Hubbard* of *Ipswich*, a learned man, being well read in state matters: of a very affable and humble behaviour;

who hath expended much of his Estate to helpe on this worke; although he be slow of speech, yet is hee down right for the businesse, Captaine *Umphry Atherton*, one of a cheerfull spirit, and intire for the County Mr. *Edward Jackson*, one who cannot indure to see the truths of Christ trampled under foot by the erronious party, *Eleazar Lusher* one of the right stamp, and pure mettle, a gratious, humble and heavenly minded man Mr. *Joseph Hill*, a man active for to bring the Lawes of the County in order, Mr. *Whipple*, one whose godly sincerity is much approved, Mr. *Francis Norton*, one of a cheerfull spirit, and full of love to the truth, Mr. *Robert Paine*, a right godly man, and one whose estate hath holpe on well with the worke of this little Common-wealth, Mr. *William Torry* a good penman and skild in the Latine tongue, usually Clarke of the Deputies, the Survayor Generall of the Armies of the Country, *John Johnson*, of an undanted spirit, Mr. *William Parker*, a man of a pregnant understanding, and very usefull in his place. Many more would be named, but for tediousnesse, neither will it please the men more to be named, then not, for all are very willing to acknowledge their inability for the worke, and the best are not without many imperfections.

The Authors end in naming some few is for none other end, but to make good the title of this Book & to incourage all the servants of *Christ* for time to come, wholely to rely upon him, when they go about any difficult work, which may tend to the glory of his Name. Who could have told these men, being scattered abroad throughout the Island of Great *Brittaine*, they should meete on a Wildernesse nine hundered Leagues remote, and there keep Court together to study the preservation of *Christs* poore scattered flockes? nay brethren, when you first tooke book in hand to learne your Letters, you would have been very dull pates, but for this worke; assurdly, how you came by large inheritances, some of you, and estates of hundreds, and thousands, your selves best know, but believe it, the Lord intended it for this very work, *The Earth is the Lords, and the fulnesse of it*, then let none of the people of *Christ* mourn that they have spent their wealth in this Wildernesse, if it have holpe on the worke, rather rejoyce that *Christ* hath betrusted thee to be Steward for the King of Kings, & that

that in so noble an achievement the worthiest worke that the memory of our selves, and our fore-fathers can reach unto.

And brethren, as for the good parts and gifts the Author hath commended you for, but for the edifying of the body of *Christ*, and assisting his people in this work you had been empty of all good.

And now seeing it is the opinion of many in these dayes of Reformation, that all sorts of Sectaries (that acknowledge a *Christ*) should be tolerated by civill Government, except Papist, and this Government hath hitherto, and is for future time resolvedt o practice otherwise (the Lord assisting) having met already with more blasphemous Sectaries, then are Papists ; wherefore it will not be amisse if our Countrymen be acquainted with the one and twenty yeares experience of this Wildernesse worke, in point of Government. First, it is their judgment, and that from Scripture taught them, that those, who are chose to place of government, must be men truly fearing God, wise and learned in the truths of *Christ*, (if so) as hitherto it hath been *New Englands* practice, then surely such will be utterly unfit to tolerate all sorts of Sectaries, as because they have taken up *Joshuas* resolution, to serve the Lord & a man cannot serve two Masters, much lesse many Masters ; Then surely such as would have all sorts of sinfull opinions upheld by the civill government, must be sure to make choise of the most *Atheisticall* persons they can finde to governe, such as are right *Gallios* : for *N. E.* hath found by experience that every man will most favour his own way of Profession, and labor tooth & naile to maintaine it, and if any have complied with other that have been of a contrary sinfull opinion to their own, it hath been, because they would have their own scape scot free, but assuredly the *Lord Christ* will allow of no such ways for the favouring the professors of his truths , nor may any Magistrate doe evill that good may come of it , in favouring dangerous and deceiveable doctrines, that others may favour the true servants of *Christ*, neither is there any such need, for it is their honours (if the will of God be so) to suffer, nor can the people of *N. England* (I meane the better part) be perswaded to set up any other to governe , but such as are zealous for the maintainance of the truths of *Christ* ; yet of late there is a buzzing noise, as if it were injury to the Churches for civill power to medle in matters of Religion, but to be

be sure there are many that strive for a Toleration, yet the people of *Christ*, who are the naturall Mothers of this Government, resolve never to see their living child so divided, looking at such a government to be no better to them, a living child divided in twaine; and therefore desires their loving Countrymen to beare with them in this point, and if any notwithstanding shall force it to be so, we shall shew our natural affection, and leave all to them, chusing rather to dwell on the backside of this Desert (a place as yet unaccessible) knowing assuredly our God will appeare for our deliverance. Yet let them also know the Souldiers of *Christ* in *N E.* are not of such a pusillanimous spirit, but resolve as that valiant *Jeptha* did to keep in possession, the Towns his God had given them, so we are resolved (the Lord willing) to keepe the government our God hath given us, and for witnesse hee hath so done, let this History manifest: for we chose not the place for the Land, but for the government, that our *Lord Christ* might raigne over us, both in Churches and Common-wealth, and although the Lord have been pleased by an extraordinary blessing upon his peoples industry to make the place fruitfull (as at this day indeed it is) yet all may know the land in it selfe is very sterrill, but the upholding of the truths of *Christ*, is chiefe cause why many have hitherto come: and further if the servants of *Christ* be not much mistaken, the downfall of *Antichrist* is at hand, and then the Kingdome of the Earth shall become the Kingdome of our *Lord Christ* in a more peculiar manner, then now they are, and surely godly civill government shall have a great share in that worke, for they are exhorted to fill her double of the Cup, shee hath given to them; and also know our Magistrates, being conscious of ruling for *Christ*, dare not admit of any bastardly brood to be nurst up upon their tender knees, neither will any Christian of a sound judgement vote for any, but such as earnesty contend for the Faith, although the increase of Trade, and traffique may be a great inducement to some.

THE

VVonder-working PROVIDENCE OF SIONS *SAVIOUR*, IN NEVV ENGLAND.

CHAP. I.

The beginning of the relation of the Pequot *war, and the great straites these wandering* Jacobites *were in.*

THe great *Jehovah*, minding to manifest the multitude of his Mercies to the wandering *Jacobites*, and make an introduction to his following wonders, causeth the darke clouds of calamities to gather about them, presaging some terrible tempest to follow, with eyes full of anguish, they face to the right, upon the damnable Doctrines, as so many dreadfull Engines set by Satan to intrap their poore soules; Then casting forth a left hand looke, the labour and wants accompaning a Desert, and terrible Wildernesse affright them, their memories minding them of their former plenty; It much aggravated the present misery, when with thoughts of retreating, they turne their backs about the experienced incumbrances, and deepe distresses of a dangerous Ocean hinders their thoughts of flight, besides the sterne looke of the Lordly Prelates: which would give them a welcome home in a famishing prison. Then purposing to put on more stronger resolution, facing to the Front, behold a Messenger with sorrowfull tidings from their fellow brethren, that inhabited

habited the bankes of the River *Canecticо*, who having audience, informes them of the great insolency, and cruell murthers committed by a barbarous and bloudy people called *Peaquods*, upon the bodies of their indeared friends, these savage *Indians* lying to the South-west of the *Mattacusets*, were more warlike then their Neighbouring Nations, the *Narrowganzet* or *Niantick Indians*; although they exceeded them in number, also *Mawhiggins* (who were the best friends of the *English*, and a chiefe instrumentall meanes of their sitting down there) stood much in feare of these *Peaquods*, which were big, swollen with pride at this time; facing the *English* Fort built on the mouth of the River in their large *Cannowes*, with their Bowes and long Shafts, the *English* being then but weake in number and provision, were unable to manage the war against so numerous a company, being above thirty to one, yet their desires being beyond their meanes, they made some shot at them, forcing them to hast away faster then they willingly would. These *Indians* trusting in their great Troopes, having feasted their corps in a ravening manner, and leaving their fragments for their *Sqawes*, they sound an alarum with a full mouth, and lumbring voyce, and soone gather together without presse or pay, their quarrell being as antient as *Adams* time, propagated from that old enmity betweene the Seede of the Woman, and the Seed of the Serpent, who was the grand signor of this war in hand, and would very gladly have given them a large Commission, had not his owne power beene limited, neither could he animate them so much as to take off the gastly looke of that King of terror, yet however at his command they arme themselves: casting their quiver at their backs with Bowes ready bent, they troope up some of them, being extraordinarily armed with Guns, which they purchast from the *Dutch* (who had assuredly paid deare for this their courteous humour, not long since, had not some *English* Volunteers rescued them from the *Indians* hands) the most of them were armed also with a small Hatchet on a long handle, they had a small number of *Mawhawkes*, Hammers, which are made of stone, having a long pike on the one side, and a hole in the handle, which they tie about their wrists, they neede not provisions follow their Camp; because they are continually at home, but for their mats

to

to shelter them from Raine or Snow, the Woods are as well-come to them as their *Wigwams*, fire they can make in all places by chafing two sticks together. Their food is ready dreſt at all times, parching Indian Corne in their fire they pound it to meale, and with foure or five ſpoonfull of it caſt into their mouths, and a ſup or two of water, which they take up with a leafe of a Tree, this is their common repaſt, and indeed their chiefe *viaticum*. Thus furniſht for the war they troope away without any goodly equipage to effect, as they ſuppoſe, ſome great deſigne, but within ſome few Miles of the Towne of *Hartford*, they were diſcovered by one of the *Engliſh*, who having with him a good Horſe, haſtens away to give intelligence of their approach, and by the way meeting with foure or five perſons, hee adviſes them to haſte away with all ſpeed, for the *Peaquods* were at hand, the weaker Sex among them, being at this time not ſo credulous as they ſhould have been, began to diſpute the caſe with him, demanding what *Peaquods* they were, and queſtioning how they ſhould come there; The horſeman deeming it now no time for words, when the battell followed him ſo hard at the heeles, rod on his way, and ſoone after the ſudden approach of the *Indians* forced them with feare to Seale to the truth of this evill tidings, and ſome of them with their dearest bloud; three Woemen-kinde they caught, and carried away, but one of them being more fearfull of their cruell uſage, afterward then of the loſſe of her life at preſent, being borne away to the thickeſt of the company, reſiſted ſo ſtoutly with ſcratching and biting, that the *Indian*, exaſperated therewith, caſt her downe on the Earth, and beate out her braines with his Hatchet, the other two maids they led away and returned, their Commiſſion reaching no farther at preſent, having taken theſe two priſoners they did not offer to abuſe their perſons, as was verily deemed they would, queſtioned them with ſuch broken *Engliſh*, as ſome of them could ſpeak, to know whether they could make Gunpowder. Which when they underſtood they could not doe, their prize proved nothing ſo pretious a Pearle in their eyes as before; for ſeeing they exceeded not their own *Squawes* in Art, their owne thoughts informed them they would fall abundantly ſhort in induſtry, and as for beauty they eſteeme black beyond any colour.

Wherefore their *Sqawes* use that sinfull art of painting their Faces in the hollow of their Eyes and Nose, with a shining black, out of which their tip of their Nose appeares very deformed, and their cheeke bone, being of a lighter swart black, on which they have a blew crosse died very deepe.

This is the beauty esteemed by them, but yet their pride was much increased by this hostile Act of theirs, and the *English* were more and more contemned of them, notwithstanding the *Dutch*, who traded with these *Indians*, procured the Maides liberty againe.

CHAP. II.

Of the couragious resolutions, the Lord indued these his People withall, being invironed with many deepe distresses.

AFter this Message delivered, these brood of Travilers being almost *Non-plus't* in their grave and sollid Counsells; deem it now high time to follow their old way, of making their complaint to the supreame judge of all the World, by way of Petition, who they knew right well, stood not as an idle spectator beholding his peoples Ruth, and their Enemies rage; But as an Actor in all actions to bring to naught the desires of the wicked, but period to their power, divert their stroaks from his, to their own heads, bring glory to his Name, and good to his people from their most wicked malignity, having also the ordering of every weapon in its first produce, guiding every shaft that flies, leading each bullet to his place of setling, and Weapon to the wound it makes; yet he most righteous and holy in all his actions to this great Lord Peramount, had these poore afflicted people accesse through the intercession of their *Lord Christ*, whose worke (though very weake to performe) they were now about, wherefore casting themselves down at his feet in the sense of their owne unworthinesse, that desire him to doe his owne worke in them, and for them, that the Mountaines in the way of *Zerubbabel* may become a plaine, and then laying open the great straites they were in to him, who knew them far better then themselves, they had this answer returned them, which if men dare deny, the Lord from

Heaven

Heaven hath, and shall further witnesse it ; But before it be declared, let all men lay downe their interest they suppose they may have in procuring it, both *English* and others, that the glory of our *Lord Christ* may appeare in its splendor, to the danting of every proud heart, and for the perpetuall incouragement of all the Souldiers of *Christ*, even the meanest in his Armies: for the day of his high Power is come, yea; his appointed time to have mercy upon *Sion* is at hand, all you whose eyes of pity so see her in the dust, streame down with pear like drops of compassion, a little mixture of the unconceiveable joy for the glorious worke of *Christ*.

Now, now; I now in hand for the exalting of his glorious Kingdome, in preparing his Churches for himselfe, and with his own blessed hands wiping away the teares that trickel downe her cheekes, drying her dankish eyes, and hushing her sorrowfull sobs in his sweete bosome. This rightly believed, and meeting in the soule of any poore Christian, will make the narrow affections of his body too little to containe the present apprehensions of the Soule; And therefore wanting a *vacuum* to containe the strength of this new Wine, wonder not if it vent it selfe with swift thrilling teares from the most tender part of the vessell. And here the Author must needs intreate the charitable Reader to enlarge in the Closset of his own heart, for his folly hee confesses in medling so meanly with such waighty matters, being blinded by eager affection, hee lost the sight of his great inability to the worke. When hee first set Pen to Paper, as the Lord surrounded his chosen *Israel* with dangers deepe to make his miraculous deliverance famous throughout, and to the end of the World, so here behold the *Lord Christ*, having egged a small handfull of his people forth in a forlorne Wilderness, stripping them naked from all humane helps, plunging them in a gulph of miseries, that they may swim for their lives through the Ocean of his Mercies, and land themselves safe in the armes of his compassion.

CHAP. III.

Of the Lords great deliverance of his New England *People, from the flouds of Errors that were bursting in among them.*

AS for the great Mountaine of proud erronious judgement on your right hand, the prayer of Faith shall remove them, and cast them into the depth of the Sea, and for the strengthning of your faith herein; because the Lord will have you depend on him in the use of his meanes, not miracle, hee hath purposely pitcht out for this very worke, some of his most orthodox servants, and chiefe Champions of his truth, able through his mercy to weld that bright Weapon of his Word prepared by the spirit for this purpose, to bring to the block these Traytours to his truths one by one, and behead them before your eyes, and for this very end they are to gather together as one Man in a Synodicall way, with a decisive power to undoe all the cunning twisted knots of Satans Malignity to the truths of *Christ*, opening the Scriprures by the power of his spirit, cleering Scripture by Scripture, that nothing but the pure Word of God may take place, and that you may assuredly believe the Lord hath purposely called his Servants, and Souldiers to this place by his Providence to cut off this cursed spirit of Errours and Heresies, which hath but at first dog'd all Reformed Churches of *Christ*. There are for your further aid herein many more of these sincere Souldiers floating upon the great Ocean toward you, who will be with you before this Synod is set, that you may declare it in the Eares of all posterity, to be the very Finger of God in catching the proud in their owne craftinesse, who had hatch'e their devices, thus to cast all the Ministers of *Christ*, except some one or two, under this censure of being prejudiced against their persons, and for the little remnant to labour with flattery to blinde their eyes, that at least they might not be against them; Seeing they could not procure them to take their part, (to be sure when the grossenesse of their Errors were made known, they would not) by this meanes having their hopes exalted (in their owne apprehensions at least) to gaine the most of the people on their side.

The

The Lord casts them downe from the proud Pinacle of their Machiavilian Plot, by bringing in more men of courage unintersted: yea, unknown to most of their persons, but for their errors, as strong to confute them as any, and more fit to wipe off the filme from the eyes of some of their brethren, which these Eronists by their Syccophancy had clouded.

The time for the meeting of this Synod was to be in the seventh month following, commonly called *September*, the civill government well approving of their desires herein, were very willing to further them all they could, and in the meane time it was the worke of these valiant of the Lord, to search out, not for men and Womens persons, but their errors, which they gathered up from all parts, willing all that would or could defend them to use their best meanes, like as *Jehu* when he was to execute the judgements of the Lord upon *Ahabs* bloudy household, would have had his servants defend their Masters Children if they could, onely you must understand there was but 70. Sons, and here was 80. *Errors*, of which you shall further hear when the time comes.

CHAP. IV.

Of the abundant mercies of Christ in providing liberall supply for his New England *People, in regard of their outward man, Food, Rayment and all other necessaries and conveniencies.*

NOw for the hardships on the left hand, they had as good an answer as in the former; their *Christ* had not saved their lives from the raging Seas to slay them in the Wildernesse with Famine; your life is much more pretious in the eyes of the Lord then food, and your bodies then rayment: yea, the Lord of Heaven, who hath honoured you so far as to imploy you in this glorious worke of his, knowes you must have these things, and it was not you, deare hearts, that chose this place, but the Lord, as seeing it most fit to doe his worke in, knowing that had you met with a Rich Land filled with all plenty, your heart would have

have beene taken off this worke, which he must have done. But to strengthen your Faith in this point also, you shall see hee who commanded the Fruits to spring out of the Earth, when none were, can much more cause this corner of the Earth to be fruitfull to you, and this you shall attaine by meanes, although hee have caused the Foules of the Aire, and Grasse of the Field to depend upon him in a more immediate manner, yet you hath he taught to Sow, Reape, carry into Barnes, and Spin, and indeed herein the Lord hath answered his people abundantly to the wonder of all that see or hear of it; And that whereas at their first comming it was a rare matter for a man to have foure or five Acres of Corne, now many have four or five score, & to prevent men from Sacrificing to their Nets, the Lord hath taught them to labour with more ease: to great admiration also inlarg'd it, for it was with sore labour that on man could Plant, and tend foure Acres of *Indians* Graine, and now with two Oxen hee can Plant and tend 30. B sides the Lord hath of late altered the very course of the Heavens in the season of the weather, that all kinde of graine growes much better then heretofore; Insomuch that Marchandizing being stopped at present, they begin question, what to do with their Corne.

CHAP. V.

Of the wonderfull deliverance wrought by the Lord Christ, for his poore New England *Churches, in freing them from the fear of their Malignant adversaries, who forc't them to this Wildernesse.*

AND now to the third and great distresse, which lay behind them by reason of their back friends, the Lording Bishops, and other Malignant adversaries, being daily exasperated against them, and in especiall at this time by one *Morton*, who named himselfe the Host of *Merrimount*, who wanted not malice, could he possible have attained meanes to effect it; But the *Lord Christ* prevented both him and his Masters, whom with flattery he sought to please with scurrillous deriding the servants of *Christ*, to bring them into contempt, yet the Lord prevented all

all, and delivered this wretched fellow into his peoples hands againe after all this, who dealt as favourably with him as *David* did with *Shimmei*. Besides this, the evill usage that many of the beloved servants of Christ had from the hands of those in office at their departure, declared plainely, that there were some, who would willingly have pursued them to bring them under bondage againe, herein their answer was that they should stand still, and see the salvation of the Lord, who was now resolved to fight for them against his and their implacable enemies; although more mighty than they: and indeed all meanes of resistance in the hand of man being so small, that it could not possible bee discerned by any mortall eye; yet will the Lord worke by means and not by miracle; when the Lord called forth *Joshua* to fight with *Amaleck*, his *Moses* must be in the Mount at Prayers; seeing this answer deeply concernes the dearly beloved of our *Lord Christ* remaining in *England*, let them listen to the answer.

Also how came it to passe that the Lord put it into your hearts to set upon a Reformation, was it not by prayer attained? You are not excluded, although the Churches of Christ here are for the present in the Mount, and you in the Vally fighting, yet surely they had neede of helpe to hold up their hands, whereas the nereneſſe of the danger to you in the enemies overcoming, is a great motive to keepe up yours stedy, yet may you say rightly to the Churches of Christ here, as *Mordachy* to *Hester* the Queene, if you hold your peace deliverance shall come another way, and thinke not to escape, because you are in *New England*; Assuredly the Lord is doing great things, and waites for the prayers of his people that he may be gratious unto them, and verily the poore Churches of Christ heere cannot but take notice of the great workes the Lord hath done for you of late, which are famous throughout the whole World; And should they not take them as an answer of these weake prayers, they feare they should neglect to magnify his mercy toward you, and them: the noble acts of the Lord Christ, for the freedome of his people from that intolerable Prelaticall bondage, are almost miraculously committed to memory by the able servants of Christ, whom hee hath stirred up for that very end, yet must you not shut out the valiant souldiers of Christ (disciplin'd in this unwonted Wilder-

 neſſe)

nesse) from having share with you in the worke, yet no farther but that Christ may be all in all: who hath caused the *Midianites* to fight against *Midian*, till the true *Israelites* had gathered themselves together, hee it is that hath brought the counsells of the wicked to naught, hee it is that hath discovered the secret plottings of the King of *Assyria*, even in his Bed-chamber; Hee it is that hath declared himself to be with your mighty men of valour, and assuredly all you valiant Souldiers of Christ, both in one *England* and the other, the Lord hath shewed you as great signes and wonders for the strengthening of your faith, as was the wetting and drying of the fleece to *Gedeon*, onely beware of setting up an *Ephod* in the latter end; Let the Churches of Christ be set up according to his first institution, or you will make double worke, for all may see by what is done already, there is nothing too hard for him, hee will downe with all againe and againe, till his Kingdom alone be exalted, for the which all the *Israel* of God fight, wrastle, pray, and here you may see the servants of Christ fighting at 900 leagues distant.

Oh you proud Bishops, that would have all the World stoope to your Lordly power, the heathen Romans your predecessors, after they had banished *John* to the Isle of *Pathmos*, suffered him quietly to injoy the Revelation of *Jesus Christ* there; here is a people that have betaken themselves to a newfound World, distanced from you with the widest Ocean the World affords, and yet you grudge them the purity of Christs Ordinances there. No wonder then, nay wonder all the World at the sudden and unexpected downfall of these domineering Lords, who had Princes to protect them, armes to defend them, and almost three whole Kingdomes at their command; and no enemy of theirs in sight onely, there appeares a little cloud about the bignesse of a mans hand out of the *Westerne* Ocean, but the *Lord Christ* is in it, out of *Sion* the perfection of beauty hath God shined. Our God shall come, and shall not keepe silence, a Fire shall devour afore him, & mighty tempests shall be moved round about him. Now gather together you King-like Bishops, and make use of all the Kingly power you can, for the cloud is suddenly come up, he rode upon Cherub and did flie. And now let the Children of *Sion* rejoyce in their King, for the Lord hath pleasure in his people

people, hee will make the meeke glorious by deliverance ; And that the whole Earth may know it is the Lords owne worke, the Arch-prelate and his complices must begin to war with the *Scots*, and that implacably, the Prelates desire a *Parliament* thinking to establish iniquity by a Law, but the iniquity of the *Ammorites* is already full, and all your cunning counsells shall but contrive your owne destruction ; They remonstrant against all Acts of *Parliament* that passe without their Vote, and by this means wind out themselves for ever voting more, they devise how they may have such persons committed to prison as favour not their proceeding.

But the Lord turned their mischiefe they had conceived upon their own pates, and they themselves were sent to prison by halfe a score at a time ; And such was the unsavouryness of this seeming salt, that it was good for nothing, but to Lord it over others, their tyranny being taken out of their hands, they could not indure to be commanded by any ; And therefore unfit for the war which they stirred up, to recover the people againe under their bondage, yet such was the madnesse of some, that they loved their servitude so well as to fight for it ; but surely such had never rightly knowne the service of the *Lord Christ*, which is perfect freedome, from all such tyrannous yoaks, and verily just it is with the Lord to cause such to be servants unto *Shishak*, that they may know the service of the Lord, and the service of the Kingdomes of the Country. But however an Army is raised to defend their Lordly dignity ; Let the Saints be joyfull with glory, let the high Acts of God be in their mouths, and a two edged Sword in their hands, to bind their Kings in chaines, and their Nobles in fetters of Iron, the Charets of the Lord are twenty thousand thousands of Angells, the Lord is among them as in *Sinai*, Kings of Armies did flee apace ; and now you that have borne such a wicked spirit of malignity against the people of Christ, can your hearts indure, and your hands wax strong in the day that he shall have to doe with you ? Oh you proud Prelates that boast so much of your taking the Kings part, miserable partakers are you ; in stead of obeying him, you have caused him to obey you, its writ in such great capitall letters that a child may read it : what was the cause of the first raising war against

the *Scots* which occasioned the *Parliament*, when you saw they would not further the war as you would have them, they were soone traytors in your account, and prosecuted against with Army after army, and was not all this to make the Scots receive your Injunctions, a very fayer bottom to build a bloudy war upon, that the Prelatticall power might Lord it in *Scotland*, as they of a long time had done in *England*: it was your *Pithagorian* Phylosophy that caused the King to loose his Life, by perswading him his Kingly power lived in your Lordly dignity, as a thing subordinate unto it, and he so deeply taken with this conceit, that it cost the lives of many thousands more then ever hee, or his Father would doe for saving or recovering the Pallatine Country.

Experience hath taught the savage *Indians*, among whom we live, that they may and doe daily bring Wolves to be tame, but they cannot breake them of their ravening nature, and I would your Royalist would learne of them to know, that as your Lord Bishops, Deanes, Prebends, &c. be right whelps of the *Roman* litter, so let them be never so well tam'd, they will retaine their nature still, to Lord it over all kinde of Civill Government; But woe and alasse that ever any of our Countrymen should be so blind, that after they are delivered from so great a bondage by such *Wonder Working Providence of the Lord Christ*; Ever and anon to indeavour to make a Captaine over them, that they may returne againe into *Egypt*, as appeares by the plots which have beene discovered, and broken in pieces by the right hand of the most high, and yet for all this their's such a hankering after somewhat of the Prelaticall greatnesse; by the *English* Clergy, and the *Scottish* Classis, that many of them could afford to raise another war for it. But brethren I beseech you be more wiser, lest when you are growne hot in your quarrell, the Malignant party come and set you agreed, establish peace in righteousnesse, and let the word be your rule, heare one another with meekenesse, and the Lord will cleare up the whole truth unto you in his due time; And now to declare plainly how far the Lord hath beene pleased to make use of any of his people in these *Westerne* parts, about this Worke, for to say truth they have done nothing in holes and corners, but their workes are obvious to all the World: if

the

the sufferings of the Saints be pretious in the eyes of Christ, so as to provoke him in displeasure to cut off the occasioners thereof, then thus his poore unworthy people here have had a great stroake in the downfall of their adversaries to the present possessed truths of Christ, for this wilderness worke, hath not beene carried on without sighthings that have come before him, and Groanes that have entred his eares, and Teares treasured up in his bottles (againe) if the ardent and strong affections of the people of God, for his glorious comming to advance his Kingdome in the splendor, and purity of his Gospell, as co cry with the holy Prophet, *Oh that he would breake the Heavens and come down*; be regarded of the *Lord Christ*, so as to remove with his mighty power the very Mountaines out of the way, and hurle them into the deepe; Then hath these weake wormes instrumentally had a share in the great desolation the *Lord Christ* hath wrought. For this History will plainely declare with what zeale and deepe affection, and unresistable resolutions these Pilgrim people have endeavoured the gathering together his Saints, for the edifying the Body of Christ, that he may raign both Lord and King for ever.

Yet againe, if the prayers of the faithfull people of God availe any thing for the accomplishment of his promises, in the destruction of Antichrist, for the subduing of Armies without striking one stroake; Then assuredly these *Jacobites* have wrestled with the Lord, not onely (with that good King *Jehoshaphat*) proclaiming one Fast, but many Fasts, they, their Wives and little ones standing before the Lord; Oh our God wilt thou not judge them for we have no might, &c. Lastly, if the Lord himselfe have roared from *Sion*, (as in the dayes of the Prophet *Amos*) so from his Churches in *New England*, by a great and terrible Earthquake (which happened much about the time the Lordly Prelates were preparing their injunctions for *Scotland*) taking rise from the West, it made its progresse to the Eastward, causing the Earth to rise up and downe like the waves of the Sea; having the same effect on the Sea also, causing the Ships that lay in the Harbor to quake, the which, at that very time was said to be a signe from the Lord to his Churches, that he was purposed to shake the Kingdomes of *Europes* Earth, and now by his pro-

videnceſ brought to paſſe, all men may reade as much and more: as if he ſhould have ſaid to theſe his ſcattered people (yet now againe united in Church Covenant) the Lord is now gathering together his Armies, and that your faith may be ſtrengthened, you ſhall feele and heare the ſhakings of the Earth by the might of his power: yea, the Sea alſo, to ſhew he will ordaine Armies both by Sea and Land to make *Babilon* deſolate; Things thus concurring as an immediate anſwer of the Lord to his peoples prayers and endeavours, cauſed ſome of this little handfull with reſolute courage and boldneſſe to returne againe to their native Land, that they might (the Lord accepting and aſſiſting them in their endeavours) be helpfull in advancing the Kingdome of Chriſt, and caſting down every ſtrong houſe of ſinne and Satan. It matters not indeed who be the inſtruments, if with the eye of faith theſe that go forth to fight the Lords Battailes, can but ſee and heare the Lord going out before them againſt their enemies, with a ſound in the tops of the Mulbery Trees. Here are aſſuredly evident ſignes that the *Lord Chriſt* is gone forth for his peoples deliverance, and now Frogs, Flies, Lice or Duſt, ſhall ſerve to deſtroy thoſe will yet hold his people in bondage, notwithſtanding the Lord will honour ſuch as hee hath made ſtrong for himſelfe; And therefore hee cauſeth the worthies in *Davids* time to be recorded, and it is the duty of Gods people to incourage one another in the worke of the Lord, then let all whoſe hearts are upright for the Lord, ponder well his goings in his Sanctuary, that their hands may be ſtrengthened in the work they goe about, onely be ſtrong and of a good courage.

CHAP. VI.

Of the gratious goodneſſe of the Lord Chriſt, in ſaving his New-England *people, from the hand of the barbarous* Indians.

LAſtly, for the frontiſpiece of their preſent diſtreſſe, namely the Indian war, they with much meekneſſe and great deliberation, wiſely contrived how they might beſt helpe their fellow brethren; hereupon they reſolved to ſend a ſolemne Embaſſage

passage to old *Cannonicus*, chiefe Sachem of the narrow Ganset *Indians*, who being then well stricken in yeares had caused his Nephew *Miantinemo* to take the Government upon him, who was a very sterne man, and of a great stature, of a cruell nature, causing all his Nobility and such as were his attendance to tremble at his speech, the people under his Government were very numerous, besides the *Niantick Indians*, whose Prince was of neare aliance unto him; They were able to set forth, as was then supposed 30000. fighting men, the *English* sought by all meanes to keepe these at least from confederating with the *Pequods*, and understanding by intelligence, that the *Pequots* would send to them for that end, endeavoured to prevent them. Fit and able men being chosen by the *English*, they hast them to *Cannonicus* Court, which was about fourescore miles from *Boston*.

The Indian King hearing of their comming, gathered together his chiefe Counsellors, and a great number of his Subjects to give them entertainment, resolving as then that the young King should receive their message, yet in his hearing, they arriving, were entertain'd royally, with respect to the Indian manner. Boil'd Chesnuts is their White-bread, which are very sweet, as if they were mixt with Sugar; and because they would be extraordinary in their feasting, they strive for variety after the English manner, boyling Puddings made of beaten corne, putting therein great store of black berryes, somewhat like Currants. They having thus nobly feasted them, afterward give them Audience, in a State-house, round, about fifty foot wide, made of long poles stuck in the ground, like your Summer-houses in *England*, and covered round about, and on the top with Mats, save a small place in the middle of the Roofe, to give light, and let out the smoke.

In this place sate their *Sachim*, with very great attendance; the English comming to deliver their Message, to manifest the greater state, the Indian *Sachim* lay along upon the ground, on a Mat, and his Nobility sate on the ground, with their legs doubled up, their knees touching their chin: with much sober gravity they attend the Interpreters speech. It was matter of much wonderment to the English, to see how solidly and wisely these savage people did consider of the weighty undertaking of a War; especially

cially old *Canonicus*, who was very discreet in his answers. The young Sachem was indeed of a more lofty spirit, which wrought his ruine, as you may heare, after the decease of the old King. But at this time his answer was, that he did willingly embrace peace with the English, considering right well, that although their number was but small in comparison of his people, and that they were but strangers to the Woods, Swamps, and advantagious places of this Wilderness, yet withall he knew the English were advantaged by their weapons of War, and especially their Guns, which were of great terror to his people, and also he had heard they came of a more populous Nation by far than all the Indians were, could they be joyn'd together. Also on the other hand, with mature deliberation, he was well advised of the Peaquods cruell disposition and aptnesse to make War, as also their neere neighbourhood to his people, who though they were more numerous, yet were they withall more effeminate, and lesse able to defend themselves from the sudden incursions of the *Peaquods*, should they fall out with them. Hereupon hee demes it most conducing to his owne, and his peoples safety to direct his course in a middle way, holding amity with both. The *English* returne home, having gained the old Kings favour so farre, as rather to favour them then the *Pequods*, who perceiving their Neighbouring *English* had sent forth aid to the *Mattacusets* government, thought it high time to seeke the winning all the *Indians* they could on their side, and among others they make their addresse to old *Cannonicus*, who, insteed of taking part with them, labours all he can to hush the War in hand, laying before them the sad effects of War; sometimes proving sad and mournfull to the very Victors themselves, but alwayes to the vanquished, and withall tells them what potent enemies they had to contend with, whose very weapons and Armor were matter of terror, setting their persons a side; as also that English man was no much hoggery yet, and therefore they might soone appease them, by delivering into their hands those persons that had beene the death of any of them, which were much better than that the whole Nation should perish.

For the present the *Pequods* seemed to be inclinable to the old *Sachims* counsell, but being returned home againe among their rude

rude multitude (the chief place of cowardly boasting) they soon change their minde; yet the old *Sachim* sends the *English* word he had wrought with them, and in very deed, the English had rather make choice of Peace then Warre, provided it may stand with Truth and Righteousnesse: and therefore send forth a band of Souldiers, who arriving in the *Peaquod* Country, address themselves to have a Treaty with them about delivering up the murtherers; they making shew of willingness so to doe, bade them abide awhile and they would bring them, and in the mean time they were conversant among the Souldiers, and viewing their Armie, pointed to divers places where they could hit them with their Arrowes for all their Corslets. But their greatest number lying the while at the other side of a great hill, and anon appearing on the top of the hill, in sight of the English: those Indians that were among the English withdrawing toward them; no sooner were they come to their Companions, but all of a suddaine they gave a great shout, and shewed the English a fair pair of heeles, who seeing it, would not availe any thing to follow them (they being farre swifter of foot than the English) made their returne home againe.

This bootlesse voyage incouraged the Indians very much, who insulted over them at the fort, boasting of this their deluding them, and withall, they blasphemed the Lord saying, Englishmans God was all one Flye, and that English man was all one Sqawe, and themselves all one Moor-hawks. Thus by their horrible pride they fitted themselves for destruction. The English hearing this report, were now full assured that the Lord would deliver them into their hands to execute his righteous judgement upon these blasphemous murtherers; and therefore raised fresh Souldiers for the warre, to the number of fourscore, or thereabout, out of the severall towns in the *Matachusets* and although they were but in their beginnings, yet the Lord, who fore-intended their work, provided for all their wants, and indeed it was much that they had any bisket to carry with them in these times of scarcity, or any vessels to transport their men and ammunition: yet all was provided by the gracious hand of the most high; and the Souldiers, many of them, not onely armed with outward weapons, and armour of defence, but filled with

a spirit of courage and magnanimity to resist, not onely men, but Devils; for surely he was more then ordinaryly present with this Indian army, as the sequell will shew: as also for their further incouragement, the reverend and zealously affected servant of Christ, Mr. *John Wilson*, went with the army, who had treasured up heaps of the experimentall goodnesse of God towards his people. Having formerly passed through perils by Sea, perils by Land, perils among false brethren, &c. he followed the warre purposely to sound an alarum before the Lord with his silver trumpet, that his people might be remembred before him: the Souldiers ariving in safety at the towne of *Hartford*, where they were encouraged by the reverend Ministers there, with some such speech as followes.

Fellow-Souldiers, Country-men, and Companions in this wilderness-works, Who are gathered together this day by the inevitable providence of the great Jehovah, *not in a tumultuous manner hurried on by the floating fancy of every high hot headed braine, whose actions prove abortive, or if any fruit brought forth, it hath beene rape, theft, and murther, things inconsisting with natures light, then much lesse with a Souldiers valour; but you, my deare hearts, purposely pickt out by the godly grave Fathers of this government, that your prowesse may carry on the work, Where there Justice in her righteous course is obstructed, you need not question your authority to execute those whom God the righteous Judge of all the world, hath condemned for blaspheming his sacred Majesty, and murthering his Servants: every common Souldier among you is now installed a Magistrate; then shew your selves men of courage: I would not draw low the height of your enemies hatred against you, and so debase your valour. This you may expect, their swelling pride hath laid the foundation of large conceptions against you, and all the people of Christ in this wilderness, even as wide as* Babels *bottome. But, my brave Souldiers, it hath mounted already to the clouds, and therefore it is ripe for confusion; also their crueltie is famously knowne, yet all true-bred Souldiers reserve this as a common maxime, cruelty and cowardize are unseparable companions; and in briefe, there is nothing wanting on your enemies part, that may deprive you of a compleat victory, onely their nimblenes of foot, and the unaccessible swamps and nut-tree woods, forth of which your small numbers may in-*

intice, and industry compell them. And now to you I put the question, who would not fight in such a cause with an agile spirit, and undaunted boldnesse? yet if you look for further encouragement, I have it for you; riches and honour are the next to a good cause eyed by every Souldier, to maintain your owne, and spoile your enemies of theirs; although gold and silver be wanting to either of you, yet have you that to maintaine which is farre more precious, the lives, libertyes, and new purchased freedomes, priviledges, and immunities of the indeared servants of our Lord Christ Jesus, and of your second selves, even your affectionated bosome-mates, together with the chiefe pledges of your love, the comforting contents of harmlesse pratling and smiling babes: and in a word, all the riches of that goodnesse and mercy that attends the people of God in the injoyment of Christ, in his Ordinances, even in this life; and as for honour, David *was not to be blamed for enquiring after it, as a due recompence of that true valour the Lord had bestowed on him: aad now the Lord hath prepared this honour for you, oh you couragious Souldiers of his, to execute vengeance upon the heathen, and correction among the people, to binde their Kings in chaines, and Nobles in fetters of Iron, that they may execute upon them the judgements that are written! this honour shall be to all his Saints, but some of you may suppose deaths stroke may cut you short of this: let every faithfull Souldier of Christ Jesus know, that the cause why some of his indeared Servants are taken away by death in a just warre (as this assuredly is) it is not because they should fall short of the honours accompanying, such noble designes, but rather because earths honours are two scant for them, and therefore the everlasting Crown must be set upon their heads forthwith, then march on with a cheerfull Christian courage in the strength of the Lord, and the power of his might, who will forthwith inclose your enemies in your hands, make their multitudes fall under your warlike weapons, and your feet shall soon be set on their proud necks.*

After the Ministers of Christ had, through the grace that was given them, exhorted and encouraged these Souldiers appointed for the work, they being provided with certaine Indian guides, who with the close of the day brought them to a small river, where they could perceive many persons had been dressing of fish; upon the sight thereof, the Indian guides concluded they

were now a feasting it at their fort, which was hard at hand; the English calling a Councill of warre, being directed by the specialleſt providence of the moſt high God, they concluded to ſtorm the fort a little before break of day; at whith time they ſuppoſed the Indians being up late in their jolly feasting, would bee in their deepeſt ſleepe; and ſurely ſo it was, for they now ſlept their laſt: the Engliſh keeping themſelves as covertly as they could, approached the fort at the time appointed, which was builded of whole Trees ſet in the ground faſt, and ſtanding up an end about twelve foot high, very large, having pitcht their Wigwams within it, the entrance being on two ſides, with intricate Meanders to enter. The chiefe Leaders of the Engliſh made ſome little ſtand before they offered to enter, but yet boldly they ruſhed on, and found the paſſages guarded at each place with an Indian Bow-man, ready on the ſtring, they ſoone let fly, and wounded the formoſt of the Engliſh in the ſhoulder, yet having diſpatch'd the Porters, they found the winding way in without a Guide, where they ſoone placed themſelves round the Wigwams, and according to direction they made their firſt ſhot with the muzzle of their Muskets downe to the ground, knowing the Indian manner is to lie on the ground to ſleep, from which they being in this terrible manner awakened, unleſſe it were ſuch as were ſlaine with the ſhot.

After this ſome of the *Engliſh* entred the Wigwams, where they received ſome ſhot with their Arrowes, yet catching up the fire-brands, they began to fire them, and others of the Engliſh Soulders with powder, did the ſame: the day now began to break; the Lord intending to have theſe murtherers know he would looke out of the cloudy pillar upon them: and now theſe women and children ſet up a terrible out-cry; the men were ſmitten down, and ſlaine, as they came forth with a great ſlaughter; the *Sqawes* crying out, oh much winn it Engliſh-man, who moved with pitty toward them, ſaved their lives: and hereupon ſome young youth cryed, I ſquaw, I ſquaw, thinking to finde the like mercy. There were ſome of theſe Indians, as is reported, whoſe bodyes were not to be pierced by their ſharp rapiers or ſwords of a long time, which made ſome

of

of the Souldiers think the Devil was in them, for there were ſome *Powwowes* among them, which work ſtrange things, with the help of Satan. But this was very remarkable, one of them being wounded to death, and thruſt thorow the neck with a halbert; yet after all, lying groaning upon the ground, he caught the halberts ſpeare in his hand, and wound it quite round. After the Engliſh were thus poſſeſſed of this firſt victory, they ſent their priſoners to the pinnaces, and proſecute the warre in hand, to the next Battalia of the Indians, which lay on a hill about two miles diſtant, and indeed their ſtouteſt Souldiers were at this place, and not yet come to the fort; the Engliſh being weary with their night worke, and wanting ſuch refreſhing as the preſent worke required, began to grow faint, yet having obtained one victory, they were very deſirous of another: and further, they knew right-well, till this curſed crew were utterly rooted out, they ſhould never be at peace; therefore they marched on toward them. Now aſſuredly, had the Indians knowne how much weakned our Souldiers were at preſent, they might have born them downe with their multitude, they being very ſtrong and agile of body, had they come to handy-gripes; but the Lord (who would have his people know their work was his, and he onely muſt order their Counſels, and war-like work for them) did bring them timely ſupply from the veſſels, and alſo gave them a ſecond victory, wherein they ſlew many more of their enemies, the reſidue flying into a very thick ſwamp, being unacceſſible, by reaſon of the boggy holes of water, and thick buſhes; the Engliſh drawing up their company beleagered the ſwamp, and the Indians in the mean time skulking up and down, and as they ſaw opportunity they made ſhot with their Arrowes at the Engliſh, and then ſuddainly they would fall flat along in the water to defend themſelves from the retalliation of the Souldiers Muskets. This laſted not long, for our Engliſh being but a ſmall number, had parted themſelves far aſunder, but by the providence of the moſt high God, ſome of them ſpyed an Indian with a kettle at his back going more inwardly into the ſwamp, by which they perceived there was ſome place of firm land in the midſt thereof, which cauſed them to make way for the paſſage

of their Souldiers, which brought this warre to a period: For although many got away, yet were they no such considerable number as ever to raise warre any more; the slaine or wounded of the English were (through the mercy of Christ) but a few: One of them being shot through the body, neere about the breast, regarding it not till of a long time after, which caused the bloud to dry and thicken on eitheir end of the arrow so that it could not be drawne forth his body without great difficulty and much paine, yet did he scape his life, and the wound healed. Thus the Lord was pleased to assist his people in this warre, and deliver them out of the Indians hands, who were very lusty proper men of their hands, most of them, as may appear by one passage which I shall here relate: thus it came to passe, As the Souldiers were uppon their march, close by a great thicket, where no eye could penetrate farre, as it often falls out in such wearisom wayes, where neither men nor beast have beaten out a path; some Souldiers lingering behinde their fellowes, two Indians watching their opportunity, much like a hungry hauke, when they supposed the last man was come up, who kept a double double double distance in his march, they sudden and swiftly snatched him up in their tallens, hoising him upon their shoulders, ran into the swamp with him; the Souldier unwilling to be made a Pope by being borne on mens shoulders, strove with them all he could to free himselfe from their hands; but, like a carefull Commander, one Captaine *Davenport*, then Lieutenant of this company, being diligent in his place to bring up the reare, coming up with them, followed with speed into the swamp after him, having a very severe cutlace tyed to his wrist, and being well able to make it bite sore when he set it on, resolving to make it fall foul on the Indians bones, he soone overtook them, but was prevented by the buckler they held up from hitting them, which was the man they had taken: It was matter of much wonder to see with what dexterity they hurled the poore Souldier about, as if they had been handling a *Lacedæmonian* shield, so that the nimble Captaine *Davenport* could not, of a long time, fasten one stroke upon them; yet, at last, dying their tawny skin into a crimson colour, they cast downe their prey, and hasted thorow the thickets for their lives. The Souldier thus redeemed, had no such hard

hard usage, but that he is alive, as I suppose, at this very day: The Lord in mercy toward his poore Churches having thus destroyed these bloudy barbarous Indians, he returnes his people in safety to their vessels, where they take account of their prisoners: the *Squawes* and some young youths they brought home with them, and finding the men to be deeply guilty of the crimes they undertooke the warre for, they brought away onely their heads as a token of their victory. By this means the Lord strook a trembling terror into all the Indians round about, even to this very day.

CHAP. VII.

Of the first Synod holden in New England, *whereby the Lord in his mercy did more plainly discover his ancient truths, and confute those cursed errors that ordinarily dogg the reforming Churches of CHRIST.*

THe Lord Christ deeming it most expedient for his people to adde some farther help to assist them in cutting downe those cursed errors (that were the next dangerous difficulty they were to meet with) sends in the Reverend and bright shining light Mr. *Davenport*, and the cheerfull, grave, and gracious Soldier of his, Mr. *Allen*, as also Mr. *Thompson*, Mr. *Browne*, Mr. *Fish*, with divers other of the faithfull servants of Christ, the much honoured Mr. *Eaton* and Mr. *Hopkins*: and now the time being come, the Synod sate at *Cambridge*, where was present about 25. Reverend and godly Ministers of Christ, besides many other graciously-eminent servants of his. A Catalogue of the severall Errors scattered about the Countrey was there produced, to the number of 80. and liberty given to any man to dispute *pro* or *con*, and none to be charged to be of that opinion he disputed for, unlesse he should declare himselfe so to be. The Weapons these Souldiers of Christ warred with, was the Sword of the Spirit, even the Word of God, together with earnest prayer to the God of all Truth, that he would open his truths unto them. The clearing of the true sense and meaning of any place of Scripture, it was done by Scripture, for they so discerned by the grace of God

that

that was given them, that the whole Scripture must be attended unto. Foure sorts of persons I could with a good will have paid their passage out, and home againe to *England*, that they might have been present at this Synod, so that they would have reported the truth of all the passages thereof to their own Colledges at their return. The first is the Prelates, who both in Theorie and Practice might have made their owne Eyes Judges in the case, Whether would prevaile most, (to the suppressing of Error, and advancing of Unity in the true worship of God) either their commanding power backt with the subordinate sword of Princes, or the Word of God cleered up by the faithfull labour and indefatigable pains of the sincere servants of the Lord Christ, and mightily declared through the demonstration of his blessed Spirit. This well waighed, may (through the Lords blessing) stop the yet running fancie in the brains of many, that their Lordly power is the onely means of suppressing Error.

Secondly, the Godly and Reverend Presbyterian Party, who, had they made their eye-witnesses of this worke, they had assuredly saved themselves much labour, which I dare presume they would have spent worthily otherwayes, then in writing so many books to prove the Congregationall or Independant Churches to be the sluce, through which so many flouds of Error flow in: nay, my deare and reverend brethren, might not so much work of yours in writing, and ours in answering, have been a meanes to have stopt the height of this overflowing floud? and through the Lords assisting have setled Peace and Truth in a great measure throughout the three Nations.

Thirdly, those who with their new stratagems have brought in so much old error; for although they had a party here, yet verily they durst not bring their New Light to the Old Word, for feat it would prove but Old Darknesse, (as indeed they doe.) But here might they have seene the Ministers of Christ (who were so experienced in the Scripture, that some of them could tell you the place, both Chapter and Verse, of most sentences of Scripture could be named unto them) with Scriptures light, cleering up the truths of Christ clouded by any of these Errors and Heresies, as had not been done for many Ages before: and verily this great work of Christ must not be lightly over-past, the Author of this

History

Hiſtory paſſeth not for the ſhrewd cenſures of men: nor, can it be any matter of diſparagement to the reverend and highly honoured in Chriſt, remaining in *England*, that their fellow brethren have done ſo worthily here? it is well knowne to all our Engliſh Nation, that the moſt able preaching Miniſters of Chriſt were moſt purſued by the lording Clergy, and thoſe that have ſpent all their dayes, even from a child, in ſearching the Scriptures, the Lord Chriſt preparing them by his bleſſed ſpirit for this very work. Beſides, their continued practice in ſtudying and preaching the wayes of truth; and laſtly, their meeting with the oppoſition of ſo many crafty, cloſe couched errors, whoſe firſt foundation was laid cheke by joule with the moſt glorious, heavenly, and bleſſed truths, to dazle the eyes of the beholders, and ſtrike terrour into the hearts of thoſe ſhould lift up their hands againſt them, for feare they ſhould miſſe them, and hit their ſtroke upon the bleſſed truth; and alſo to bring up a ſlanderous and evil report on all the able Orthodox Miniſters of Chriſt that withſtand them, perſwading men they withſtand the holy, heavenly, and bleſſed truth, which they have lodged there, which this Synod did with ſtrong & undenyable arguments fetch from Scripture, to overthrow and pluck up by the roots, all thoſe Errors, which you have heard mentioned in the former Book, the which they divided for the more full anſwering of them. Among all thoſe valiant Champions of the Truth whom you have heard named, to ſome ſix, ſome five, ſome foure, &c. it had aſſuredly been worth the work to have related the particular manner of putting to the ſword every one of them: but beſides the length of the diſcourſe, there muſt have been a more able Penman: but however they were ſo put to death, that they never have ſtood up in a living manner among us ſince, but ſometimes like Wizards to peepe and mutter out of ground, fit for ſuch people to reſort unto, as will goe from the living to the dead. But bleſſed be the Lord Chriſt, who girded his people with ſtrength againſt this day of battaile, and cauſed the Heavens to cleere up againe in New-England, after theſe foggy dayes.

The fourth and laſt ſort of perſons, whoſe preſence I could moſt of all the other three former have deſired was, thoſe whoſe diſeaſe lay as chiefly in deſpiſing all Phyſitians, and that upon this

ground for one, because some for filthy lucre sake have nourisht Diseases rather then cured them. Many pamphlets have come from our Countreymen of late, to this purpose, namely, scurrilously to deride all kind of Scholarship, Presbytery, and Synods. Experience hath taught Gods people here, that such are troubled with some sinfull opinion of their owne, that they would not have touched; but had they been at this Synod, they must, *per force*, have learned better language, or their speech and their knowledge would fall foule one of the other; here might they have beheld the humility of the most learned of these servants of Christ, condemning the high conceitednesse of their ignorance, and then also the framing of Arguments in a Schollar-like way, did (the Lord assisting) cleare up the truths of Christ more to the meanest capacity in one hour, then could be clouded again in seaven yeare by the new notion of any such as boast so much of their unlettered knowledge, diversity of languages, although a correcting hand of God upon the whole world, when they joyned together in that proud Edifice: yet now is it blest of God, to retaine the purity of the Scriptures; if any man should goe about to corrupt them in one language, they should remain pure in another; and assuredly, the Lord intending to have the wayes of the Gospel of Christ to be made more manifest at this time, then formerly, not by tradition of our forefathers, or by mans reason, but by the revealed will of God in the holy Scripture, did accordingly prepare Instruments for this work, earthen vessels, men subject to like infirmities with ourselves; sorry men, and carrying about with them a body of sinne and death, men subject to erre: yet these did the Lord Christ cause to be train'd up in Learning, and tutor'd at the Universities, and that very young, some of them, as the revererend Mr. *John Cotten* at 13. yeares of age. The mighty power of God sanctifyed and ordained them for this work, and made them a defenced city, an iron pillar, a wall of brass against all the opposers of his truth; and now coupled them together in this Synod, to draw in Christs yoke, and warre with the weapons he had furnished them withall, and cause the blessed truths of Christ to shine forth in their splendour and glory, farre more after the dispersing of this smoak, which of a long time hath filled the Temple, and hinde-

red

red the entring in of those great number of Converts, which shall flow in at the fall of all antichristian Errors; and verily as the Lord Christ had called forth this little handful to be a model of his glorious work, intended thoughout the whole world, so chiefly in this suppressing of Errours, Sects, and Heresies by the blessed word of his truth, causing his servants in this Synod, mutually to agree; and by his gracious providence, break in pieces a contrived plot of some, who, by mis-reports, insinuating jealousies, and crafty carriage of matters to the wrong mark, with a writing of thrice twenty strong, would have drawne away one of the valiant Souldiers of Christ from this worthy worke, who both then, and since, hath been very helpfull to cast downe many a strong fort erected by the Sectaries; but the Lord Christ would not suffer this blow to be given, intending all people (by way of restitution) for their slanderous reports, cast upon his *New England* Churches (as being the inlet to Errours) shall honour them with this victorious conquest, given them by Christ herein; yet willing they would, their brethren in *England* might win the prize by out-stripping them, more abundantly in length, bredth and height, which the same God is able to performe, that hath been thus abundantly good to us.

About this time the Churches of Christ began to be diligent in their duty, and the civil government in looking after such as were like to disturb the peace of this new erected government; some persons being so hot headed for maintaining of these sinfull opinions, that they feared breach of peace, even among the Members of the superiour Court, but the Lord blessing them with agreement to prevent the wofull effects of civill broyles; those in place of government caused certain persons to be disarmed in the severall Townes, as in the Towne of *Boston*, to the number of 58. in the Towne of *Salem* 6. in the Towne of *Newbery* 3. in the Towne of *Roxbury* 5. in the Towne of *Ipswitch* 2. and *Charles* Towne 2. others there were, that through the help of the faithfull servants of Christ, came to see how they had beene misled, and by the power of Christ in his Word, returned againe with an acknowledgement of their sinne; but others there were, who remained obstinate, to the disturbing of the civill power, and were banished,

ſhed, of whom you ſhall heare farther hereafter. Some of the Churches of Chriſt being more indulgent, waited long ere they fell upon the work: and here you muſt tak notice, that the Synod, Civil Government, and the Churches of Chriſt, kept their proper place, each moving in their own ſphear, and acting by their own light, or rather by the revelation of Jeſus Chriſt, witneſſed by his Word and Spirit, yet not refuſing the help of each other (as ſome would willingly have it) ſome of the Churches proſecuting the Rule of Chriſt againſt their hereticall Members, were forced to proceed to excommunication of them, who when they ſaw whereto it would come, they would have prevented it with lying, but the Lord diſcovered it; and ſo they were juſtly ſeparated from the Churches of Chriſt for lying: which being done, they fell to their old trade againe.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the planting the fourth Colonie of New-Englands godly Government, called New-Haven.

THe Lord Chriſt having now in his great mercy taken out of the way theſe mountains that ſeemed in the eye of Man to block up his Churches further proceedings, they had now leiſure to welcome the living ſtones that the Lord was pleaſed to adde unto this building, and with thankfull acknowledgment to give him of his owne for his mercyes multitude, whoſe was the work in planting, not onely more Churches, but another Coſony alſo; for the honoured Mr, *Eaton* being accompanied with many worthy perſons of note, whom the Lord had furniſhed with ſtore of ſubſtance for this wilderneſſe-work, although they would willingly have made their abode under the government of the Mattachuſets; yet could they finde no place upon the Sea-coaſts for their ſettling: the Lord intending to enlarge his peoples border, cauſed them, after much ſearch, to take up a place ſomewhat more ſouthwardly, neare the ſhalles of *Cape-cod*, where they had very flatt water; yet being entred in, they found a commodious harbour for ſhipping, and a fit place to erect a

Towne

Towne, which they built in very little time, with very faire houses, and compleat streets; but in a little time they overstockt it with Chattell, although many of them did follow merchandizing, and Maritime affairs, but their remotenesse from the Mattachusets Bay, where the chiefe traffique lay, hindred them much. Here did these godly and sincere servants of Christ, according to the rule of the Word, gather into Church Estate, and called to the office of a Pastor the reverend, judicious, and godly Mr, *John Davenport*, of whom the Author is bold to say as followeth:

WHen Men and Devils 'gainst Christs flock conspire,
For them prepar'd a deadly trapping net;
Then Christ to make all men his work admire,
Davenport, *he doth thee from thy Country fet*
To sit in Synod, and his folk assist:
The filthy vomit of Hels Dragon, deepe
In earths womb drawn, blest they this poyson mist,
And blest the meanes doth us from error keep.
Thy grave advice and arguments of strength
Did much prevaile, the Erronist confound.
Well hast thou warr'd, Christ drawes thy dayes in length,
That thou in learn'd experience maist abound:
What though thou leave a city stor'd with pleasure,
Spend thy prime dayes in heathen desart land,
Thy joy's in Christ, and not in earthly treasure,
Davenport *rejoice, Christs Kngdome is at hand;*
Didst ever deem to see such glorious dayes?
Though thou decrease with age and earths content,
Thou live'st in Christ, needs then must thy joy raise;
His Kingdome's thine, and that can ne'r be spent.

This Church and Town soon procur'd some Sisters to take part with her, and among them they erected a godly and peaceable Government, and called their frontier towne *New-haven*, of which the Government is denominated, being inhabited by many men eminent in gifts for the populating thereof, and managing of affaires both by Sea and Land; they have had some shipping

built there, but by the sad losse of Mr. *Lambertons* ship and goods also, they were much disheartned, but the much honoured Mr. *Eaton* remaines with them to this very day.

THou noble thus, Theophilus, *before great Kings to stand,*
More noble far, for Christ his war thou leav'st thy native land;
With thy rich store thou cam'st on shore Christs Churches to assist;
What if it wast? thou purchast hast that Pearl that most have mist,
Nay rather he hath purchast thee, and whatsoever thou hast,
With graces store to govern o're his people, he thee plac't.
Our State affaires thy will repaires, assistant thou hast bin
Firm league to make, for Gospels sake, four Colonyes within; (bred,
With Sweads, French, Dutch, and Indians much, Gods peoples peace this
Then Eaton *aye, remember may the Child that's yet unfed.*

This government of *New-haven*, although the younger Sister of the foure yet was she as beautiful as any of this broode of travellers, & most minding the end of her coming hither, to keep close to the rule of Christ both in Doctrine and Discipline; and it were to be wished her elder Sister would follow her example, to nurture up all her children accordingly: here is not to be forgotten the honoured Mr *Hopkins*, who came over about this time a man of zeale and courage for the truths of Christ, assisting this blessed work, both in person and estate; for the which the Author cannot forget him, being oft in commission for the good of all the united Colonyes.

HOpkins *thou must, although weak dust, for this great work pre-* (*pare,*
Through Ocean large Christ gives thee charge to govern his
with care;
What earthen man, in thy short span throughout the world to run
From East to West at Christs behest, thy worthy work is done:
Unworthy thou acknowledge now, not unto thee at all,
But to his name be lasting fame, thou to his work doth call.

CHAP.

CHAP. IX.

Of the planting the fourteenth Church of Christ under the governmen of the Mattachusets Bay, called Dedham.

THe latter end of this yeare 'twas the Towne of *Dedham* began, an inland Towne, scituate, about ten miles from *Boston*, in the County of *Suffolk*, well watred with many pleasant streames, abounding with Garden fruits fitly to supply the Markets of the most populous Towne, whose coyne and commodities allures the Inhabitants of this Towne to make many a long walk; they consist of about a hundred Families, being generally given to husbandry, and, through the blessing of God, are much encreased, ready to swarme and settle on the building of another Towne more to the Inland; they gather into a Church at their first settling, for indeed, as this was their chiefe errand, so was it the first thing they ordinarily minded; to pitch their Tabernacles neare the Lords Tent: To this end they called to the office of a Pastor, the reverend, humble, and heavenly-minded, Mr. *John Allen*, a man of a very courteous behaviour, full of sweet Christian love towards all, and with much meekneſſe of spirit, contending earnestly for the faith and peace of Christs Churches.

ALL you so slite Christs sanctifying grace,
As legall workes, what Gospel work can be
But sinne cast out, and spirits work in place,
They justifyed that Christ thus reigning see:
Allen, *thou art by Christs free Spirit led*
To warre for him in wilderneſſe awhile;
What, doe for Christ, I man thou art in's stead,
Sent to beseech, in's Vineyard thou must toyle.
John Allen *joy, thou sinfull dust art taken*
To spend thy dayes in exile, so remote,
Christs Church to build, of him that's ne'r forsaken,
Nor thou, for now his truths thou must promote.
He guides thy tongue, thy paper, pen and hands,
Thy hearts swift motion, and affections choice;

Mr. *Allen* a great help against the Errors of the time.

Needs

Needs thou thus lead, must doe What he commands,
And cry aloud When he lifts up thy voice:
Seven yeares compleat twice told, thy Work hath bin,
To feed Christs flock, in desart land them keep,
Both thou and they each day are kept by him;
Safe maist thou watch, being watcht by him ne'r sleeps.

This Church of Christ hath in its bosome neere about 70. souls joyned in Covenant together, and being well seasoned with this savoury salt, have continued in much love and unity from their first foundation, hitherto tanslating the close, clouded woods into goodly corn-fields, and adding much comfort to the lonesome travellers, in their solitary journey to *Canecticq*, by eying the habitation of Gods people in their way, ready to administer refreshing to the weary.

CHAP.

CHAP. X.

Of the planting of the fifteenth Church of Christ at the Towne of Waymoth.

THe Towne and Church of Christ at *Waymoth* had come in among the other Townes before this, as being an elder Sister, but onely for her somewhat more then ordinary instability; it is battered with the brinish billows on the East; Rocks and Swamps to the Southwest, makes it delightfull to the nimble tripping Deere, as the plowable places of Medow land is to the Inhabitants. This Towne was first founded by some persons that were not so forward to promote the Ordinances of Christ, as many others have been: they desired the reverend Minister of Christ Mr. *Gennors*, to be helpfull in preaching the Word unto them; who after some little space of time, not liking the place, repaired to the Eastern English: but the people of this place, after his departure, being gathered into a Church, they called to office the reverend and godly Mr *Newman*; but many of them unwilling to continue in this Towne, as supposing they had found a fitter place for habitation, removed into the next Government, carrying with them their Pastor; by which means, the people that were left behinde, were now destitute, and having some godly Christians among them, who much desired the sincere milk of the Word that they might grow thereby: upon diligent use of meanes they found out a young man able gifted for the work, brought up with the reverend and judicious Mr. *Chancie*, called Mr. *Thomas Thatcher*. Yet againe, after some few yeares, for want of sufficient maintenance, with mutuall consent they parted with him, and are forced to borrow help of their Neighbours, wherein all of them to the Author is bold to say as followeth:

OH people, reason swayes mans actions here,
You sanctifyed, o're these long seas doth look,
With heavenly things your earthly toyle to cheere;
Will lose the end for which this toyle you tooke.

Christ comes in's Word, let their bright feet abide
Your Towne, among whose grace and gifts excell
In preaching Christ, it's he your hearts hath try'd,
They want no store that all for him doe sell.
Gennors, *dost love thy Christ? I hope he's deare*
Belov'd of thee, he honour'd would thee have
To feed his flock, while thou remainest here;
With's Word of truth thy soule and others save.
With little flock doth Newman *pack away;*
The righteous lips sure might a many feed;
Remov'st for gaine? it's most where most men stay,
Men part for land, why land least helps at need.
Thatcher, *what mean'st to leave thy little flock?*
Sure their increase might thee much profit bring:
What, leave Christs Church? it's founded on a rock;
If rock not left, their ebb may suddain spring;
Pastor and People, have you both forgot
What parting Paul *and Christs deare people had?*
Their loves melt teares, it's ve'mently so hot,
His heart-strings break to see his folk so sad.

This yeare came over, besides the former, for the furthering of this blessed work of Christ, Mr. *William Tompson*, Mr. *Edm: Browne*, and Mr. *David Frisk*, who were called to office in severall Churches, as you shall after hear. And now to end this yeare, that abounded in the wonder-working Providence of Christ, for his Churches, in the exaltation of his truths, that all may take notice the Lord cast in by the by, as it were, a very fruitfull crop, insomuch that from this day forward, their increase was every yeare more and more, till the Country came to feed its owne Inhabitants; and the people who formerly were somewhat pincht with hunger, eat bread to the full, having not onely for their necessity but also for their conveniency and delight.

CHAP.

CHAP. XI.

Of the increase of the people of Christ. Printing brought over, and the sixteenth Church of Christ planted at Rowly.

FOr the yeare 1638. *John Winthrope* Esq. was chosen Governour, and *Tho: Dudly* Esq. Deputy Governour; the number of Freemen added were about 130. The peace of this little Common-wealth being now in great measure settled, by the Lords mercy, in overthrowing the Indians, and banishing of certaine turbulent spirits. The Churches of Christ were much edified in their holy faith by their indefatigable pains of their Ministers, in their weekly Lectures extraordinary, as well as by their Sabboth-Assemblies, and continuall visiting of their people from house to house, endeavouring to heale the hurts these false deceivers had made, with double diligence showring downe the sweet dews of the blessed Gospel of Jesus Christ, to the converting of many a poor soul. and indeed, now were the glorious days of *New England*; the Churches of Christ increase dayly, and his eminent Embassadours resort unto them from our native Country, which as then lay under the tyranny of the Monarchall Archprelates, which caused the servants of Christ to wander from their home. This yeare the reverend and judicious M. *Jos. Glover* undertook this long voyage, being able both in person and estate for the work he provided, for further compleating the Colonies in Church and Common-wealth-work, a Printer, which hath been very usefull in many respects; the Lord seeing it meet that this reverend and holy servant of his should fall short of the shores of *New England*: but yet at this time he brought over the zealous affected and judicious servant of his, Master *Ezekiel Rogers*, who with a holy and humble people, made his progress to the North-Eastward, and erected a Towne about 6. miles from *Ipswich*, called *Rowly*, where wanting room, they purchased some addition of the Town of *Newbery*; yet had they a large length of land, onely for the neere conveniency to the Towne of *Ipswich*, by the which meanes they partake of the con-

tinued Lectures of either Towne: these people being very industrious every way, soone built many houses, to the number of about threescore families, and were the first people that set upon making of Cloth in this Western World; for which end they built a fulling-mill, and caused their little-ones to be very diligent in spinning cotten wooll many of them having been clothiers in *England*, till their zeale to promote the Gospel of Christ caused them to wander; and therefore they were no lesse industrious, in gathering into Church-society, there being scrace a man among them, but such as were meet to be living stones in this building, according to the judgement of man; they called to the office of a Pastor this holy man of God, Mr. *Ezekiel Rogers*, of whom this may be said:

CHrist for this work Rogers *doth riches give,*
Rich graces fit his people for to feed,
Wealth to supply his wants whilst here he live,
Free thou receiv'st to serve his peoples need.
England *may mourne they thee no longer keep,*
English rejoice, Christ doth such worthyes raise;
His Gospel preach, unfold his mysteries deep;
Weak dust made strong sets forth his makers praise:
With fervent zeale, and courage thou hast fought
'Gainst that transformed Dragon and his bands,
Snatcht forth the burning thou poore soules hast caught,
And freed thy flock from wolves devouring hands.
Ezekiel *mourn not, thou art severed farre,*
From thy deare Country, to a desart land;
Christ call'd hath thee unto this worthy warre;
By him o'rcome, he holds thy Crowne in's hand.

For the further assisting of this tender flock of Christ, the reverend Mr. *John Miller* did abide among them for some space of time, preaching the Word of God uuto them also, till it pleased the Lord to call him to be Pastor of the Church of Christ at *Yarmouth*, in *Plimoth* patten, where he remaineth at this very day.

With

With courage bold Miller *through Seas doth venter,*
To toyl it out in this great Western Wast,
Thy stature low one object high doth center;
Higher then Heaven thy faith on Christ is plac't:
Allarum thou with silver trumpet sound,
And tell the World Christs Armyes are at hand,
With Scripture-truths thou Errors dost confound,
And overthrow all Antichristian bands:
It matters not for th' worlds high reputation;
The World must fall and Christ alone must stand;
Thy Crown's prepar'd in him, then keep thy station,
Joy that Christs Kingdome is so neare at hand.

CHAP. XII.

Of the great Earthquake in New England, *and of the wofull end of some erronious persons, with the first foundation of* Harverd *Colledge.*

THis yeare, the first day of the Fourth Month, about two of the clock in the after-noone, the Lord caus'd a great and terrible Earth-quake, which was generall throughout all the English Plantations; the motion of the Earth was such, that it caused divers men (that had never knowne an Earth-quake before) being at worke in the Fields, to cast downe their working-tooles, and run with gastly terrified lookes, to the next company they could meet withall; it came from the Westerne and uninhabited parts of this Wildernesse, and went the direct course: this brood of Travellers came, the Ministers of Christ many of them could say at that very time (not from any other Revelation, but what the word holds forth) that if the Churches of *New England* were Gods house, then suddenly there would follow great alterations in the Kingdomes of Europe.

This yeare the civill government proceeded to censure the residue of those sinfull erroneous persons, who raised much com-

motion in this little Common-wealth; who being banished, resorted to a place more Southward, some of them sitting down at a place called Providence, others betooke them to an Island about 16. miles distant from the former, called *Rode* Island, where having Elbow-roome enough, none of the Ministers of Christ, nor any other to interrupt their false and deceivable Doctrines, they hamper'd themselves fouly with their owne line, and soone shewed the depthlesse ditches that blinde guides lead into; many among them being much to be pittyed, who were drawne from the truth by the bewitching tongues of some of them being, very ignorant and easily perverted: and although the people were not many in all, yet were they very diverse in their opinions, and glad where they could gaine most Disciples to heare them; some were for every day to be a Sabbath, and therefore kept not any Sabbath-day at all; others were some for one thing, some for another; and therefore had their severall meetings, making many a goodly piece of Preachment; among whom there were some of the female sexe (who deeming the Apostle *Paul* to be too strict in not permitting a roome to preach in the publique Congregation) taught, notwithstanding they having their call to this office, from an ardent desire of being famous, especially the grand Mistresse of them all, who ordinarily prated every Sabbath day, till others, who thirsted after honour in the same way with her selfe, drew away her Auditors, and then she withdrew her self, her husband, and her family also, to a more remote place; and assuredly, although the Lord be secret in all the dispensation of his providences, whether in judgement or mercy, yet much may be learn'd from all, as sometimes pointing with the finger to the lesson; as here these persons withdrawing from the Churches of Christ (wherein he walketh, and is to be found in his blessed Ordinances) to a first and second place, where they came to a very sad end; for thus it came to passe in the latter place, The Indians in those parts forwarned them of making their abode there; yet this could be no warning to them, but still they continued, being amongst a multitude of Indians, boasted they were become all one Indian: and indeed, this woman, who had the chiefe rule of all the roast, being very bold in her strange Revelations and mis-applications,

tells

tells them, though all nations and people were cut off round about them, yet should not they; till on a day certaine Indians coming to her house, discoursing with them, they wished to tye up her doggs, for they much bit the man, not mistrusting the Indians guile, did so; the which no sooner done, but they cruelly murthered her, taking one of their daughters away with them, & another of them seeking to escape is caught, as she was getting over a hedge, and they drew her back againe by the haire of the head to the stump of a tree, and there cut off her head with a hatchet; the other that dwelt by them betook them to boat, and fled, to tell this sad newes; the rest of their companions, who were rather hardened in their sinfull way, and blasphemous opinions, than brought to any sight of their damnable Errours, as you shall after hear; yet was not this the first loud speaking hand of God against them; but before this the Lord had poynted directly to their sinne by a very fearfull Monster, that another of these women brought forth, they striving to bury it in oblivion, but the Lord brought it to light, setting forth the view of their monstrous Errors in this prodigious birth. This yeare, although the estates of these pilgrim people were much wasted, yet seeing the benefit that would accrew to the Churches of Christ and Civil Government, by the Lords blessing, upon learning, they began to erect a Colledge, the Lord by his provident hand giving his approbation to the work, in sending over a faithfull and godly servant of his, the reverend Mr *John Harverd*, who joyning with the people of Christ at *Charles Towne*, suddainly after departed this life, and gave near a thousand pound toward this work; wherefore the Government thought it meet to call it *Harverd* Colledge in remembrance of him.

IP Harverd *had with riches here been taken,*
He need not then through troublous Seas have past,
But Christs bright glory hath thine eyes so waken,
Nought can content, thy soule of him must tast:
Oh tast and tell how sweet his Saints among,
Christ ravisht hath thy heart with heavenly joyes
To preach and pray with teares, affection strong,
From hearts delight in him who thee imployes.

Scarce

Scarce hast thou had Christs Churches here in eye,
But thou art call'd to eye him face to face;
Earths scant contents death drawes thee from, for why?
Full joy thou wouldst that's onely in heavens place.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the coming over of the honoured Mr. Pelham, *and the planting of the seaventeenth Church of Christ at the Towne of* Hampton.

THis yeare 1639. *John Winthrope* Esq, was chosen Governour, and *Thomas Dudly* Esq. Deputy Governour, the number of freemen added were about 83. This yeare came over the much honoured Mr. *Herbert Pelham*, a man of a courteous behaviour, humble, and heavenly minded.

HArbertus, *hye on valiant, why lingerst thou so long?*
Christs work hath need of hasty speed, his enemies are strong:
In wilderness Christ doth thee blesse with vertues, wife, and seed,
To govern thou, at length didst bow to serve Christs peoples need;
To thine own soyle thou back dost toyle, then cease not lab'ring there,
But still advance Christs Ordinance, and shrink no where for fear.

Much about this time began the Town of *Hampton*, in the County of *Northfolk*, to have her foundation stone laid, scituate neare the Sea-coast, not farre from the famous River of *Merimeck*, the great store of salt marsh did intice this people to set downe their habitations there, for as yet Cowes and Carrell of that kinde were not come to the great downfall in their price, of which they have about 450. head; and for the form of this Towne, it is like a Flower-de-luce, two streets of houses wheeling off from the maine body thereof, the land is fertile, but filled with swamps, and some store of rocks, the people are about 60. Families; being gathered together into Church covenant, they called to office the reverend, grave, and gracious Mr. *Doulton*, having

having also for some little space of time the more ancient Mr. *Batchelor* (of whom you have heard in the former Book) to preach unto them also; here take a short remembrance of the other.

DOulton *doth teach perspicuously and sound,*
With wholsome truths of Christ thy flock dost feed,
Thy honour with thy labour doth abound,
Age crownes thy head in righteousnesse, proceed
To batter downe, root up, and quite destroy
All Heresies, and Errors, that draw back
Unto perdition, and Christs folk annoy;
To warre for him thou weapons dost not lack:
Long dayes to see, that long'd for day to come!
Of Babels *fall, and* Israels *quiet peace:*
Thou yet maist live of dayes so great a sum
To see this work, let not thy warfare cease.

CHAP. XIV.

Of the planting the eighteenth Church of Christ at the Towne of Salsbury.

FOr further perfecting this Wildernesse-work; not far from the Towne of *Hampton* was erected another Towne, called *Salsbury*, being brought forth as Twins, sometime contending for eldership: This being seated upon the broade swift torrent of *Merrimeck*, a very goodly River to behold, were it not blockt up with some suddaine falls through the rocks; over against this Towne lyeth the Towne of *Newberry*, on the Southern side of the River a constant Ferry being kept between; for although the River be about half a mile broad, yet, by reason of an Island that lies in the midst thereof, it is the better passed in troublesom weather: the people of this Towne have of late, placed their dwellings so much distanced the one from the other, that they are like to divide into two Churches; the scituation of this Towne is very pleasant, were the Rivers *Navigable* farre up, the branches thereof abound in faire and goodly medowes with

good ſtore of ſtately Timber upon the uplands in many places, this Towne is full as fruitfull in her Land, Chattell, and Inhabitants, as her Siſter *Hampton*; the people joyned in Church-relation or brotherhood, nere about the time the other did, and have deſired and obtained the reverend and graciouſly godly, M. *Thomas Woſter* to be their Paſtor.

WIth mickle labour and diſtreſſed wants,
Woſter, *thou haſt in deſart's depth remain'd*
Thy chiefeſt dayes, Chriſts Goſpel there to plant,
And water well, ſuch toyle ſhall yeild great gaine.
Oh happy day! may Woſter *ſay, that I*
Was ſingled out for this great work in hand;
Chriſt by diſtreſſe doth Gold for's Temple try:
Thrice bleſt are they may in his Preſence ſtand,
But more, thou art by him reſerved yet,
To ſee on earth Chriſt's Kingdom's exaltation:
More yet, thou art by him prepared fit
To help it on, among our Engliſh Nation.

CHAP.

CHAP. XV.

Of further ſupply for the Church of Chriſt at Waterton. *And a ſad acceidnt fell out in* Boſton *Towne.*

THe Lord intending to ſtrengthen his poore Churches here, and after the overthrow of theſe damnable Errors, to trample Satan under their feet; he manifeſteth his mindefulneſs of them, in ſending over freſh ſuplpyes againe and againe: although weak and ſory men in themſelves, yet ſtrong in the Lord, and the power of his might, the laſt that this yeare is to be named, is the reverend, judicious, and godly-affected, Mr, *John Knowles*, who was deſired of the Church of Chriſt at *Waterton*, to be a two-fold cord unto them, in the office of a teaching Elder, with the reverend Mr. *Phillips*, of whom you have heard in the former Book.

WIth courage bold and arguments of ſtrength,
Knowles *doth apply Gods Word his flock unto,*
Chriſt furniſht hath (to ſhew his bountyes length)
Thee With rich gifts, that thou his work mayſt do:
New England *is too ſcant, for thy deſire*
Inkindled is, Chriſts truths abroad to ſpread,
Virginia *may his grace to them admire,*
That thee through Seas for their inſtruction led;
Thy labours Knowles *are great, far greater hee,*
Not onely thee, but all his valiant made,
Forth ſinfull duſt, his Saints and Warriers be;
He thee upheld, thy ſtrength ſhall never fade.
John *come thou forth, behold what Chriſt hath Wrought*
In theſe thy dayes, great works are yet behinde,
Then toyle it out till all to paſſe be brought,
Chriſt crowne will thee, thou then his glory minde.

To end this yeare 1639. the Lord was pleaſed to a ſend a very ſharp winter, and more eſpecially in ſtrong ſtorms of weekly ſnows, with very bitter blaſts: And here the Reader may take notice of the ſad hand of the Lord againſt two perſons, who

were taken in a ſtorme of ſnow, as they were paſſing from *Boſton* to *Roxbury*, it being much about a mile diſtant, and a very plaine way, One of *Roxbury* ſending to *Boſton* his ſervant maid for a Barber-Chirurgion, to draw his tooth, they loſt their way in their paſſage between, and were not found till many dayes after, and then the maid was fonnd in one place, and the man in another, both of them frozen to death; in which ſad accident, this was taken into conſideration by divers people, that this Barber was more then ordinary laborious to draw men to thoſe ſinfull Errors, that were formerly ſo frequent, and now newly overthrowne by the bleſſing of the Lord, upon the endeavour of his faithfull ſervants with the word of truth) he having a fit opportunity, by reaſon of his trade, ſo ſoone as any were ſet downe in his chaire, he would commonly be cutting of their haire and the truth together; notwithſtanding ſome report better of the man, the example is for the living, the dead is judged of the Lord alone.

CHAP. XVI.

The great ſupply of godly Miniſters for the good of his People in New England.

FOr to govern and rule this little Common wealth, was this year choſen the valiant Champion, for the advance of Chriſts truth, *Thomas Dudly* Eſq. and *Richard Bellingham* Eſq. Deputy-Governour; the freemen added to the former were about 192. this yeare the reverend Mr. *Burr* (a holy, heavenly-minded man, and able gifted to preach the Word of God) was exerciſed therein for ſome ſpace of time, in the Church of Chriſt at *Dorcheſter*, where they were about calling him to the office of a teaching Elder; but in a very little time after his coming over he departed this life, yet minde him you may in the following Meetre

WEll didſt thou minde thy Work, Which caus'd thee venter
(Through Ocean large) thy Chriſt in's Word to preach,
Exhorting

Exhorting all their faith on him to center,
Soules ravisht are by him in thy sweet speech,
Thy speech bewrayes thy heart, for heaven doth look,
Christ to enjoy, Burr *from the earth is taken,*
Thy words remaine, though thou hast us forsook,
In dust sleep sound till Christ thy body waken.

There are divers others of the faithfull Ministers of Christ that came over for to further this his work; somewhat before this time, as the godly and reverend Mr. *Rayner*, who was called to office in the Church of Christ at *Plimoth*, and there remaines preaching the Word instantly, with great paines and care over that flock, as also the reverend and faithfull servant of Christ Jesus, Mr. *William Hook*, who was for some space of time at the Church in *Taunton*, but now remaines called to office in the Church of Christ at *Newhaven*, a man, who hath received of Christ many gracious gifts, fit for so high a calling, with very amiable and gracious speech labouring in the Lord; and here also the Reader may minde how the Lord was pleased to reach out his large hand of bounty toward his *N. England* people, in supplying them abundantly with Teachers, able and powerfull to break the bread of life unto them, so long as their desires continued hot and zealous; but after here grew a fulnesse in some, even to slight, if not loath the honey comb; many returned for *England*, and the Lord was pleased to take away others by death, although very few, considering the number; but let *N. England* beware of an after-clap, & provoke the Lord no longer. But seeing this yeare proved the last of the yeares of transportation of Gods people, only for enjoyment of exercising the Ordinances of Christ, and enlargement of his Kingdome (there being hopes of great good opportunity that way at home) it will be expedient onely to name some others in the Southwest parts, among the lesser Colonyes, and so passe on to the story: And first, not to forget the reverend Mr. *Eaton*, a man of love and peace, and yet godly zealous, he came over with those who planted the Colony of *Newhaven*, spending his labours in the Lord with them in *Plimoth* Plantation: also here is to be minded the reverend Mr. *Chancie*, a very able Preacher, both learned and judicious; as also the

the reverend, able, and pious M. *Huet*, who came over this year, or rather, as I suppose, the yeare before, who did spend his time and labour with a people that came over with him; at length the greatest part of them they settled downe in the Government of *Canecticoe*, where they planted the Towne of *Windsor*, and Church of Christ there, where this gracious servant of Christ continued in his labours, till the Lord laid him in his bed of rest: somewhat before this time came over the reverend Mr. *Smith*, being another of that name, beside the former, he laboured in the Word and Doctrine with a people at *Withersfield* in those parts also; Mr. *Henry Whitefield*, another Minister of the Gospel of Christ, of reverend respect, who being returned for *England*, the latter of his labours, the Lord assisting, will sufficiently testifie his sincerity, for the truth and labours of love in the Lord: here may also be named the reverend Mr. *Peck*, Mr. *Saxton*, and Mr. *Lenten*, the residue will be spoken of in the ensuing story to those that yet remaine. Of these persons named the Author doth tender this following Meetre.

WHen reasons Scepter first 'gan sway your hearts,
Through troublous Seas, this Western World to enter
Among Christs Souldiers, here to act your parts;
Did not Christs love on you cause him to center?
All those strait lines of your inflam'd desire
Unto his truths, 'cause him in them you finde;
From wilderness, not from his truths retire;
But unto death this wonderous work you'l minde,
No place can claime peculiar interest in
Christs worship, for all nations are his own;
The day's at hand down falls that man of sin,
And Christs pure Gospel through the World is blown;
Harvest is come, bid ease and sleep adieu,
What, trifle time when Christ takes in his Crop?
A Harvest large of Gentil and of Jew
(You) fil'd of Christ, let his sweet Doctrine drop.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVII.

Of the planting of Long-Island. *And of the planting the nineteenth Church in the Mattachusets government, called* Sudbury.

THis yeare came over divers godly and sincere servants of Christ, as I suppose, among whom came over the reverend godly M. *Peirson*: This people finding no place in any of the former erected Colonies to settle in, to their present content, repaired to an Island, severed from the continent of *Newhaven*, with about 16. miles off the salt Sea, and called *Long-Island*, being about 120. miles in length, and yet but narrow: here this people erected a Town, and called it *South Hampton*, there are many Indians on the greatest part of this Island, who at first settling of the English there, did much annoy their Cattel with the multitude of Doggs they kept, which ordinarily are young wolves brought up tame, continuing of a very ravening nature. This people gathered into a Church, and called to office Mr. *Peirson*, who continued with them about 7, or 8. yeares, and then he, with the greatest number of the people, removed farther into the Island; the other part that remained invited Mr. *Feorlum*, and a people that were with him, to come and joyne with them, who accordingly did, being wandered as far as the Dutch plantation, and there unsettled, although he came into the Country before them.

This yeare the Town and Church of Christ at *Sudbury* begin to have the first foundation stones laid, taking up her station in the Inland Country, as her elder Sister Concord had formerly done, lying farther up the same River, being furnished with great plenty of fresh marsh, but it lying very low is much indammaged with land-flouds, insomuch that when the summer proves wet, they lose part of their hay; yet are they so sufficiently provided, that they take in Cattell of other Townes to winter: these people not neglecting the chief work, for the which they entred this wilderness, namely, to worship the Lord in the purity of his Ordinances, and according to the rule of his Word, entred into covenant with him, and one with another professedly to walk together in Church-fellowship; and according to the same

same rule they called to the office of a Pastor the reverend, godly, and able Minister of the Word, Mr. *Edmond Brown*, whose labours in the Doctrine of Christ Jesus hath hitherto abounded, wading through this wilderness-work with much cheerfulnesse of spirit, of whom as followeth:

Both night and day Brown *ceaseth not to watch*
Christs little flock, in pastures fresh them feed,
The worrying wolves shall not thy weak lambs catch;
Well dost thou minde in wilderness their breed;
Edmond, *thy age is not so great but thou*
Maist yet behold the Beast brought to her fall,
Earth's tottering Kingdome shew her legs gin bow,
Thou 'mongst Christs Saints with prayers maist her mawle;
What signes wouldst have faith's courage for to rouse?
See Christ triumphant hath his armies led,
In wilderness prepar'd his lovely Spouse,
Caus'd Kings and Kingdomes his high hand to dread:
Thou seest his Churches daily are encreasing,
And thou thy selfe amongst his worthyes warring,
Hold up thy hands, the battel's now increasing,
Christ's Kingdom's ay, it's past all mortall's marring.

This Towne is very well watered, and hath store of plow-land but by reason of the oaken roots, they have little broke up, considering the many Acres the place affords; but this kinde of land requires great strength to break up, yet brings very good crops, and lasts long without mending; the people are industrious, and have encreased in their estates, some of them, yet the great distance it lyes from the Mart Towns maketh it burdersome to the Inhabitants, to bring their corne so far by land; some Gentlemen have here laid out part of their estates in procuring farmes, by reason of the store of medow: this Church hath hitherto been blessed with blessings of the right hand, even godly peace and unity: they are not above 50. or 60. families, and about 80. souls in Church-fellowship, their Neat-heard about 300

CHA

CHAP. XVIII.

Of the planting of the twentieth Church of Christ at a Towne called Braintree.

ABout this time there was a Town and Church planted at *Mount Wollestone*, and named *Braintree*, it was occaioned by some old planters and certain Farmers belonging to he great Town of *Boston*; they had formerly one Mr. *Whelewright* to preach unto them, (till this Government could no onger contain them) they many of them in the mean time beonging to the Church of Christ at *Boston*, but after his deparure they gathered into a Church themselves; having some nlargement of Land, they began to be well peopled, calling o office among them, the reverend and godly Mr. *William Tompson*, and Mr. *Henry Flint*, the one to the office of a Pastor, ne other of a Teacher; the people are purged by their indury from the sowre leven of those sinful opinions that began o spread, and if any remain among them it is very covert, et the manner of these Erronists that remain in any place, is o countenance all sorts of sinful opinions, as occasions serves, oth in Church and Commonwealth, under pretence of Lierty of Conscience, (as well their own opinion as others) y this Symbol they may be known in Court and Country. his Town hath great store of Land in tillage, and is at preent in a very thriving condition for outward things, although me of *Boston* retain their Farms from being of their Town, t do they lye within their bounds, and how it comes to pass know not; their Officers have somewhat short allowance, ey are well stored with cattel and corn, and as a people reives, so should they give: And Reader, I cannot but mind e of the admirable providence of Christ for his people in is, where they have been in a low condition, by their libeity they have been raised to much in a very little time: nd again, in withdrawing their hands have had their plenty sted: The reverend Mr. *Tompson* is a man abounding in zeal the propagation of the Gospel, and of an ardent affecti, insomuch that he is apt to forget himself in things that

concern his own good, both him, and the like gracio M. *Flint* is here remembred.

With twofold cord doth Flint *and* Tompson *draw*
In Christ's yoke, his fallow ground to break,
Wounding mens hearts with his most righteous Law,
Cordials apply to weary souls and weak.
Tompson *thou hast Christ's folk incouraged*
To war, their warfare putting them in mind,
That Christ their King will make his sons the dread,
The day's at hand when they shall mastery find.
Flint *be a second to this Champion stout,*
In Christ's your strength, while you for him do war,
When first doth faint, a second helps him out,
Till Christ renew with greater strength by far.
From East *to* West *your labours lasted have,*
The more you toil, the more your strength encreaseth,
Your works will bide, when you are laid in grave,
His truth advance, whose Kingdom never ceaseth.

CHAP. XIX.

Of the first promotion of learning in New-England, *and the e traordinary providences that the Lord was pleased to send for furthering of the same.*

TOward the latter end of this Summer came over t learned, reverend, and judicious Mr. *Henry Dunster*, b fore whose coming the Lord was pleased to provide a Patro for erecting a Colledg, as you have formerly heard, his pr vident hand being now no less powerful in pointing out wi his unerring finger, a president abundantly fitted this his se vant, and sent him over for to mannage the work; and as all the other passages of this history, the Wonder-workin Providence of *Sions* Saviour hath appeared, so more especia ly in this work, the Fountains of learning being in a gre measure stopped in our Native Country at this time, so th the sweet waters of *Shilo's* streams must ordinarily pass in t

e Churches through the ſtinking channel of prelatical pride, ſide all the filth that the fountains themſelves were daily cu bred withall, inſomuch that the Lord turned aſide of-n from them, and refuſed the breathings of his bleſſed Spi-t among them, which cauſed Satan (in theſe latter daies of s transformation into an Angel of light) to make it a means perſwade people from the uſe of learning altogether, that in the next generation they might be deſtitute of ſuch elps, as the Lord hath been pleaſed hitherto to make uſe of, chief means for the converſion of his people, and building em up in the holy faith, as alſo for breaking downe the ingdom of Antichriſt; and verily had not the Lord been leaſed to furniſh *N. E.* with means for the attainment of arning, the work would have been carried on very heavily, nd the hearts of godly parents would have vaniſh'd away ith heavineſs for their poor children, whom they muſt ave left in a deſolate wilderneſs, deſtitute of the meanes of race.

It being a work (in the apprehenſion of all, whoſe capaci-y could reach to the great ſums of money, the edifice of a ean Colledg would coſt) paſt the reach of a poor Pilgrim eople, who had expended the greateſt part of their eſtates n a long voyage, travelling into Forraign Countryes, being nprofitable to any that have undertaken it, although it were ut with their neceſſary attendance, whereas this people vere forced to travel with wives, children, and ſervants; be-des they conſidered the treble charge of building in this new opulated deſart, in regard of al kind of workmanſhip, know-ng likewiſe, that young Students could make but a poor rogreſs in learning, by looking on the bare walls of their hambers, and that *Diogenes* would have the better of them y far, in making uſe of a Tun to lodg in, not being ignorant lſo, that many people in this age are out of conceit with earning, and that although they were not among a people vho counted ignorance the mother of devotion, yet were he greater part of the people wholly devoted to the low, (but to ſpeak uprightly, hunger is ſharp, and the ead will retain little learning, if the heart be not refreſhed

in some competent measure with food, although the gross vapors of a glutted stomack are the bane of a bright understanding, and brings barrenness to the brain) but how to have both go on together, as yet they know not; amidst all these difficulties, it was thought meet learning should plead for itself, and (as many other men of good rank and quality in this barren desart) plod out a way to live: Hereupon all those who had tasted the sweet wine of Wisdoms drawing, and fed on the dainties of knowledg, began to set their wits a work, and verily as the whole progress of this work had a farther dependency then on the present eyed means, so at this time chiefly the end being firmly fixed on a sure foundation, namely, the glory of God, and good of all his elect people, the world throughout, in vindicating the truths of Christ, and promoting his glorious Kingdom, who is now taking the heathen for his inheritance, and the utmost ends of the earth for his possession, means they know there are, many thousands uneyed of mortal man, which every daies Providence brings forth; upon these resolutions, to work they go, and with thankful acknowledgment, readily take up all lawful means as they come to hand, for place they fix their eye upon *New-Town*, which to tell their Posterity whence they came, is now named *Cambridg*, and withal to make the whole world understand, that spiritual learning was the thing they chiefly desired, to sanctifie the other, and make the whole lump holy, and that learning being set upon its right object, might not contend for error instead of truth; they chose this place, being then under the Orthodox, and soul-flourishing Ministery of Mr. *Thomas Shepheard*, of whom it may be said, without any wrong to others, the Lord by his Ministery hath saved many a hundred soul: The scituation of this Colledg is very pleasant, at the end of a spacious plain, more like a bowling green, then a Wilderness, neer a fair navigable river, environed with many Neighbouring Towns of note, being so neer, that their houses joyn with her Suburbs, the building thought by some, to be too gorgeous for a Wilderness, and yet too mean in others apprehensions for a Colledg, it is at present inlarging by purchase of the neighbour houses, it hath

the

e conveniencies of a fair Hall, comfortable Studies, and a ood Library, given by the liberal hand of some Magistrates d Ministers, with others: The chief gift towards the found-g of this Colledg, was by Mr. *John Harnes*, a reverend Mini-r, the Country being very weak in their publike Treasury, pended about 500. l. towards it, and for the maintenance ereof, gave the yearly revenue of a Ferry passage between *oston*, and *Charles Town*, the which amounts to about 40. or o. l. *per annum*. The Commissioners of the four united Co-nies also taking into consideration, (of what common con-rnment this work would be, not only to the whole planta-ons in general, but also to all our English Nation) they en-avoured to stir up all the people in the several Colonies to ake a yearly contribution toward it, which by some is ob-rved, but by the most very much neglected; the Govern-ent hath endeavoured to grant them all the priviledges fit r a Colledg; and accordingly the Governour and Magi-rates, together with the President of the Colledg, for the me being, have a continual care of ordering all matters for e good of the whole: This Colledg hath brought forth, d nurst up very hopeful plants, to the supplying some hurches here, as the grreious and godly Mr. *Wilson*, son to e grave and zealous servant of Christ Mr. *John Wilson*, this oung man is Pastor to the Church of Christ at *Dorchester*; also Mr. *Buckly*, son to the reverend M. *Buckly* of Concord; also a second son of his, whom our Native Country hath ow at present help in the Ministery, and the other is over a eople of Christ in one of these Colonies, and if I mistake not, *ngland* hath I hope not only this young man of *N. E.* nur-ring up in learning, but many more, as M. *Sam.* and *Natha-el Mathers*, Mr. *Wells*, Mr. *Downing*, Mr. *Barnard*, Mr. *Al-n*, Mr. *Bruster*, Mr. *William Ames*, Mr. *Iones*: Another of the rst fruits of this Colledg is imployed in these Western parts *Mevis*, one of the summer Islands; beside these named, me help hath been had from hence in the study of Physick, also the godly Mr. *Sam. Danforth*, who hath not only stu-ied Divinity, but also Astronomy, he put forth many Alma-acks, and is now called to the office of a teaching Elder in the

the Church of Christ at *Roxbury*, who was one of the fellow of this Colledg; the number of Students is much encreased of late, so that the present year 1651. on the twelfth of the sixth moneth, ten of them took the degree of Batchelors of Art, among whom the Sea-born son of Mr. *John Cotton* was one, some Gentlemen have sent their sons hither from *England*, who are to be commended for their care of them, as the judicious and godly Doctor *Ames*, and divers others: This hath been a place certainly more free from temptations to lewdness, then ordinarily *England* hath been, yet if men shall presume upon this to send their most exorbitant children, intending them more especially for Gods service, the Justice of God doth sometimes meet with them, and the means doth more harden them in their way, for of late the godly Governors of this Colledg have been forced to expell some, for fear of corrupting the Fountain, wherefore the Author would ye should mind this following verse.

YOu that have seen these wondrous works by Sions *Savior done*
Expect not miracle, lest means thereby you over-run;
The noble Acts Jehovah *wrought, his* Israel *to redeem,*
Surely this second work of his shall far more glorious seem;
Not only Egypt, *but all Lands, where Antichrist doth raign,*
Shall from Jehovahs *heavy hand ten times ten plagues sustain.*
Bright shining shall this Gospel come, Oh glorious King of Saints!
Thy blessed breath confounds thy foes, all mortal power faints,
The ratling bones together run with self-same breath that blows
Of Israels *sons long dead and dry, each joynt there sinew grows,*
Fair flesh doth cover them, & veins (lifes fountain) takes there place.
Smooth seamless coats doth cloath their flesh, and all their first
ture grace.
The breath of Life is added, they no Antinomians *are,*
But loving him who gives them life, more zealous are by far
To keep his Law, then formerly when righteousnesse they sought,
In keeping that they could not keep, which then their downfall
brought.
Their ceremonies vanisht are, on Christ's all their desires,
Their zeal all Nations doth provoke, inkindled are loves fires:

VVi

With haſt on horſeback, bringing home their ſons & daughters, they
Rejoyce to ſee this glorious ſight, like Reſurrections day;
Up and be doing, you young plants, Chriſt calls his work unto
Polluted lips, touch'd with heav'ns fire, about this work ſhall go.
Proſtrate in prayer parents, and you young ones on Chriſt call,
Suppoſe of you he will make uſe, whereby that beaſt ſhall fall:
So be it Lord thy ſervants ſay, who are at thy diſpoſing, (cloſing.
With outward word work inward grace, by heavenly truths diſ-
Awake, ſtand up from death to life, in Chriſt your ſtudies enter,
The Scriptures ſearch, bright light bring forth, upon this hardſhip venter.
Sound doctrine ſhall your lips preach out, all errors to confound
And rid Chriſt's Temple from this ſmoke, his glory ſhall abound;
Precipitant doth Dagon fall, his triple head off cut,
The Beaſt that all the world admires, by you to death is put:
Put hand to mouth, with vehement blaſt your ſilver Trumpets ſound,
Chriſt calls to mind his peoples wrongs, their foes hee'l now confound:
Be ſtrong in God, and his great might, his wondrous works do tell,
Your raiſed are unwonted ways, obſerve his workings well.
As Jordans ſtreams congeal'd in heaps, and Jerico's high walls
With Rams horns blaſt, and Midians Hoſt, with pitcher breaking falls;
Like works your faith, for to confirm in theſe great works to come,
That nothing now too hard may ſeem, Jehovah would have done.
The rage of Seas, and hunger ſharp, wants of a deſart Land,
Your noble hearts have overcom, what ſhall this work withſtand?
Yet perſecutors pride and rage, ſtrong multitudes do fall,
By little handfuls of leaſt duſt, your Chriſt confounds them all;
Yet Satan and his ſubtil train with ſeeming ſhew reforming.
Another Goſpel to bring forth, brings damned errors ſwarming:
Your ſelves have ſeen his paint waſht off, his hidden poyſons found,
Chriſt you provides with Antidotes, to keep his people ſound:
There's nought remains but conqueſt now, through Chriſt's continued power,
His hardeſt works have honors moſt attend them every hour.
What greater honor then on earth, Chriſt's Legat for to be,
Attended with his glorious Saints in Church fraternity.

Chriſt

Christ to behold adorning now his Bride in bright array,
And you his friends him to attend upon his Nuptial day,
With crowned heads, as Conquerors triumphant by his side;
In's presence is your lasting joy, and pleasures ever bide.

Mr. *Henry Dunstar* is now President of this Colledg, fitted from the Lord for the work, and by those that have skill that way, reported to be an able Proficient, in both Hebrew Greek, and Latine languages, an Orthodox Preacher of the truths of Christ, very powerful through his blessing to move the affection; and besides he having a good inspection into the well-ordering of things for the Students maintenance (whose commons hath been very short hitherto) by his frugal providence hath continued them longer at their Studies then otherwise they could have done; and verily it's great pity such ripe heads as many of them be, should want means to further them in learning: But seeing the Lord hath been pleased to raise up so worthy an instrument for their good, he shall not want for incouragement to go on with the work, so far as a rustical rime will reach.

Could man presage prodigious works at hand,
Provide he would for's good and ill prevent,
But God both time and means hath at's command,
Dunster *in time to his* N. E. *hath sent.*
When England *'gan to keep at home their guides,*
N. E. *began to pay their borrowed back,*
Industrious Dunster, *providence provides,*
Our friends supply, and yet our selves no lack:
With restless labour thou dost delve and dung,
Surculus *set in garden duly tended,*
That in Christs Orchard they with fruit full hung,
May bless the Lord, thy toil gone, them expended,
Thy constant course proves retrograde in this,
From West *to* East *thy toil returns again,*
Thy husbandry by Christ so honored is,
That all the world partaketh of thy pains.

CHAP.

CHAP. XX.

Of the planting of the one and twentieth Church of Christ at a Town called Glocester, *and of the Church and Town of* Dover, *and of the hardships that befel a certain people, who thirsted after large liberty in a warm Country.*

FOr the Government of this little Commonwealth, this year was chosen for Governour *Richard Bellingham*, Esquire, and *John Endicott* Esquire for Governors; the number of Freemen added this year, were about 503.

There was another Town and Church of Christ erected in the *Mattachusset* Government, upon the *Northern Cape* of the Bay, called *Cape Ann*, a place of fishing, being peopled with fishermen, till the reverend Mr. *Richard Blindman* came from place in *Plimouth Patten*, called *Green-Harbor*, with some few people of his acquaintance, and setled down with them, named the Town *Glocester*, and gathered into a Church, being but a small number, about fifty persons, they called to office this godly reverend man, whose gifts and abilities to handle the word, is not inferiour to many others, labouring much against the errors of the times, of a sweet, humble, heavenly carriage: This Town lying out toward the point of the Cape, the access thereunto by Land becomes uneasie, which was the chief cause it was no more populated: Their fishing trade would be very beneficial, had they men of estates to manage it; yet are they not without other means of maintenance, having good timber for shipping, and a very sufficient builder, but that these times of combustion the Seas throughout hath hindered much that work, yet have there been Vessels built here at this Town of late: Their reverend Elder is here remembred.

THou hast thy prime and middle age here spent,
The best is not too good for him that gave it,
When thou did'st first this Wilderness frequent,
For *Sions* sake it was, that Christ might save it.

Blinman be blith in him, who thee hath taken
To feed his Flock, a few poor scattered sheep,
Why should they be of thee at all forsaken,
Thy honor's high, that any thou may'st keep.
Wait patiently thy Masters coming, thou
Hast hitherto his peoples portions dealt,
It matters not for high preferment; now
Thy crown's to come, with joyes immortal felt.

About this time the people inhabiting the Town of *Dover*, although they lay out of any of these Colonies mentioned, (yet hearing and seeing with what sweet harmony both in Churches and civil Government, the *Mattachusets* peopled patten was carried on prosperously) desired greatly to submit unto the same, by putting themselves under their protection; and for that end they petitioned their General *Cort* to admit of them, and administer Justice as occasion served, by the hands of their godly Magistrates, which accordingly was granted, and they have been partakers of the benefit hitherto, having also the benefit of some one Minister to preach unto them, till it pleased God to fit stones by the continual hewing of his word for his Temple-work, and then gather a Church according to the rule of the word, and called to office of a Pastor one M. *Maude*, both godly, both goodly and diligent in the work: This Town is scituate upon *Pascataque* river, lying to the Northeast of *Boston*, which river although it be not nigh so broad as *Merrimack* river, yet is it navigable, being very deep, and her banks in many places fil'd with stately timber, which hath caused one or two Saw Mills to be continued; there they have a good quantity of Meddow Land, and good ground for *India* corn. To end the year 1641. the Lord was pleased to send a very sharp Winter insomuch that the Harbor where Ships ordinarily Anchor, was frozen over of such a thickness, that it became passeable, both for horse, carts, and oxen, for the space of five weeks. And here the Reader must be minded of the wonder-working providence of Christ for his poor Churches, in altering the very season for their comfort, to the wonder of *English* and *Indians*

as

ins, the Winter and Summer proving more moderate, both for heat and cold, unmasking many by this means, it being a frequent thing with some, that after the novelties of a new land began to be stale with them, and the sweet nourishment of the soul by the presence of Christ in the preaching of his Word, began to dry up through the hot heady conceit of some new conceived opinion: Then they wanted a warmer country, and every Northwest wind that blew, they crept into some odd chimney-corner or other, to discourse of the diversity of Climates in the Southerne parts, but chiefly of a thing very sweet to the pallate of the flesh, called liberty, which they supposed might be very easily attain'd, could they but once come into a place where all men were chosen to the office of a Magistrate, and all were preachers of the Word, and no hearers, then it would be all Summer and no Winter: This consultation was to be put in practise speedily, as all headstrong motions are, but the issue proved very sad, both to these and others also; for thus it befell, when the time of the year was come that a sea-voyage might be undertaken, they having made sale of a better accommodation then any they could afterward attain unto, prepare for the voyage with their wifes and children, intending to land them in one of the Summer Islands, called the Isle of Providence, and having wind and seas favouring them, as they supposed, or to speak more proper, the provident hand of the most high God directing it, they were brought so neer the shore for convenient landing, that they might have heaved a Bisket cake on land; their Pilate wondring he could not see the English colours on the Fort, he began to mistrust the Island was taken, and more especially, because they saw not the people appear upon the shores as they usually did when any Vessel was a coming in, but now and then they saw some people a far off wafting to them to come in, till they were even come to an Anchor, and then by the hoising up and down the heads of those on shore, they were fully confirmed in it, that the Island was taken, as indeed it was by the *Spaniards*, who as soone as they tackt about to be gone, made shot at them, and being in great fear they made all the sail they could, but before they could get out of shot, the Master of the Vessel was slain, the

main sail shot through, and the Barque also; the people some of them returned back again for *New-England*, being sore abashed at this providence that befel them, that they would never seek to be governed by liberty again to this very day yet others there are were so strongly bent for the heat of liberty, that they indured much pinching penury upon an uninhabited Island, til at length meeting some others like-minded with themselves, they made a voyage to another Island, the chiefest part of their Charter of Freedom was this, That no man upon pain of death should speak against anothers Religion where they continued, till some of them were famished, and others even forced to feed on Rats, and any other thing they could find to sustain nature, till the provident hand of God brought a Ship to the place, which took them off the Island, and saved their lives: But upon this the Winters discourse ceased, and projects for a warmer Country were husht and done.

CHAP. XXI.

Of the suddain and unexpected fall of Cattel, and the great blessing of God in giving plenty of provision.

FOr this year 1642. *Iohn Winthrope* Esquire was chosen Governour, and *Iohn Endicut* Esquire Deputy Governor: The number of Freemen added were about 1232. This Spring Cowes and Cattle of that kind (having continued at an excessive price so long as any came over with estates to purchase them) fell of a suddain in one week from 22 l. the Cow, to 6.7. or 8.l. the Cow at most, insomuch that it made all men admire how it came to pass, it being the common practise of those that had any store of Cattel, to sell every year a Cow or two, which cloath'd their backs, fil'd their bellies with more varieties then the Country of it self afforded, and put gold and silver in their purses beside. Here the Reader is desired to take notice of the wonderful providence of the most high God toward these his new-planted Churches, such as was never heard of, since that *Iacobs* sons ceased to be a people,

people, that in ten or twelve years planting, there ſhould be ſuch wonderful alteration, a Nation to be born in a day, a Commonwealth orderly brought forth from a few Fugitives, all the Forraign plantations that are of forty, fifty, or a hundred years ſtanding, cannot really report the like, although they have had the greateſt incouragements earth could afford, Kings to countenance them, ſtaple commodities to provoke all manner of Merchants to reſort unto them, ſilver, gold, precious ſtones, or whatever might intice the eye or ear to incline the motion of man toward them, his remote, rocky, barren, buſhy, wild-woody wilderneſs, a receptacle for Lions, Wolves, Bears, Foxes, Rockoones, Bags, Bevers, Otters, and all kind of wild creatures, a place that never afforded the Natives better then the fleſh of a few wild creatures and parch't Indian corn incht out with Cheſnuts and bitter Acorns, now through the mercy of Chriſt becom a ſecond *England* for fertilneſs in ſo ſhort a ſpace, that it is indeed the wonder of the world; but being already forgotten of the very perſons that taſt of it at preſent, although ſome there be that keep in memory his mercies multitude, and declare it to their childrens children.

First to begin with the encreaſe of food, you have heard in what extream penury theſe people were in at firſt, planting for want of food, gold, ſilver, rayment, or whatſoever was precious in their eyes they parted with (when ſhips came in) for this their beaſt that died, ſome would ſtick before they were cold, and ſell their poor pined fleſh for food, at 6.d. *per* pound, Indian Beans at 16.s. *per* buſhel, when Ships came in it grieved ſome Maſter to ſee the urging of them by people of good rank and quality to ſell bread nnto them. But now take notice how the right hand of the moſt high hath altered all, and men of the meaner rank are urging them to buy bread of them, and now good white and wheaten bread is no dainty, nor even ordinary man hath his choice, if gay cloathing, and liquariſh tooth after ſack, ſugar, and plums lick not away his bread too faſt, all which are but ordinary among thoſe that were not able to bring their owne perſons over at their firſt coming; there are not many Towns in the Country, but the poorest perſon in them hath a houſe and land of his own,

and

and bread of his own growing, if not ſome cattel: beſide, fle is now no rare food, beef, pork, and mutton being freque in many houſes, ſo that this poor Wilderneſs hath not one equalized *England* in food, but goes beyoud it in ſome plac for the great plenty of wine and ſugar, which is ordinar ſpent, apples, pears, and quince tarts inſtead of their form Pumpkin Pies, Poultry they have plenty, and great rarity, a in their feaſts have not forgotten the Engliſh faſhion of ſt ring up their appetites with variety of cooking their foo and notwithſtanding all this great and almoſt miracule work of the Lord, in providing for his people in this barr deſart, yet are there here (as in other places) ſome that u theſe good creatures of God to exceſs, and others to hoard in a wretched and miſerable manner, pinch themſelves a their children with food, and will not taſt of the good cre tures God hath given for that end, but cut Church and Co monwealth as ſhort alſo: Let not ſuch think to eſcape t Lords hand with as little a ſtroke, as the like do in other p ces.

Secondly, For rayment, our cloth hath not been cut ſho as but of late years the traders that way have encreaſed ſuch a number, that their ſhops have continued full all t year long, all one *England*; beſides the Lord hath been pl ſed to encreaſe ſheep extraordinarily of late, hemp and f here is great plenty, hides here are more for the number persons then in *England*; and for cloth, here is and would materials enough to make it; but the Farmers deem it bet for their profit to put away their cattel and corn for cloa ing, then to ſet upon making of cloth; if the Mercha trade be not kept on foot, they fear greatly their corne a cattel will lye in their hands: aſſuredly the plenty of cloa ing hath cauſed much exceſs of late in thoſe perſons, w have clambered with exceſs in wages for their work, but ſ ing it will be the theam of our next diſcourſe, after the bi are ſetled, it may be here omitted.

Further, the Lord hath been pleaſed to turn all the w wams, huts, and hovels the Engliſh dwelt in at their firſt co ing, into orderly, fair, and well-built houſes, well furniſ

ma

any of them, together with Orchards filled with goodly it trees, and gardens with variety of flowers: There are pposed to be in the *Mattachusets* Government at this day, er a thousand acres of land planted for Orchards and Gar-ns, besides their fields are filled with garden fruit, there be-g, as is supposed in this Colony, about fifteen thousand a-es in tillage, and of cattel about twelve thousand neat, and out three thousand sheep: Thus hath the Lord incouraged s people with the encrease of the general, although many rticulars are outed, hundreds of pounds, and some thou-nds, yet are there many hundreds of labouring men, who d not enough to bring them over, yet now worth scores, d some hundreds of pounds; to be sure the Lord takes no-ce of all his talents, and will call to accompt in time: This ief survey of things will be of good use when time serves, mean time you shall understand,

---

Chap. XXII.

f the manner of planting Towns and Churches in N. E. *and in particular of the Church and Town at* Wooburn, *being the three and twentieth Church of Christ in the* Mattachusets *Government.*

THere was a Town and Church erected called *Wooburn*, this present year, but because all the action of this wan-ering people meet with great variety of censures, the Author vill in this Town and Church set down the manner how this eople have populated their Towns, and gathered their Chur-hes, that the reverend Mr. *Rathbone* may be better informed, hen when he wrote his book concerning the Churches of *N. E.* and all others that are experienced in the holy Scriptures, ay lay the actions of *N. E.* to the Rule, and try them by he balance of the Sanctuary, for assuredly they greatly de-fe they may be brought to the light, for great is the truth, nd will prevail, yet have they their errings as well as others, ut yet their imperfections may not blemish the truths of Christ, let them be glorified, and these his people will wil-

lingly

lingly take ſhame to themſelves, wherein they have miſcarried: But to begin, this Town, as all others had its bounds fixed by the General Court, to the contenese of four miles ſquare, (beginning at the end of *Charles Town* bounds) the grant is to ſeven men or good and honeſt report, upon condition, that within two year they erect houſes for habitation thereon, and ſo go on to make a Town thereof, upon the Act of Court; theſe ſeven men have power to give and grant out lands unto any perſons who are willing to take up their dwellings within the ſaid precinct, & to be admitted to al common priviledges of the ſaid Town, giving them ſuch an ample portion, both of Medow and Upland, as their preſent and future ſtock of cattel and hands were like to improve, with eye had to others that might after come to populate the ſaid Town; this they did without any reſpect of perſons, yet ſuch as were exorbitant, and of a turbulent ſpirit, unfit for a civil ſociety they would reject, till they come to mend their manners, ſuch came not to enjoy any freehold: Theſe ſeven men ordered and diſpoſed of the ſtreets of the Town, as might be beſt for improvement of the Land, and yet civil and religious ſociety maintained; to which end thoſe that had land neereſt the place for Sabbath aſſembly, had a leſſer quantity at home, and more farther off to improve for corn, of all kinds; they refuſed not men for their poverty, but according to their ability were helpful to the pooreſt ſort, in building their houſes, and diſtributed to them land accordingly; the pooreſt had ſix or ſeven acres of Medow, and twenty five of Upland, or thereabouts: Thus was this Town populated, to the number of ſixty families, or thereabout, and after this manner are the Towns of *New-England* peopled, the ſituation of this Town is in the higheſt part of the yet peopled land, neere upon the head-ſprings of many conſiderable rivers, or their branches, as the firſt riſe of *Ipſwitch* river, and the riſe of *Shaſhin* river, one of the moſt conſiderable branches of *Merrimeck*, as alſo the firſt riſe of *Miſtick* river and ponds, it is very full of pleaſant ſprings, and great variety of very good water, which the Summers heat cauſeth to be more cooler, and the Winters cold maketh more warmer; their Medows

are

are not large, but lye in divers places to particular dwellings, the like doth their Springs; their Land is very fruitful in many places, although they have no great quantity of plain land in any one place, yet doth their Rocks and Swamps yeeld very good food for cattel; as also they have Mast and Tar for shipping, but the distance of place by land causeth them as yet to be unprofitable, they have great store of iron o're, their meeting-house stands in a small Plain, where four streets meet, the people are very laborious, if not exceeding some of them.

Now to declare how this people proceeded in religious matters, and so consequently all the Churches of Christ planted in *New-England*, when they came once to hopes of being such a competent number of people, as might be able to maintain a Minister, they then surely seated themselves, and not before, it being as unnatural for a right *N. E.* man to live without an able Ministery, as for a Smith to work his iron without a fire; therefore this people that went about placing down a Town, began the foundation-stone, with earnest seeking of the Lords assistance, by humbling of their souls before him in daies of prayer, and imploring his aid in so weighty a work, then they address themselves to attend counsel of the most Orthodox and ablest Christians, and more especially of such as the Lord had already placed in the Ministery, not rashly running together themselves into a Church, before they had hopes of attaining an Officer to preach the Word, and administer the Seals unto them, chosing rather to continue in fellowship with some other Church for their Christian watch over them, till the Lord would be pleased to provide: They after some search meet with a young man named Mr. *Thomas Carter*, then belonging to the Church of Christ at *VVater-Town*, a reverend godly man, apt to teach the sound and wholesome truths of Christ; having attained their desires, in hopes of his coming unto them, were they once joyned in Church-estate, he exercising his gifts of preaching and prayer among them in the mean time, and more especially in a day of fasting and prayer. Thus these godly people interest their affections one with the other, both Minister and people: After

ter this they make ready for the work, and the 24. of the 6. moneth 1642. they assemble together in the morning about eight of the clock; After the reverend Mr. *Syms* had continued in preaching and prayer about the space of four or five houres, the persons that were to joyn in Covenant, openly and professedly before the Congregation, and messengers of divers Neighbour Churches, among whom the reverend Elder of *Boston*, Mr. *Cotton* Mr. *VVillon*, Mr. *Allen* of *Charles-Town*, Mr. *Shepheard* of *Cambridg*, Mr. *Dunster* of *VVater-Town*, Mr. *Knowles* of *Deadham*, Mr. *Allen* of *Roxbury*, Mr. *Eliot* of *Dorchester*, Mr. *Mather*: As also it is the duty of the Magistrates (in regard of the good and peace of the civil Government) to be present, at least some one of them (not only to prevent the disturbance might follow in the Commonwealth by any, who under pretence of Church-Covenant, might bring in again those cursed opinions that caused such commotion in this and the other Colony, to the great dammage of the people) but also to countenance the people of God in so pious a work, that under them they may live a quiet and peaceable life, in all godlinesse and honesty; for this cause was present the honored Mr. *Increase Nowel*, the persons stood forth, and first confessed what the Lord had done for their poor souls, by the work of his Spirit in the preaching of his Word, and Providences, one by one; (and that all might know their faith in Christ was bottomed upon him, as he is revealed in his Word, and that from their own knowledg, they also declare the same, according to that measure of understanding the Lord had given them; the Elders, or any other messengers there present question with them, for the better understanding of them in any points they doubt of, which being done, and all satisfied, they in the name of the Churches to which they do belong, hold out the right hand of fellowship unto them, they declaring their Covenant, in words expressed in writing to this purpose.

Th

The Church-Covenant.

WE that do assemble our selves this day before God and and his people, in an unfeigned desire, to be accepted of him as a Church of the Lord Jesus Christ, according to the Rule of the New-Testament, do acknowledg our selves to be the most unworthy of all others, that we should attain such a high grace, and the most unable of our selves to the performance of any thing that is good, abhorring our selves for all our former defilements in the worship of God, and other wayes, and resting only upon the Lord Jesus Christ for attonement, and upon the power of his grace for the guidance of our whole after course, do here in the name of Christ Jesus, as in the presence of the Lord, from the bottom of our hearts agree together through his grace to give up our selves, first unto the Lord Jesus as our only King, Priest and Prophet, wholly to be subject unto him in all thing, and therewith one unto another, as in a Church-Body to walk together in all the Ordinances of the Gospel, and in all such mutual love and offices thereof, as toward one another in the Lord; and all this, both according to the present light that the Lord hath given us, as also according to all further light, which he shall be pleased at any time to reach out unto us out of the Word by the goodness of his grace, renouncing also in the same Covenant all errors and Schismes, and whatsoever by-wayes that are contrary to the blessed rules revealed in the Gospel, and in particular the inordinate love and seeking after the things of the world; every Church hath not the same for words, for they are not for a form of words.

The 22. of the 9. moneth following Mr. *Thomas Carter* was ordained Pastor, in presence of the like Assembly. After he had exercised in preaching and prayer the greater part of the day, two persons in the name of the Church laid their hands upon his head, and said, We ordain thee *Thomas Carter* to be Pastor unto this Church of Christ; then one of the Elders

Priest, being desired of the Church, continued in prayer unto the Lord for his more especial assistance of this his servant in his work, being a charge of such weighty importance, as is the glory of God and salvation of souls, that the very thought would make a man to tremble in the sense of his own inability to the work: The people having provided a dwelling house, built at the charge of the Town in general, welcomed him unto them with joy, that the Lord was pleased to give them such a blessing, that their eyes may see their Teachers: After this there were divers added to the Church daily; after this manner the person desirous to joyn with the Church, cometh to the Pastor, and makes him acquainted therewith, declaring how the Lord hath been pleased to work his conversion, who discerning hopes of the persons faith in Christ, although weak, yet if any appear, he is propounded to the Church in general for their approbation, touching his godly life and conversation, and then by the Pastor and some brethren heard again, who make report to the Church of their charitable approving of the person; but before they come to joyn with the Church, all persons within the Towne have publike notice of it, then publikely he declares the manner of his conversion, and how the Lord hath been pleased by the hearing of his Word preached, and the work of his Spirit in the inward parts of his soul, to bring him out of that natural darknes, which all men are by nature in and under, as also the measure of knowledg the Lord hath been pleased to indue him withal. And because some men cannot speak publikely to edification through bashfulnes, the less is required of such, and women speak not publikely at all, for all that is desired, is to prevent the polluting the blessed Ordinances of Christ by such as walk scandalously, and that men and women do not eat and drink their own condemnation, in not discerning the Lords body: After this manner were many added to this Church of Christ, and those 7. that joyned in Church-fellowship at first, are now encreased to 74. persons, or therabout; of which, according to their own confession, as is supposed, the greater part having been converted by the preaching of the Word in *N. E.* by which may appear the powerful effica-

cy

of the word of Christ in the mouth of his Ministers, and at this way of Christ in joyning together in Church-Covenant, is not only for building up of souls in Christ, but also for converting of sinners, & bringing them out of the natural condition to be ingrafted into Christ, for if this one Church have so many, then assuredly there must be a great number comparatively throughout all the Churches in the Country. After this manner have the Churches of Christ had their beginning and progress hitherto, the Lord continue & encrease them the world throughout: The Pastor of this Church hath much encreased with the encreasings of Christ Jesus, of whose labours in the Lord as followeth.

C*Arter*, Christ hath his wayes thee taught, and them,
Hast not with-held his Word, but unto all,
With's word of power dost cause stout souls to bow,
And meek as Lambs before thy Christ to fall:
The antient truths, plain paths they fit thee best,
Thy humble heart all haughty acts puts by,
The lowly heart, Christ learns his lovely hest,
Thy meekness shews thy Christ to thee is nigh;
Yet must thou shew Christ makes his bold to be,
As Lions, that none may his truths tread down,
Pastoral power he hath invested thee
With, it maintain, least he on thee do frown:
Thy youth thou hast in this *New-England* spent,
Full sixteen years to water, plant, and prune,
Trees taken up, and for that end here sent,
Thy end's with Christ, with's Saints his praises tune.

This year the General Court made an order about preparing houses for Salt-peter, that there might be powder made in the Country, but as yet it hath not gone on.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of the uniting of the four English Colonies in N, E. and the battel fought between the Narraganſets, *and* Mawhiggins.

THe yeare 1653. the honored *John Winthrop* Eſquire was choſen Governor again, and *John Endicut* Eſquire Deputy Governour; the freemen added were about 87. this year the four Colonies, the *Mattachuſets*, *Plimoth*, *Canecticu*, and *New-haven*, taking into conſideration the many Nations of *Dutch*, *Zewes*, and *French*, that were on either ſide of them as alſo how apt they were to lay claim to lands they never had any right unto, but only a paper poſſeſſion of their own framing; and further, that the inhumane and barbarous Indians would be continually quarrelling and contending, could they ſee any hopes of prevailing, together with the conceſtion begun in our Native country, and withal, that although providence had caſt them into four ſeveral Colonies, yet Religion had already united them, coming over all for one and the ſame end. Hereupon by Commiſſioners ſent from the ſeveral colonies, they concluded a firm confederation to aſſiſt each other in all juſt and lawful war, bearing an equal proportion in the charge, according to the number of perſons inhabiting each colony; but herein the *Mattachuſet* had the worſt end of the ſtaff, in bearing as much, or more charge, then all the other three, and yet no greater number of Commiſſioners to negotiate and judg in tranſacting of affairs concerning peace and war, then the leaſt of the other, and any one of the other as likely to involve them in a chargeable war with the naked Natives, that have neither plunder, nor caſt to bear the charge of it, nay hitherto the moſt hath riſen from the leſſer colonies, yet are the *Mattachuſets* far from deſerting them, eſteeming them highly, ſo long as their Governments maintain the ſame purity in Religion with themſelves for indeed this is that they have ſpent their whole travel for and therefore if *Plimoth*, or any of the other ſhall draw back herein, the chiefeſt end of their confederacy would be loſt for ſhould it come to paſs (that in venturing their perſon

and

and estates so far for purity in the Ordinances and Discipline of Christ) they should lose the purity in doctrine, all their cost and labour were lost: This confederacy being finished, there came in certain Indian Sachims, and submitted to the English Government, as *Pomham*, and *Soccanamacoh* to the *Massachusets*; also *Miantonemo* and *Uncas*; but between these two latter Princes arose a very hot quarrel, the English seeking by all means to quench it, but could not, it being, as is supposed, fomented by a small company of vacabond English, who were then for their crimes banished from their own complices at Rhode Island, the Ringleader of them, being one *Samuel Gorton*, by whose mean they were drawn into damnable errors,: These *Gortonists*, as is said, lent *Miantonemo* a Corslet for safeguard of his own person in the following fight, and he promised each of them a *Mamchiggin* papoose, which was the people. *Uncas* was Prince of *For*, although *Miantonemo* were the more potent Prince by far, and a very austere man, yet did he chuse rather to take *Uncasses* life away by treachery if he could; and to that end hired a young man of the *Pegod* Nation to murther him, as is supposed, for in an evening, when it was very neer dark, this Sachim passing without any of his Retinue, from one wigwam to another, was suddainly shot through the arm with an arrow, seeing not whence it came; but yet recovering the Palace he was passing unto, without receiving any more shot, he had the arrow drawn forth, and the wound cured in a short time after; the young man, who was suspected to have done the fact, having great store of Wampumpeage, about this time being questioned how he came by it, could give no good accompt, which encreased the suspition the more, that he had received it as hire from *Miantonemo* for this fact; and hereupon the young man fled unto him, which caused *Uncas* to complain to the English, who having the hearing of the case at a General Court holden at *Boston*, at the same time *Miantonemo* coming thither with his attendance, and sending one of his Councellors to follow the matter in hand, the young man was examined in presence of *Miantonemo*, being, as is supposed, tutored by him, he told this tale, that while he was in

in *Uncasses* Court, on a day travelling alone by a thick swamp, *Uncas* call'd him out of the swamp, charging him to be true to him, in declaring to the English what he required to him, which was, that he should say he had been hired of *Miantonemo* to kill him, and to make his matter good, quoth the young man, he then cut his arm on the top, and underneath with the flint of his Gun, to make men think he had beene shot through with an arrow: This tale made the English more to suspect *Miantonemo* then before; and therefore desired to examine the young man alone, which he was very unwilling they should do; but upon further examination alone, they did verily believe this young man had done the fact, yet for present they let him depart with *Miantonemo*, advising him to send him home to *Uncas*, but by the way he instead of returning him home, cut off his head, and forthwith gathered an army of about a thousand men to fight with *Uncas*, who feared not to meet him in the field with half the number; the battel being come within shot one of another, with a great hubbub they let their long shafts fly one at another, and after came to a close with other weapons, till the Narrowgansets multitude being sorely distressed by the *Mawhiggins* valour, they began to cry out *Wammeck*, which is to say, enough: *Uncas* like a stout commander, with others of his bloud-royal that were about him, sought to perfect his victory, by possessing himself with the person of their Prince, which he effected, by putting his Life-guard to flight, and taking hold on the Sachim himself, carried him victoriously away to the Town of *Hartford*, neer the which he kept his residence at this time, and then made the English acquainted there with his noble design, and desired to have the advise of the united colonies what to do with his prisoner; the *Narrowgansets* sought to ransom him home, being much abashed, that so mean a Prince as *Uncas* was should scape scotfree with such a victory; but the honored Commissioners have had proof of *Miantonemo's* treachery, both toward this Prince that had him in possession, and toward the English in falsifying his promise with them; they advised *Uncas* to put him to death, but withall, that he should forbear to exercise

any

any barbarous cruelty toward him, as their manner is, and by this means the Englisſh prevented another war, both with Englisſh and Indians, which was very neer joyning in battel. Not many years after, the Indian Sachim upon this adviſe, cauſed *Miantonemo* to be led forth, as if he would remove him to a more ſafer place of cuſtody, and by the way cauſed him to be executed; the Indians, his kindred and ſubjects, were much grieved at his death, yet took it quietly at preſent, but the leſſer Princes, his Neighbours, rather rejoyced, he having tyrannized over them, and enforced them to ſubject to his will, right or wrong.

CHAP. XXIV.

Of the proceeding of certain perſons called Gortoniſts, *againſt the united Colonies, and more eſpecially againſt the* Mattachuſets, *and of the blaſphemous doctrines broached by* Gorton, *deluding a company of poor ignorant people therewith.*

FOr not long before, thoſe perſons that we ſpake of, who incouraged *Miantonemo* to this war, and with the help of him enforced *Pomham* and *Socananocho* to ſet their hands to a writing which theſe *Gortoniſts* had framad, to take their land from them; but the poor Sachems, when they ſaw they were thus gull'd of their land, would take no pay for it, but complained to the *Mattachuſets* Government, to whom they had ſubjected themſelves and their lands: As alſo at this time certain Engliſh inhabiting thoſe parts, with the Indians good leave and liking, deſired to have the benefit of the *Mattachuſets* Government, as *Dover* formerly had done, to whom this Government condeſcended, in hope they might encreaſe to ſuch a competent number of godly Chriſtians, as that there might be a Church of Chriſt planted, the place being capable to entertain them in a comfortable meaſure for outward accommodation, but hitherto it hath been hindred by theſe *Gortoniſts*, and one of *Plimoth*, who forbad our people to plant there: Theſe perſon thus ſubmitting, came at this time

also to complain of certain wrongs done them by these *Gortonists*, who had thus incroached, and began to build on the Indians land; upon these complaints, the Governor and the honored Mr. *Dudly* issue forth their Warrant, to summon them to appear, they being then about five or six persons, without any means for instructing them in the wayes of God, and without any civil Government to keep them in civility or humanity, which made them to cast off most proudly and disdainfully any giving accompt to man of their actions, no not to the chiefest in authority, but returned back most insolent, scornful, scurrilous speeches. After this, the Government of the *Mattachusets* sent two messengers on purpose to perswade them to come and have their cause heard, allowing them like justice in their cause with any other; but *Samuel Gorton* being the ring-leader of the rout, was so full gorged with dreadful and damnable errors (the which he had newly insnared these poor souls with) that soon after the departure of the messenger, he layes aside all civil justice, and instead of returning answer to the matter in hand, he vomits up a whole paper full of beastly stuff, one while scoffing and deriding the ignorance of all beside himself, that think *Abraham*, *Isaac*, &c. could be saved by Christ Jesus, who was after born of the Virgin *Mary*, another while mocking at the Sacraments of Baptism and the Lords Supper, in an opprobrious manner, deriding at the Elements Christ was pleased to institute them in, and calling them Negromancers that administer them at all; and in a word, all the Ordinances of the Gospel abominable Idolatry he called, and likened them to *Molock*, and the Star of the Idol *Rempham*; his paper was thrust full of such filthiness, that no Christian ear could hear them without indignation against them, and all was done by him in a very scornful and deriding manner, upbraiding all that use them; in the mean time magnifying his own glorious light, that could see himself to be personally Christ, God-Man, and so all others that would believe as he did: This paper he got to be subscribed, with about twelve or thirteen hands, his number of Disciples being encreased, for assuredly the man had a very glosing tongue, but yet very deceitful, for when he had

but

but a few with him, then he cried out against all such as would rule over their own species, affirming, that the Scripture termeth such to be Gods of the world, or divels; but after his return from *England*, having received some incouragement from such as could not look into the depth of his deceits, being done at so large a distance, he getting into favour again with those, who had formerly whipt him out of their company, turns divel himself; the godly Governors of the *Massachusets* seeing this blasphemous Bull of his, resolved to send forty persons well-appointed with weapons of war for apprehending of him, who accordingly, with some waiting, did apprehend him and the rest of his company, except two or three which ran away without any hurt to any person, although he gave out very big words, threatning them with bloud and death so soon as they set foot on the ground, and yet this brazenface'd deceiver published in print the great fear their women were put unto by the souldiers, whereas they came among them day by day, and had it not been that they intended peaceably to take them, they would never have waited so long upon their worships as they did, but being apprehended, and standing to that they had written (yet would they willingly have covered it with some shifts if they could) the greatest punishment they had, was to be confin'd to certain Towns for a few moneths, and afterward banished; but to be sure there be them in *N. E.* that have Christ Jesus and his blessed Ordinances in such esteem, that the Lord assisting, they had rather lose their lives, then suffer them to be thus blasphemed if they can help it; and whereas some have favoured them, and endeavoured to bring under blame such as have been zealous against their abominable doctrines, the good God be favourable unto them, and prevent them from coming under the like blame with *Ahab*, yet they remain in their old way, and there's somewhat to be considered in it to be sure, that in these daies, when all look for the fall of Antichrist, such detestable doctrines should be upheld, and persons suffered, that exceed the Beast himself for blasphemy, and this to be done by those that would be counted Reformers, and such as seek the utter subversion of Antichrist.

To end this year, or rather at the beginning of it, the Lord caused another Earthquake, much less then the former, it was on the fifth of the first moneth called March in the morning.

CHAP. XXV.

Of the planting the twenty fourth Church of Christ at the Town of Readding, *and the twenty fifth Church of Christ in the* Mattachusets *Government, called* Wenham.

THis year was chosen to the place of Governor *John Endicut* Esquire, and *Iohn Winthrope* Esquire Deputy Governour; the number of freemen added about 145. this year.

The Town of Readding had her foundation stone laid about this time, this and the Town of Wooburn were like the twins in the womb of *Tamar*, Readding thrusting forth the hand first, but *Wooburn* came first to the birth, this Town is well watered, and scituate about a great pond, besides it hath two mills, the one a Saw-mill, the other a Corn-mill, which stand on two several streams; it hath not been so fruitful for children as her Sister hath, her habitation is fallen in the very center of the country, they are well stocked with cattel, for the number of people they have they gathered into a church, and ordained a Pastor from among themselves; at the same time, a young man of good abilities to preach the Word, and of a very humble behaviour, named Mr. *Green*, he having finished his course, departed this life not long after, whose labours are with the Lord; after him succeeded in the place one Mr. *Hoph*, a young man, one of the first fruits of *N. E.* a man studious to promote the truths of Christ, they are both remembered in this following verse.

ON earths bed thou at noon hast laid thy head,
You that for Christ (as *Green*) here toyl have taken,
When nature fails, then rest it in earths dead,
Till Christ by's word with glory thee awaken.

Young

Young *Hoph* thou must be second to this man,
In field incounter, with Christ's foes shalt thou
Stand up, and take his bright sword in thy hand,
Error cut down, and make stout stomacks bow;
Green's gone before, thy warfare s now begun,
And last it may to see *Romes* Babel fall;
By weakest means Christ mighty works hath done,
Keep footing fast, till Christ thee hence do call.

The next Town and church of Christ planted in this colony, was between Salem and Ipswitch, Salem the eldest of all the Sisters was very helpful to this her little Sister, nourishing her up in her own bosom, till she came of age, being beneficial to her besides, in giving her a good portion of Land; this Town is called *Wenham*, and is very well watered, as most in-land Towns are, the people live altogether upon husbandry, *New-England* having train'd up great store to this occupation, they are encreased in cattel, and most of them live very well, yet are they no great company; they were some good space of time there before they gathered into a Church-body, the godly and reverend Mr. *John Fisk* went thither with them, at first setting down as a planter among them, yet withal he became helpful in preaching the Word unto them, when they were but a few in number, they afterward call'd him to the office of a Pastor, with whom he now remains, labouring in the Word and Doctrine, with great industry of whom, it may be thus said:

TO wade through toyl of Wilderness, thou hast
Doubled thy work, thy wages treble are,
Christ hath thee call'd, and in his vineyard plac't,
He'l bear thee up above all fainting far.
Sions strong Mount must now again be built,
Thy faith, oh *Fisk*, the Lord hath holpen much;
With dreadful sighs the Prelats power hath spilt,
All pride he'l stain by his almighty touch.

His

His truths unstain'd by liberty keep thou,
To please the most, authority must fall,
What Christ hath given, it safely keep with you,
Till he to thee for thine accompt do call.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of the military affairs, the forts of Boston, *and* Charles, *the Castle erected anew by the six neerest Towns, with the manner of putting the Country in a posture of war, to be ready upon all occasions.*

THese souldiers of Christ Jesus, having made a fair retreat from their Native country hither, and now being come to a convenient station, resolved to stand it out (the Lord assisting) against all such as should come to rob them of their priviledges, which the Lord Christ had purchased for them at a very high rate, and now out of the riches of his grace was minded to give them, yet would he have them follow him into this Wilderness for it: although the chiefest work of these select bands of Christ, was to mind their spiritual warfare, yet they knew right well the Temple was surrounded with walls and bulworks, and the people of God in re-edifying the same, did prepare to resist their enemies with weapons of war, even while they continued building: This people no less diligent to make use of such means as the Lord afforded them, ordered and decreed, That all the souldiers belonging to the 26. bands in the *Mattachusets* Government, should be exercised and drill'd eight daies in a yeare, and whosoever should absent himself, except it were upon unavoidable occasion, should pay 5.s. for every daies neglect, there are none exempt, unless it be a few timerous persons that are apt to plead infirmity, if the Church chuse them not for Deacons, or they cannot get to serve some Magistrate or Minister; but assuredly the generality of this people are very forward for feats of war, and many have spent their time and estates to further this work; the Town of *Boston* hath afforded many active, *Charles-Town* hath not been inferiour, unless it be in

number

umber: This year the Court appointed certain persons to bend their skill in putting the people possessing this deso-te desart in a ready posture of drawing their forces toge-her, upon any suddain accident that might befall them, to anage, guide, order, and direct all things, as may be best r the good of the whole, they being a poor and mean peo-le, laboured to avoid high titles, yet order they knew was cessary, therefore ordained they only one General Officer time of war, under the name of Major General, the Go-ernor and Magistrates for the time being are the standing ouncel for peace or war, and either they or the General ourt may appoint any to the office of a General; the first ajor-General was the much honored *Tho. Dudly* Esquire, hose faithfulness and great zeal and love to the truths of hrist, caused the people to chuse him to this office, although were far stricken in years; the Government is divided into ur Counties, which to shew, they would their posterity ould mind whence they came, they have named, *Suffolk*, *Middlesex*, *Essex*, and *Northfolk*, each containing a Regi-ent, over whom, the chief Commander is only a Serjeant-jor; the first chosen to this office over the Regiment of *ffolk*, was Major *Edw. Gibbons*, who hath now the office Major General also, he is a man of a resolute spirit, bold a Lion, being wholly tutor'd up in *N.E.* Discipline, very ge-rous, and forward to promote all military matters; his rts are well contrived, and batteries strong, and in good pair, his great Artillery well mounted, and cleanly kept, half non, Culverins and Sakers, as also field-pieces of brass ve-ready for service, his own company led by *Capt. Lieutenant rag*, are very compleat in their arms, and many of them ciplin'd in the military garden, beside their ordinary train-gs; the Captains under him, are *Capt. Humphry Atherton*, the Band of *Dechester*; a very lively couragious man, with stout and valiant Lieutenant *Clapes*, strong for the truth; the Band of *Roxbury*, *Capt. Prichard*, and Ensign *Johnson*; the Band of *Waymoth*, *Capt. Perkins*, and his proper and ive Lieutenant *Torry*; of the Band of *Hingham*, *Capt. Bo-an Allen*; of the Band of *Dedham*, *Capt. Eliazer Lusher*,

one

one of a nimble and active ſpirit, ſtrongly affected to the way of truth; of the Band of *Braintree*, *Capt. William Tinge*, the belong to the Regiment of *Suffolk*; the firſt Serjeant-Major choſen to order the Regiment of *Eſſex*, was Major *Rebe Sedgwick*, ſtout and active in all feats of war, nurſt up in *Londons* Artillery garden, and furthered with fifteen years experience in *N.E.* exact theory, beſides the help of a very good head-piece, being a frequent inſtructer of the moſt martial troops of our Artillery men; and although *Charles Town* (which is the place of his own companies reſidence) do not advantage ſuch o're-topping batteries as *Boſton* doth, yet hath he erected his to very good purpoſe, inſomuch that all ſhipping that comes in, either to *Boſton* or *Charles-Town*, must needs face it all the time of their coming in; the coſt he hath been at, in helping on the Diſcipline of his Regiment hath profited much; his own company are led by the faithful Capt. Lievtenant *Francis Norton*, (a man of a bold and cheerful ſpirit) being well diſciplin'd, and an able man; the companies under his ſervice have not all Captains at preſent. *VVater-Town* Band was led by Capt. *Ienings*, who is ſuppoſed to be now in *England*, his Lievtenant remains *Hugh Maſon*; the band of *Cambridg* led by Capt. *George Cook*, now Colonel *Cook* in the wars of *Ireland*, but now led by Capt. *Daniel Gookin*, a very forward man to advance Marſhal diſcipline, and withal the truths of Chriſt; the Band of *Concord* led by Capt. *Simon Willard*, being a Kentiſh ſouldier, as is Capt. *Goggin*; the Band of *Sudbury* lately led by Capt. *Pelham*, who is in *England* at preſent, his Lievtenant remains, *Edm. Goodinow*; the band of *Wooburn* led by another Kentiſh Captain; the Band of *Reading* led by Lievtenant *VValker*; the Band of *Malden*, being as yet a young Town who have not choſen their Officers, are led by Mr. *Joſeph Hill*. Theſe belong to the Regiment of *Middleſex*, the two Counties of *Eſſex* and *Northfolk* are for preſent joyned in one Regiment, their firſt Major, who now commandeth this Regiment, is the proper and valiant Major *Daniel Deniſon*, a good ſouldier, and of a quick capacity, not inferiour to any other of theſe chief Officers, his own company are well in-

ſtructed

ſtructed in feats of warlike activity, his Capt. Lievtenant departed this life ſome few years ſince, a godly and faithful man, which is indeed the fountain of true validity; named Mr. *VVhitingam*; the Band of *Salem* led by the bold and worthy Capt. *VVilliam Hauthorn*, a man of an undaunted courage, with his Lievtenant *Lothrope*; the Band of *Lyn* led by the honored and much reſpected Capt. *Robert Bridges*, who is alſo a Magiſtrate, being endued with able parts, and forward to improve them for the glory of God and his peoples good; the Band of *Nuberry* led by Capt. *Gerſh*, with his antient and experienced Lievtenant *Greenlife*; the Band of *Rowly* led by Capt. *Brigham*; the Bands of *Gloceſter*, *VVenham* and *Andover*, have not yet made choice of Superiour Officers, being in their minority; theſe are the Bands of the Regiment of *Eſſex*, to the which are joyned the three Bands of the County of *Northfolk*, *Salisbury*, *Hampton*, and *Haverhil*: there are none choſen to office in any of theſe Bands, but ſuch as are freemen, ſuppoſed to be men indued with faith in Chriſt Jeſus, wherefore let all that truly love the Lord Chriſt ſay with *Deborah*, My heart is toward the Governors of *Iſrael*, that offered themſelves willingly among the people, their Officers are choſen by the major Vote of the ſouldiers, being inſtalled into their place by the Major of their Regiment: There are of late a very gallant horſe-troop liſted, it being a frequent thing with the Officers of the foot companies, to turn Troopers, (when their own Regiment is not in exerciſe) for encouragement of others, the Regiments are exerciſed once a year by turnes; they are alſo very obſervant to keep their armes in good order; each ſouldier is to keep conſtantly by him powder, bullet, and match, beſides every Town is inoyned to have a common ſtock in like manner, as alſo the country have their ammunition exactly looked unto, by Surveyor General *Johnſon*, one very well qualified for the work, ready at all times to put the General Court in mind of keeping their ſtore renued by freſh ſupply, and to ſay right, ſome particular perſons may be penurious in laying out their eſtates upon ammunition, but the general of Officers and ſouldiers are very generous that way; the reverend Doctor *VVil-*

son gave bountifully for the furthering this Wilderness-work the which was expended upon great Artillery, his gift being a thousand pound, beside many persons that came over, the Lord was pleased to indow with a large portion of the things of this life, who were not backward liberally to dispose of it to procure means of defence, ann to that end there was a castle built on an Island, upon the passage into the *Mattachu... Bay*, wholly built at first by the country in general, but by reason the country affords no Lime, but what is burnt of Oyster shels, it fell to decay in a few years after, which made many of the Towns that lay out of the defence thereof to desert it although their safety (under God) was much involved in the constant repair and well-mannaging thereof; hereupon the next six Towns take upon them to rebuild it at their proper cost and charges, the rest of the country upon the finishing thereof gave them a small matter toward it; upon this there was a Captain ordained, and put in possession thereof by the country, having a yearly Stipend allowed him for himself and his souldiers, which he is to keep in a constant readiness upon the Island, being about eight acres of ground; the Castle is build on the North-East of the Island, upon a rising hill, very advantageous to make many shot at such ships as shall offer to enter the Harbor without their good leave and liking, the Commander of it is one Captain *Davenport*, a man approved for his faithfulness, courage and skill, the Master Canoneer is an active Ingineer; also this Castle hath cost about four thousand pounds, yet are not this poor pilgrim people weary of maintaining it in good repair, it is of very good use to awe any insolent persons, that putting confidence in their ship and sails, shall offer any injury to the people, or contemn the Government, they have certain signals of alarums, which suddainly spread through the whole country; were there but one Town more erected in this Government, which were one and thirty, it would joyn all the Towns in the same neighbourly together, excepting Spring-field. Thus are these people with great diligence provided for these daies of war, hoping the day is at hand wherein the Lord will give Antichrist the double of all her doings, and therefore they have

nurse

urſed up in their Artillery garden ſome who have ſince been
ſed, as inſtruments to begin the work; but that which gives
he greateſt hope concerning this particular, is this, that theſe
mes afford more ſouldiers depending on the Lord Chriſt
hrough faith for deliverance and true valour, then any age
nce Antichriſt began to fall, without which, all theſe prepa-
ations were but as ſo many traps and ſnares to catch a people
n, and to the which theſe Commanders and ſouldiers are dai-
y exhorted, and therefore let all people know that deſire the
ownfal of *New-England*, they are not to war againſt a peo-
le only exerciſed in feats of war, but men who are experien-
ed in the deliverances of the Lord from the mouth of the Li-
n, and the paw of the Bear; and now woe be to you, when
he ſame God that directed the ſtone to the forehead of the
hiliſtine; guides every bullet that is ſhot at you, it matters
ot for the whole rabble of Antichriſt on your ſide, the God
f Armies is for us a refuge high. *Shela.*

VVonder working Providence OF Sions SAVIOUR in New-England.

BOOK III.

CONTAINING

The passages of Gods providence toward this wandering Race of *Jaacobites* in these latter seven years, from the year 1645. till toward the latter end of 51.

CHAP. I.

Of planting the twenty sixth Church of Christ at the Town of Haverhil, *and of preparation for a second war with the* Indians.

THis year that antient, honored and trusty souldier of the truth, *Thom. Dudly* Esquire was chosen Governor, and the honored *John Winthrop* Esquire was chosen Deputy Governor, *John Endicott* Esquire to the office of Major-General. You have heard in the former book of

f the fortifying of the Castle, and placing a Captain therein, which was not finished till this year; the number of freemen dded was 56. The Town of Haverhil was built much about his time, lying higher up then *Salisbury*, upon the fair and arge river of Merrimeck: the people are wholly bent to improve their labour in tilling the earth, and keeping of cattel, whose yearly encrease incourages them to spend their days n those remote parts, the constant penetrating farther into his Wilderness, hath caused the wild and uncouth woods to be fil'd with frequented wayes, and the large rivers to be over-laid with Bridges passeable, both for horse and foot; this Town is of a large extent, supposed to be ten miles in length, here being an over-weaning desire in most men after Medow and, which hath caused many towns to grasp more into their hands then they could afterward possibly hold; the people are laborious in the gaining the goods of this life, yet are they not unmindful also of the chief end of their coming hither, namely, to be made partakers of the blessed Ordinances of Christ, that their souls might be refreshed with the continual income of his rich grace, to which end they gathered into a Church-body, and called to office the reverend M. *VVard*, son to the former named M. *VVard* of Ipswitch,

With mind resolv'd run out thy race at length,
Yound *Ward* begin whereas thy father left,
Left hath he not, but breaths for further strength,
Nor thou, nor he, are yet of hope bereft:
Fruit of thy labours thou shalt see so much,
The righteous shall hear of it, and rejoyce
When Babel falls by Christ's almighty touch,
All's folk shall praise him with a cheerful voice.
They prosper shall that Sions building mind,
Then *Ward* cease not with toyl her stones to lay,
For great is he thee to this work assign'd,
Whose pleasure is, heavens Crown shall be thy pay.

This year, although divers Indian Sachems not long before had

had desired to subject themselves and lands unto this Government, yet the sons of old *Canonicus* having not inherited their fathers prudence, with his subjects and land, fell to hot contention with their own neighbours and native inhabitants, although they were forbidden by the united Colonies, and prosecuted so, that they would not stick to wage war with the English also, which the Commissioners perceiving, they raised an Army of horse and foot out of the Colonies, and appointed as Commander in chief over them Major-General *Edward Gibbons*; the reverend Mr. *Tompson*, one of the Elders of the Church at *Braintree* was to accompany them, and to preach the Word of God unto them, during the time of the war; but the Indians hearing of this preparation against them, sent a certain number of their chief Nobility to treat with the Commissioners of the united Colonies about a peace, who then sitting at *Boston* gave them audience, the *Indians* coming into their presence, could speak no more English, but peace, peace; the *English* were very desirous of an opportunity to shew them mercy, and yet would they should not despise them, in gaining it upon such easie terms, as might cause them to move war again, and therefore allotted them to pay some part of the charge of the war intended, and therefore appointed them to give four of their sons for hostages till they had wholly paid it; the *Indians* gladly accepted of the terms, and accordingly brought their children. Here the Reader should be minded of the admirable acts of the Lord Christ in awing these multitudes of Heathens, for they were the most populous of any that are in these parts; but it is reserved for another place in this history, the *Indians* being slow in their performance, had their hostages returned home before the Wapom was paid, yet their two Princes *Pesicus* and *Mexanimo*, did upon the sending certain armed men to demand the remainder, send the sum demanded.

CHAP.

Chap. II.

Of the planting of the twenty seventh Church of Christ at the Town called Springfield, *and of the earnest seeking the the Lord by all the Churches of* N. E. *for his gracious assistance in the work of Reformation.*

ABout this time one Mr. *Pinchin*, sometime a Magistrate, having out of desire to better his estate, by trading with the *Indians*, setled himself very remote (from all the Churches of Christ in the *Mattachusets* Government) upon the river of Canectico, yet under their Government, he having some godly persons resorting unto him, they there erected a Town and Church of Christ, calling it Springfield, it lying upon this large navigable river, hath the benefit of transporting their goods by water, and also fitly seated for a Bever trade with the Indians, till the Merchants encreased so many, that it became little worth, by reason of their out-buying one another, which hath caused them to live upon husbandry; this Town is mostly built along the river side, and upon some little rivelets of the same: There hath of late been more then one or two in this Town greatly suspected of witchcraft, yet have they used much diligence, both for the finding them out, and for the Lords assisting them against their witchery, yet have they, as is supposed, bewitched not a few persons, among whom two of the reverend Elders children: These people inhabiting this Town, having gathered into a Church-body, called to the office of a Pastor the reverend Mr. *Moxon*, who remaineth with them at this very day, of whom as followeth.

AS thou with strong and able parts art made,
Thy person stout with toyl and labour shall,
With help of Christ through difficulties wade,
Then spend for him, spare not thy self at all.
When errors crowd close to thy self, and friends
Take up truths sword, trifle not time, for why
Christ call'd his people hither, for these ends,
To tell the world that Babels fall is nigh;

And

And that his Churches through the world ſhall ſpread,
Maugre the might of wicked men aud devils,
Then *Moxon* thou need'ſt not at all to dread,
But be aveng'd on Satan for his evils,
Thy Lord Chriſt will under thy feet him tread.

This year the great troubles in our native country encreaſ
ing, and that hearing prophane *Eſau* had muſtered up all th
Bands he could make to come againſt his brother *Iacob*, the
wandering race of Jacobites deemed it now high time to im
plore the Lord for his eſpecial aid in this time of their deepe
diſtreſs, and the rather being incouraged hereunto from fo
mer deliverances and wonderful mercies received, the whic
they now preſented before the Lord with the ſeveral bran
ches, and inlarged bounties thereof to refreſh their frozen a
fections, and move a melting heart in their barren breſts, tha
began to dry up with a lazy lethargy, and therefore thruſtin
themſelves on to the work by the loving invitation of tha
godly Government the Lord in his mercy had peaceably pla
ced among them, each Church in their own proper plac
meeting together in daies of ſolemn ſeeking of the Lord
pleaſing countenance in Chriſt (the Lord in his mercy helpin
them) after a ſerious acknowledgment of their own unwor
thineſs, by reaſon of their ſinful provocations of the Lord t
anger againſt them aggravated, in that they were committe
immediately upon the receipt of a multitude of marvellou
mercies, they acknowledg unto the Lord in the audience o
the great Congregation the manner of his wonderful provi
dence extended toward them, that as *Iacob* profeſſes, I cam
over this Jordan with my ſtaff, and now have I gotten tw
Bands; ſo they came over this boyſterous billow-boyling O
cean, a few poor ſcattered ſtones newly raked out of the heap
of rubbiſh, and thou Lord Chriſt haſt now ſo far exalted them
as to lay them ſure in thy Sion, a building, to be the wonde
of the world, orderly are they placed in five and forty ſevera
Churches, and that in a Wilderneſs, where civility ſcarce eve
took place, much leſs any Religion, and now to the Lord ear
neſtly they cry to be delivered from the cruel hands of thoſ
tha

that would destroy both young and old, the bird and her young together, and as *Iacobs* fear was, the seed of Christs Church in the posterity of Israel should be cut off, and therefore pleaded the promise of the Lord in the multiplying of his seed; so these people at this very time, pleaded not only the Lords promise to Israel, but to his only Son Christ Jesus; Lord, hast thou not said, *Ask of me, and I will give thee the Heathen for thine inheritance, and the uttermost ends of the earth for thy possession*; and now Lord, are not these the Churches of Christ which thou hast planted for his possession; and that as *Rachel* and *Leah* built the house of Israel, so now shall these and the like Sister-churches spread the whole earth, the Lord Christ raigning as King and Lord for ever over them; *Then why do the Heathen rage, and the people imagin a vain thing, seeing the time of the Lords arising to have mercy upon* Sion *is come, yea his appointed time is at hand*; and he who walks in the midst of his golden Candlesticks, whose eys are as a flaming fire, will not suffer his Churches to be trodden under feet of that Antichristian Lordly prelacy any longer, nor yet defiled with any transformed Saint-seeming Angels of light with their painted doctrines. Thus did this poor people plead with the Lord, not only for themselves, but for their dearly beloved brethren in England, I and all that are Christs chosen people the world throughout; and although they were not unmindful from day to day of them, yet this year 1645. the Lord was pleased to stir up their affections in more then an ordinary manner, what success their prayers have had, let all (that love and long to behold the beauty of Christ shining on and in his beloved bride) declare the loving kindness of the Lord toward his Churches, and let all the Churches of Christ, though never so remote the one from the other, yet joyned together in one faith and one Christ, be frequent in prayer one for another, congregate together at the Throne of the Lord, be present in spirit, though absent in body; these New-England Churches are neer one hundred miles distant one from another, and yet communicate, counsel, care, love, joy, grieve with, and for one another, dismiss some, and commend others (as occasion serves) to the Christian care and watchfulness, from one

Church to another, and why may not this be practised the world throughout, even from Jerusalem, and round about to Illyricum?

CHAP. III.

Of the opposition the Government of the Mattachusets *Colony met withal, by certain persons, under the name of Petitioners.*

IN place of Governor was chosen for this year *John Winthrop* Esquire, and for Deputy Governor *Thomas Dudly* Esquire, the number of freemen were about 72. At the Court of Election there was a Petition drawn, and presented to the Court by a Doctor of Physick, with seven hands to it, the persons were of a Linswolsie disposition, some for Prelacy, some for Presbytery, and some for Plebsbytery, but all joyned together in the thing they would, which was to stir up the people to dislike of the present Government, one while envying against the constitution of the Government as not popular enough, another while against the Laws or orders of this little Common wealth as two strict, and then to provoke, at least the penurious, they tell them of great expence of the publike Treasury, and intolerable taxations; the matter they petitioned for, was a bottom to build their quarrel upon, under the name of a Presbyterian Government, and this they supposed would suit well with their Bill of complaint, which they intended for England, not that they cared for a Presbyterian Church, for had they so done, they might have found out one in the country before they petitioned, but because they supposed that the Parliament in England would establish that way only and therefore bore themselves bold upon it, that although their seditious and scandalous words and practises should incur a penalty (as none could deem any other, unless it be such as are all for liberty, and nothing for Government) yet they might bear men in hand, it was for petitioning for a Presbyterian Church-Government, according to this tenor; the Court being somewhat slow in censuring them, they prepared a plot, wrapping in some few persons more with them, lay in

ing very grofs matters to the charge of this Government in their Bill of complaint, but being fufpected by the honoured Magiftrates of this Government, their plot was found out, and writing publikely read unto them, for all which they had a fmall penalty laid upon them, hardly countervail the charge they put the country unto; but affuredly it was the Lords gracious goodnefs to quell their malice againft his people, and indeed the proud Bifhops fped no better, or not fo well, especially fome of them, nor have any other hitherto prospered, who have maligned thefe poor Churches of Chrift, yet becaufe the Gortonift painted over a far worfer caufe, that thofe honorable perfonages in England, who had the hearing thereof could not difcern the Government, thought meet to fend over this year the honored M. *VVinflow* to manifeft and declare the naked truth of things, having full power and commiffion from this Government to deal for them in all matters wherein they may be concerned; and verily the chief Gortonian might have returned from England hither, to have triumphed in his blafphemies over the Churches of Chrift; and all the united colonies, had not the divel fhewed his horns in that book he printed, wherein he takes upon him a monftrous interpretation of the words of our Lord Chrift in *John*, *Except ye eat my flefh, and drink my blond, &c.* had the book been well perufed before their coming over, furely they had never return'd with fo large a commiffion as they boaft of, for the Parliament have punifhed divers perfons for their blafphemies, and very like thefe fhould not have fcaped fcotfree.

Chap. IV.

Of the fecond Synod holden at Cambridg in N. E. *and the images of the Son that appeared.*

THis year the General Court of the *Mattachufets* Government taking into confideration the many errors in point of doctrine that were daily broached by fome of our Englifh Nation, although the churches of Chrift, and the people under this Government were free, at leaft in open profeffion;

fession; yet to declare to all the world, and render an accompt of their faith and profession wherein they walk, it was thought meet, that the churches of Christ should meet together in a Synod, by their Elders and Messengers to hold forth the doctrine and discipline of Jesus Christ, according to the rule of the New Testament, with the grounds of Scripture from which they hold the same; and further to make trial of them by the said rules and none other: accordingly at the time appointed they assembled together, their disputation was plain and easie to be understood of the meanest capacity, clearing up those points that were most dubious, they having agreed on all matters, with a full concurrence of the assembly, did appoint them to be put in print, that they might be the better scanned and tried of every particular person in the several congregations or churches, many churches approving thereof for the generality, others there be that have not yet fully viewed the same, the books are extant, and shew that the churches of Christ in N. E. are not ashamed to make confession of their faith to all the world, and are yet ready to receive any further light shall be made known unto them from the Word of God, and none other, nor do they receive this because a Synod hath said it, but because the Lord hath spoken it by his Spirit, and witnessed by the same Spirit to their souls that he hath so done; some sorts of persons have been much opposite to this Synod, first those that are so inured with the broad beaten path of liberty, that they fear to be confined in the straight and narrow path of truth; the second are such as have their wills wedded to some singular rare conceited opinion, for which they have been admired of many, and now they fear their gain will be gone, if this spirit be cast out; the third and last sort are more honest then the two former, and only scared with their big words, who tell them of the Popish and Prelatical Synods, what a deal of trash and cannon Laws they have brought in, and that if they will fall to receiving books once, they shall have more and more thrust upon them: As also if any shall say its only to declare the doctrine and discipline the churches of N. E. hold, its enough, quoth they, that our faith concerning these things is contained

contained in the Bible, and this is all the accompt we need to give to any; but for all these scare-crows, N.E. hath through the blessing of the Lord received much peace and truth from the former Synod, we wish our countrymen and our selves may receive the like, and much more from this, which ended not with this year.

This year, about the later end thereof, appeared two *Parelii*, or Images of the Sun, and some other strange apparitions of light about her, like a Rainbow, with the heels upward, which unwonted sights have been interpreted by the provident passages since shewed, among those who have had an outside of profession and name, to be singular for understanding the mind of God, who would overthrow all the Ordinances of Christ, under the name of New-light, and that there can be no restoration of Religion, till new Apostles come: This desperate opinion doth so fitly resemble these wonderful apparitions, that seemed to be another Sun, yet indeed had no light in them, but vanished away no man knew how; so these opinionists would make men believe they had found out another Sea from their phantastical revelations.

Chap. V.

of the great pains and care taken by those in Authority, for the compiling of Lawes for this little Commonwealth.

THis year the General Court appointed a Committee of divers persons to draw up a Body of Laws for the well-ordering of this little Commonwealth; and to the end that they might be most agreeable with the rule of Scripture, in every County there was appointed two Magistrates, two Ministers, and two able persons from among the people, who having provided such a competent number as was meet, together with the former that were enacted newly amended, they presented them to the General Court, where they were again perused and amended; and then another Committee chosen to bring them into form, and present them to the Court again, who the year following passed an Act of

of confirmation upon them, and so committed them to the Press, and in the year 1648. they were printed, and now are to be seen of all men, to the end that none may plead ignorance, and that all who intend to transport themselves hither may know this is no place of licentious liberty, nor will this people suffer any to trample down this Vineyard of the Lord but w th diligent execution will cut off from the city of the Lord the wicked doers, and if any man can shew wherein any of them derogate from the Word of God, very willingly will they accept thereof, and amend their imperfections (the Lord assisting) but let not any ill-affected persons find fault with them, because they suit not with their own humour, or because they meddle with matters of Religion, for it is no wrong to any man, that a people who have spent their estates, many of them, and ventured their lives for to keep faith and a pure conscience, to use all means that the Word of God allows for maintenance and continuance of the same, especially they having taken up a desolate Wilderness to be their habitation, and not deluded any by keeping their profession in huggermug, but print and proclaim to all the way and course they intend, God willing, to walk in, if any will yet notwithstanding seek to justle them out of their own right, let them not wonder if they meet with all the opposition a people put to their greatest straits can make; as in all their undertakings their chiefest aim hath been to promote the Ordinances of Christ, so also in contriving their Laws, Liberties, and Privileges, they have not been wanting, which hath caused many to maligne their civil Government, and more especially for punishing any by a Law, that walk conrrary to the rule of the Gospel, which they profess, but to them it seems unreasonable, and savours too much of hypocrisie, that any people should pray unto the Lord for the speedy accomplishment of his Word in the overthrow of Antichrist, and in the mean time become a Patron to sinful opinions and damnable errors that oppose the truths of Christ, admit it be but in the bare permission of them.

CHA

CHAP. VI.

Of the Lords wonder working Providence, in fitting this people with all kind of Manufactures, and the bringing of them into the order of a Commonwealth.

ON the day of Election for Governor and Magistrates, (which are new chosen every year) the honored *John Winthrope* Esquire was chosen Governor, and the like honored *Thomas Dudly* Esquire Deputy Governor; *John Endicut* Esquire was chosen Major-General, which is an Officer the Freemen make a yearly choice of, all other Military Officers stand for term of life, unless any be put out for misdemeanour; the number of freemen added this year were about 85. the Land affording very good iron, stone, divers persons of good rank and quality in England, were stirred up by the provident hand of the Lord to venture their estatet upon an iron work, which they began at *Braintree*, and profited the owners little, but rather wasted their stock, which eaused some of them to sell away the remainder, the chief reason being the high price of labour, which ordinarily was as much more as in England, and in many things treble; the way of going on with such a work here, was not suddainly to be discerned, although the Steward had a very able eye, yet experience hath out-stript learning here, and the most quick-sighted in the Theory of things, have been forced to pay prety roundly to Lady Experience for filling their heads with a little of her active after-wit; much hope there is now, that the owners may pick up their crums again, if they be but made partakers of the gain, in putting off England commodities at N. E. price, it will take off one third of the great price they gave for labour, and the price of their iron; it is supposed another third is taken of the abundance of wood had for little, will surely take off the residue, besides land at easie rates, and common land free for their use; it were to be desired that those Gentlemen who have undertaken the work, would consider the place where their works are, namely in N. E. where the Lord Christ hath chosen to plant his Churches in,

to

to hide his people under the covert of his wings, till the tyranny of Antichrist be over-passed, and any that have disbursed pence for the furthering of his work, shall be repayed with thousands: Besides, the Gentlemen that govern this Colony are very desirous to be helpful in what they may, and had rather take any burthens upon themselves and the Inhabitants that in justice they ought, then that those Gentlemen should be any wayes damnified: The Lord is pleased also to compleat this Commonwealth abundantly beyond all expectation in all sorts of needful occupations, it being for a long time the great fear of many, and those that were endued with grace from above also, that this would be no place of continued habitation, for want of a staple-commodity, but the Lord, whose promises are large to his Sion, hath blest his peoples provision, and satisfied her poor with bread, in a very little space, every thing in the country proved a staple-commodity, wheat, rye, oats, peas, barley, beef, pork, fish, butter, cheese, timber, mast, tar, sope, plank-board frames of houses, clabboard, and pipestaves, iron and lead is like to be also; and those who were formerly forced to fetch most of the bread they eat, and beer they drink a hundred leagues by Sea, are through the blessing of the Lord so encreased, that they have not only fed their Elder Sisters, Virginia, Barbados, and many of the Summer Islands that were prefer'd before her for fruitfulness, but also the Grandmother of us all, even the firtil Isle of Great Britain, beside Portugal hath had many a mouthful of bread and fish from us, in exchange of their Madeara liquor, and also Spain; nor could it be imagined, that this Wilderness should turn a mart for Merchants in so short a space, Holland, France, Spain, and Portugal coming hither for trade, shipping, going on gallantly, till the Seas became so troublesome, and England restrain'd our trade, forbidding it with Barbados, &c. and Portugal stopt and took our ships; many a fair ship had her framing and finishing here, besides lesser vessels, barques, and ketches, many a Master, beside commoa Seamen, had their first learning in this Colony, Boston, Charles-Town, Salem, and Ipswitch; our Maritan Towns began to encrease roundly, especially Boston, the which of a

opor

poor country village, in twice seven years is become like unto a small City, and is in election to be Mayor Town suddainly, chiefly increased by trade by Sea, yet of late the Lord hath given a check to our traffique, but the reason may be rendred hereafter; nor hath this Colony alone been actors in this trade of venturing by Sea, but New-haven also, who were many of them well experienced in traffique, and had good estates to mannage it, *Canecticc* did not linger behind, but put forth to Sea with the other, all other trades have here fallen into their ranks and places, to their great advantage; especially Coopers and Shomakers, who had either of them a Corporation granted, inriching themselves by their trades very much, Coopers having their plenty of stuff at a cheap rate, and by reason of trade, with forraign parts abandance of work, as for Tanners and Shomakers, it being naturalized into these occupations, to have a higher reach in mannaging their manifactures, then other men in N. E. are, having not chang'd their nature in this, between them both they have kept men to their stander hitherto, almost doubling the price of their commodities, according to the rate they were sold for in England, and yet the plenty of Leather is beyond what they had, their counting the number of the people, but the transportation of Boots and Shoes into forraign parts hath vented all however: as for Tailors, they vave not come behind the former, their advantage being in the nurture of new-fashions, all one with England; Carpenters, Joyners, Glaziers, Painters, follow their trades only; Gun-smiths, Lock-smiths, Black-smiths, Naylers, Cutlers, have left the husbandmen to follow the Plow and Cart, and they their trades, Weavers, Brewers, Bakers, Costermongers, Feltmakers, Braziers, Pewterers, and Tinkers, Ropemakers, Masons, Lime, Brick, and Tilemakers, Cardmakers to work, and not to play, Turners, Pumpmakers, and Wheelers, Glovers, Fellmungers, and Furriers, are orderly turn'd to their trades, besides divers sorts of Shopkeepers, and some who have a mystery beyond others, as have the Vintners.

Thus hath the Lord been pleased to turn one of the most hideous, boundless, and unknown Wildernesses in the world

in an instant, as 'twere (in comparison of other work) to a well-ordered Commonwealth, and all to serve his Churches, of which the Author intends to speak of three more, which came to be gathered in the compass of these years.

CHAP. VII.

Of the three last Churches that were gathered in the compass of these years, namely Haverhil, Malden, and another Church gathered in the Town of Boston.

THis year 1648. *John Winthrope* Esquire was chosen Governor, and *Thomas Dudly* Esquire Deputy Governor, and *John Endicott* Esquire Major General, all three as they were the former year, the number of freemen added were about 94. about this time there was a Town founded a out one or two mile distant from the place where the goodly river of Merrimeck receives her branches into her own body, hard upon the river of Shawshin, which is one of her three chief heads; the honored Mr. *Simon Broadstreet* taking up his last setling there, hath been a grrat means to further the work, it being a place well fitted for the husbandmans hand, were it not that the remoteness of the place from Towns of trade, bringeth some inconveniencies upon the planters, who are inforced to carry their corn far to market; this Town is called Andover, and hath good store of land improved for the bigness of it, they soon gathered into a Church, having the reverend Mr. *Whodbridg* to instruct them in the wayes of Christ, till he returned to England, and since have called to office the reverend Mr. *Deynes*, for whose further incouragement the promises of the Lord for protecting, providing, increaseing, and continuing, even the very least of his Churches going on, according to his precepts, are abundantly manifested in his Word.

THou Sister young, Christ is to thee a wall
Of flaming fire, to hurt thee none may come
In stipp'ry paths, and dark wayes shall they fall,
His Angels might shall chase their countless sum.

Thy

Thy *Shepheard* with full cups and table ſpread,
Before thy foes in Wilderneſs thee feeds,
Increaſing thy young lambs in boſom bred,
Of Churches by his wonder-working deeds:
To countleſs number muſt Chriſt's Churches reach,
The day's at hand, both Jew and Gentle ſhall
Come crowding in his Churches, Chriſt to preach,
And laſt for aye, none can cauſe them to fall.

About this time the Town of Malden had his firſt foundation ſtones laid by certain perſons, who iſſued out of Charles-Town, and indeed had her whole ſtructure within the bounds of this more elder Town, being ſevered by the broad ipreading river of Miſtick the one from the other, whoſe troubleſome paſſage cauſed the people on the North ſide of the river to plead for Town-priviledges within themſelves, which accordingly was granted them; the ſoyl is very fertile, but they are much ſtraitned in their bounds, yet their neerneſs to the chief Market Towns, makes it the more comfortable for habitation, the people gathered into a Church ſome diſtance of time before they could attain to any Church-Officer to adminiſter the Seals unto them, yet in the mean time at their Sabbath aſſemblies they had a godly Chriſtian named M. *Sarjant*, who did preach the Word unto them, and afterwards they were ſupplied at times with ſome young Students from the Colledg, till the year 1650. one Mr. *Marmaduke Mathews*, coming out of Plimouth Patten, was for ſome ſpace of time with a people at the Town of Hull, which is a ſmall Port-town peopled by fiſhermen, and lies at the entrance of the Bays mouth, where this Mr. *Mathews* continued preaching, till he loſt the approbation of ſome able underſtanding men, among both Magiſtrates and Miniſters, by weak and unſafe expreſſions in his teaching, yet notwithſtanding he was called to the office of a Paſtor by the brethren of this Church of Chriſt at *Malden*, although ſome Neighbour-churches were unſatisfied therewith, for it is the manner of all the Churches of Chriſt here hitherto, to have the approbation of their Sister-churches, and the civil Government alſo in the proceed-

ings of this nature, by the which means Communion of Churches is continued, peace preserved; and the truths of Christ sincerely acknowledged, yet the Author will not miss to mind him in the following Meeter.

Mathew! thou must build gold and silver on
That precious stone, Christ cannot trash indure,
Unstable straw and stubble must be gone,
When Christ by fire doth purge his building pure.
In seemly and in modest terms do thou
Christs precious truths unto thy folk unfold,
And mix not error with the truth, lest thou
Soon leave out sense to make the truth to hold:
Compleating of Christs Churches is at hand,
Mathews stand up, and blow a crtain sound,
Warriours are wanting Babel to withstand,
Christs truths maintain, 'twill bring thee honors crown'd.

The last Church that compleated the number of 30. was gathered at Boston, by reason of the popularity thereof, being too many to meet in one assembly; the North-east part of the Town being separated from the other with a narrow stream cut through a neck of land by industry, whereby that part is become an Island, it was thought meet, that the people inhabiting the same should gather into a Church-body, and build a Meeting house for their assembly, the which they have already done, but not as yet called any one to office; for since the people of Christ in some other places, both in England and elswhere, have through the goodness of God obtained like liberty with our selves, the Ministers of Christ have had their labours taken up in other places as well as here, which hath caused this Church as yet to be destitute the beginning of this year was sad to the people of N. E. by reason of the death of their honoured Governour, *John Winthrope* Esquire, whose indefatigable paines in this Wilderness-work is not to be forgotten, nor indeed can it be, his Funeral was very sadly and solemnly performed, by a very great concourse of the greater part of this Colony, whose

whose mournful looks and watry eyes did plainly demonstrate the tender affection and great esteem he was in with the people.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the death of divers personages, who were in great esteem with the people of New-England, famous for their godliness, and eminent parts, both for Magistracy and Ministery, and of the correcting hand of the Lord upon his N. E. people.

A His year, after the death of this godly Governour, was chosen to succeed in the place *Io. Endicut* Esq. and *Tho. Dualy* Esq. to be Deputy Governor, to the place of Major-General *Edw. Gibbons*; and seeing that the Lord is pleased to call this people to mourning, the Author will proceed to relate what further occasion this people have had to lament their miscarriages, that have caused the rod to be stretched out toward them, for of a truth they are no Antinomians: The next loss was the death of that famous Preacher of the Lord M. *Hooker*, Pastor of the Church of Christ at *Hartford*, and M. *Philips*, Pastor of the Church of Christ at Watertown, and the holy heavenly, sweet-affecting, and soul-ravishing Minister M. *Tho. Shepheard*, Pastor of the Church of Christ at *Cambridg*, whose departure was very heavily taken by all the people of Christ round about him, and now N.E. that had such heaps apon heaps of the riches of Christs tender compassionate mercies, being turn'd off from his dandling knees, began to read their approaching rod in the bend of his brows & frowns of his former favourable countenance toward them; their plenty of all things, which shold have cheared their hearts & quickned their spirits in elevating both soul and body to a thankful frame, through the work of his blessed Spirit; on the contrary, it brought a fulness on many, even to loath the very honey-comb, insomuch that good wholesome truths would not down, yet had the Lord those that were precious unto him, who were not wanting to help one another out of this distemper, and

and with more warmer affections exhort one another, Come let us go up unto the house of the Lord, and he will teach us his wayes: Also the Lord was pleased to awaken us with an Army of caterpillers, that had he not suddainly rebuked them, they had surely destroyed the husbandmans hope, where they fell upon trees, they left them like winter-wasting cold bare and naked; and although they fell on fields very rarely yet in some places they made as clear a riddance, as the harvest mans hand, and uncovered the gay green Medow ground but indeed the Lord did by some plats shew us what he could have done with the whole, and in many places cast them into the high wayes, that the Cart-wheels in their passage were painted green with running over the great swarms of them; in some fields they devoured the leaves of their pease, and left the straw with the full crop, so tender was the Lord in his correction; this minded all these Jacobites of the end of their coming over, but chiefly the husbandman, whose over eager pursuit of the fruits of the earth, made some of them many times run out so far in this Wilderness, even out of the sweet sound of the silver Trumpets blown by the laborious Ministers of Christ, forsaking the assembly of the Lords people, to celebrate their Sabbaths in the chimney-corner horse, kine, sheep, goats, and swine, being their most indeared companions to travel with them to the end of their pilgrimage, or otherwise to gather together some of their neerest neighbours, and make a preachment one unto another, till they had learn'd so much, that they could away with none other teaching: As also the Lord was pleased to command the wind and Seas to give us a jog on the elbow, by sinking the very chief of our shipping in the deep, and splitting them in shivers against the shores; a very goodly Ship called the Seaforce was cast away, and many N. E. people put to hard shifts for their lives, and some drowned, as the godly and dearly beloved servant of Christ, Mr. *Tho, Coitmire*, a very able Seaman, and also a good Scholar, one who had spent both his labour and estate for the helping on of this Wilderness-work: as also another ship set forth by the Merchants of New-haven, of which the godly Mr, *Lamberton* went Master, neither ship,

persons,

persons, nor goods ever heard of; another ship also built and set forth by the inhabitants of Cambridg, split and cast away neer the same place where the Seaforce was lost; as also another Barque mostly set forth by Dorchester men, sunk in the Sea, and never heard of the manner how, with divers others which might be here inserted; this seemed the sore affliction to these N. E. people, because many godly men lost their lives, and abundantly the more remarkable, because the Lord was pleased to forbid any such things to befal his people in their passage hither; herein these people read, as in great capital letters, their suddain forgetfulness of the Lords former received mercy in his wonderful preservation, bringing over so many scores of ships, and thousands of persons, without miscarriage of any, to the wonderment of the whole world that shall hear of it, but more especially were the Merchants and traders themselves sensible of the hand of the Lord out against them, who were in some of the ships, and had their sixes given them for a prey; as also Vintners, and other men of trade, whose gain is increased by Merchants men, being so taken up with the income of a large profit, that they would willingly have had the Commonwealth tolerate divers kinds of sinful opinions to intice men to come and sit down with us, that their purses might be filled with coyn, the civil Government with contention, and the Churches of our Lord Christ with errors; the Lord was pleased after all this, to let in the King of Terror among his new-planted Churches.

FOr this year 1650. *Tho. Dudly* Esquire was chosen Governor, and *John Endicut* Esquire Deputy Governor, Major-General *Edward Gibbons* continued in his office still; the number of freemen added were about 55. This year was the first noted year wherein any store of people died, the ayr and place being very healthy naturally, made this correction of the Lord seem the greater, for the most that died were children, and that of an unwonted disease here, though frequent in other places, the Lord now smiting many families with death in them, although there were not any families wherein more then one died, or very rare if it were otherwise,

wise, yet were these pilgrim people minded of the suddai forgetfulness of those worthias that died not long before but more especially the little regard had to provide means t train their children up in the knowledg of learning, and im prove such means as the Lord hath appointed to leave thei posterity an able Minister; as also to stir them up to prepar for the great work of the Lord Jesus in the overthrow of An tichrist, and calling of the Jews, which in all likelyhood very suddainly to be performed; as also in stirring up all th young ones that remain, to consider for what end the Lor hath spared their lives, when he cut off others by death, name ly, to prosecute the work that he hath given them to do i the power of his might, with the greater zeal and cou rage.

THis year the honored and much desired servant of Chris *John Endicut* Esquire was chosen to be Governour of th English, inhabiting the Colony of the Mattachusets, and th antient honored and long continued Champion for the trut as it is in Jesus, *Tho. Dudly* Esquire was chosen Deputy Go vernour, by the major Vote of these wandering Jacobite with heart and good will the honored Major General *Ed ward Gibbons* continued in place this year, the Governme shewed their desire to be assisting to the State of England, making orders for establishing their Edict for these Wester parts of the world among our N. E. people; the Lord in h infinite wisdom saw meet to continue his correcting hand mong his N. E. Churches, somewhat more then ordinary in sore disease, of which many (in comparison of what used do) and yet not so many as ordinarily use to do in oth plantations of this Western world; and whereas the form year young children died most, this year those of grown yea died also, and although so small a sickness might not be t ken notice of in other places, yet the rareness of it in so he thy a country as is this, cannot but speak loud in the ears Gods people, who desire to hear the rod, and who hath a pointed it, and perceive plainly many of them, that the Lo will have us to know, that if his own people tread in t

sa

ſame ſteps of riot and exceſs in the plenty he hath given them, with the men of this world, he will lay the ſame ſickneſſes and diſeaſes upon them; and further they perceive, according to the ordinary diſpenſation of his providences toward them, he hath ſome further great work to do with his N. E. people, that he is beginning again to awaken, rouze up, and quicken them with the rod of his power: For thus they begin to reaſon with themſelves, when the Lord was pleaſed to expoſe them, their wifes, and little ones to the troubles of a tempeſtuous Sea in ſo long a voyage, and the wants of a barren Wilderneſs in great penury of food, he brought forth by his mighty power, and ſtretched-out arm, the glorious fabrick of his New-E. Churches; and therefore now again they look for ſome farther extraordinary great work of his, if he ſhall once again be pleaſed to refine them in this furnace of his, and would the Lord Chriſt would confirm our brethren in England in like faith by our example, yea, and far beyond many degrees, as the Wonder-working providence of Sions Saviour toward them hath more abundantly exceeded, and that as this in three ſeven years is compriſed, though very weakly in this little book, there's in one ſeven year would require volumes, and as this is wonderful, there is almoſt miraculous, and wonderful to the whole world, as if the Lord Chriſt did intend to make his power known more abundantly, then ever the ſons of men ſaw Kings and Kingdoms ſtrengthened, with affinity and conſanguinity, the valiant of the world, men skil'd in feats of war, as *Goliah* from a child, fierce and pampered horſes, whoſe necks are covered with ſtrong neighing, and cunning Engeniers, men skilful to deſtroy with all the terrible engins of war, together with ſwarms of ſouldiers flocking together to ſwallow up the poor remnant of Gods people, all theſe hath the Lord cauſed to fall before your eyes, and our ears have heard the noyſe of this great fall; and beloved countrymen, and our dear brethren in Chriſt, ſtep into the cloſet of your own hearts with us, and ſee if there will not be ſome things in this following verſe that may ſuit your condition as well as ours, that having ſown in tears, we may reap with joy the glorious harveſt of our Lord Chriſt, which is

hard at hand, for assuredly the Lord is tyed neither to us, nor you, but may, if it please him, cast off both, and raise up new instruments for his following work, but if he be pleased to give us melting hearts for our former miscarriages and renew us with a more zealous courage and earnest contending for the faith, it is very like he hath more glorious works by far for us yet to do.

Chap. IX.

Of the wonder-working providences of Christ, wrought for his people among our English Nation, both in our Native country, and also in N. E. *which should stir us up to mourn for all our miscarriages much the more.*

FRom silent night true Register of moans,
From saddest soul consum'd in deepest sin,
[*A*] From heart quite rent with sighs and heavy groans,
My wailing muse her woful work begins,
And to the world brings tunes of sad lament,
Sounding nought els but sorrows sad relent.

Sorry to see my sorrows cause augmented,
And yet less sorrowful were my sorrows more,
[*A*] Grief that with grief, is not with grief prevented,
Yet grief it is must ease my grieved sore;
So grief and sorrow, care but how to grieve,
For grief and sorrow must my cares relieve.

The wound fresh bleeding must be stanch'd with tears,
Tears cannot come unless some grief proceed,
[*A*] Grief comes but slack, which doth increase my fears,
Fear, lest for want of help I still shall bleed;
Do what I can to lengthen my lifes breath,
If Christ be wanting, I shall bleed to death.

Thou deepest searcher of each secret thought,
Infuse in me thy all-affecting grace,

So

[*A*] So shall my work to good effect be brought,
While I peruse my ugly sins a space,
Whose staining filth so spotted hath my soul,
That nought can wash, but tears of inward dole.

A *The consideration of the wonderful providence of Christ in planting his N. E. Churches, and with the right hand of his power preserving, protecting, favouring, and feeding them upon his tender knees: Together with the ill requital of his all-infinite and undeserved mercies bestowed upon us, hath caused many a soul to lament for the dishonor done to his Name, and fear of his casting of this little handful of his, and the insulting of the enemy, whose sorrow is set forth in these four first staffs of verses.*

How soon my soul hast thou the Lord forgot,
[*B*] Who thee and thine through troublous Seas hath lead,
On earth thy parts should praise him, suddain rot,
Why dost neglect his glorious Kingdom spread.
Thy eyes have seen the Mountains mov'd with's hand,
And sunk in Seas to make his Sion stand.

No wonder then thy works with Eastern wind
[*B*] On Seas are broke, and thy best Seamen slain,
Sith, thou thy gain, and not Christs work dost mind,
Lord stay thy hand, I see my works are vain.
Our ships they shall thy Gospel forth convey,
And not bring home strange errors here to stay.

Instead of home-oppression, they shall now
Thy Saints abroad relieve, by Sea them send;
No riot shall our Merchantmen allow,
Time in exchange walks, not in Taverns spend:
Godly grief and good purpose comes from thee,
Lord Christ command, and then to work go we.

B *The Rod of God toward us in our Maritime affairs manifested, not only to our own shipping, but strangers; as the* Mary Rose *blown up in Charles River, and sunk in a moment, with about thirteen men slain therein: As also one* Capt. Chadwicks *Pinnace, and about four men slain therein, beside what hath been formerly said touching our own shipping.*

Oh thou my ſoul how weak's thy faith become,
With ſcatter'd ſeed of man and beaſt, thou haſt
Seen thy great God increaſe thy little ſum,
C Towns cloſe compact in deſart land hath plac't:
In Wilderneſs thy table richly ſpread,
Thy poor therein hath ſatisfi'd with bread.

While firtil lands with hunger have been pined,
C Thy harveſt hath with heaps on heaps come in;
Oh mourn, that thou no more thy God ſhould'ſt mind,
His gentle rod to teach thee doth begin;
Then wonder not that ſwarms of Locuſt fly,
And that earths fruits for want of moyſture die.

A countleſs crew of Caterpillers craul,
To rob the earth of her green mantle quite;
Wolves only wont on leſſer beaſts to fall,
C On great ones prey by day, and eke by night:
Thy houſes are conſum'd with much good ſtore,
By fearful fires, which bluſtering winds blow o're.

Lord ſtay thy hand, and ſtop my earthly mind,
Thy Word, not world, ſhall be our ſole delight,
C Not Medow ground, but Chriſts rich pearl wee'l find,
Thy Saints imbrace, and not large lands down plight.
Murmure no more will we at yearly pay,
To help uphold our Government each way;

Not ſtrive who leaſt, but who the moſt ſhall give,
Rejoyce will we, our hearts inlarged are,
C Thoſe wait on th' Altar, ſhall on Altar live,
Nor ſhall our riches their good doctrine mar;
Our pride of parts in thought of clear diſcerning,
No longer ſhall diſgrace their godly learning.

Our meaner ſort that metamorphos'd are,
With womens hair, in gold and garments gay,

Whoſe

C Whose wages large our Commonwealths work mar,
Their pride they shall with moderation lay:
Cast off their cloaths, that men may know their rank,
And women that with outward deckings prank,

C *Of the Lords hand against our Land affairs, as is heretofore expressed; and also in the suddain taking away many mens estates by fire, and chiefly by a most terrible fire which happened in Charles-Town, in the depth of Winter, 1650. by a violent wind blown from one house to another, to the consuming of the fairest houses in the Town: Under the pretence of being unequally rated, many men murmure exceedingly, and withdraw their shoulders from the support of Government, to the great discouragement of those that govern, 1651. Pride and excess in apparrel is frequent in these daies, when the Lord calls his people to humiliation and humble acknowledgment of his great deliverances; and that which is far worse, spiritual pride, to shew our selves to be somebody, often step out of our ranks, and delight in new fangled doctrines.*

The worlds imbrace our longing lust for gain,
D No longer shall us into corners draw,
Nor our large herds us from Gods house detain
From fellowship of Saints, who learn thy Law:
Thy righteous Judgments Lord do make me tremble,
Nor word, nor rod, but deep in this dissemble.

Two Masters, Lord, we will professed serve;
How can we Christ united be to thee,
O When from thy Law learn'd we so greatly swarve,
With watry tears unclued we will be.
From creature-comforts, Christ thou art our stay,
Work will and deed in us we humbly pray.

D *An over-eager desire after the world hath so seized on the spirits of many, that the chief end of our coming hither is forgotten; and notwithstanding all the powerful means used, we stand at a stay, as if the Lord had no farther work for his people to do, but every bird to feather his own nest.*

Oh thou, my soul, and every part in me
Lament, the Lord his worthies from the earth
Takes to himself, and makes our earth to be
E A mourning place left destitute of mirth;

Are

Are these the daies wherein that Beast shall fall,
Lord leave us means, though thou be all in all.

What courage was in *Winthrope*, it was thine;
Shepheards sweet Sermons from thy blessing came,
[*E*] Our heavenly *Hooker* thy grace did refine,
And godly *Burr* receiv'd from thee his frame:
Philips didst thou indue with Scripture light,
And *Huet* had his arguings strong and right.

Grave *Higginson* his heavenly truths from thee,
[*E*] *Maverick* was made an able help to thine;
What *Harvey* had thou gavest, for's people free;
Follow *Green* full of grace, to work thou didst assign:
Godly *Glover* his rich gifts thou gavest,
Thus thou by means thy flocks from spoiling savest.

But Lord, why dost by death withdraw thy hand
From us, these men and means are sever'd quite;
Stretch forth thy might, Lord Christ do thou command,
Their doubled spirit on those left to light:
Forth of their graves call ten times ten again,
That thy dear flocks no damage may sustain.

Can I forget these means that thou hast used,
To quicken up my drowsie drooping soul;
Lord I forget, and have the same abused,
Which makes me now with grief their deaths condole,
And kiss thy rod, laid on with bowels tender,
By death of mine, makes me their death remember.

Lord, stay thy hand, thy *Jacobs* number's small,
Powre out thy wrath on Antichrists proud Thrones;
Here thy poor flocks that on thee daily call,
Bottle their tears, and pity their sad groans.
Where shall we go Lord Christ? we turn to thee,
Heal our back-slidings, forward press shall we:

Not we, but all thy Saints the world throughout
Shall on thee wait, thy wonders to behold;
Thou King of Saints, the Lord in battel stout
Increase thy armies many thousand fold.
Oh Nations all, his anger seek to stay,
That doth create him armies every day.

B *The Lords taking away by death many of his most eminent servants from us, shewes, that either the Lord will raise up another people to himself to do his work, or raise us up by his Rod to a more eager pursuit of his work, even the planting of his Churches the world throughout. The Lord converts and calls forth of their graves men to fight his battels against the enemies of his truth.*

CHAP. X.

Of the endeavours of this people of Christ, to inlarge his Kingdom the world throughout, and first of their preaching Christ to the Indians, among whom they live.

THese brood of Travellers having thus through the good hand of their God upon them, thus setled these Churches, according to the institution of Christ, and not by the will of man; they now endeavour to be assisting to others: The reverend Mr. *Hugh Peters*, and his fellow-helper in Christ Mr. *Wells* steered their course for England, so soon as they heard of the chaining up of those biting beasts, who went under the name of spiritual Lords; what assistance the Gospel of Christ found there by their preaching, is since clearly manifested; for the Lord Christ having removed that usurping power of Lordly Prelates, hath now inlarged his Kingdom there, and that not onely by the means of these men, but by divers others, both godly and eminent servants of his, who never saw New-England; and by divers other godly Ministers of Christ, who have since gone from hence, both young Students and others, to the number of twenty, or thereabout, in the whole; besides some who were eminent in the civil Government here, both gracious and godly servants of Christ, and some who have been Magistrates here, to the number of five or six, the Lord Christ grant they may all endeavour the advancement of his truths, both in Churches and civil Government: But before the Author cease to speak of England, he is bold to say, that the Lord Christ will overturn, overturn, overturn, till he hath caused such a Government to be set up, as shall become nursing fathers to his new-planted Churches.

The Indian people in these parts at the English first coming, were very barbarous and uncivilized, going for the most part naked, although the country be extreme cold

cold in the winter-ſeaſon : they are onely clothed with a Deers skin, and a little bit of cloth to cover their privy part. The Women for the moſt part are very modeſt, although they go as naked as the Men : they are generally very laborious at their planting time, and the Men extraordinary idle, making their ſquawes to carry their Children and the luggage beſide; ſo that many times they travell eight or ten mile with a burden on their backs, more fitter for a horſe to carry then a woman. The men follow no kind of labour but hunting, fiſhing and fowling, in all which they make uſe of their Bowe and Arrowes to ſhoot the wilde creatures of the Trees, as Squirrells, gray and black Rockoones : as for Deer, they ordinarily catch them in traps, with a pole bent down, and a Cord at the end, which flyes up and ſtayes their haſty courſe. *Bever*, *Otter*, and *Mooſe* they catch with Traps alſo : they are very good marks-men, with their Bowe and Arrows. Their Boyes will ordinarily ſhoot fiſh with their Arrowes as they ſwim in the ſhallow Rivers, they draw the Arrow halfe way, putting the point of it into the water, they let flye and ſtrike the fiſh through ; the like they do to Birds leſſer and great : onely the *Geeſe* and *Turkies* being ſtrong of wing, ſometimes flee away with their Arrowes ſticking in them ; this is all the trade they uſe, which makes them deſtitute of many neceſſaries, both in meat, drink, apparell and houſes.

As for any religious obſervation, they were the moſt deſtitute of any people yet heard of, the Divel having them in very great ſubjection, not uſing craft to delude them, as he ordinarily doth in moſt parts of the World : but kept them in a continuall ſlaviſh fear of him : onely the *Powawes*, who are more converſant with him then any other, ſometimes recover their ſicke folk with charmes, which they uſe, by the help of the Divell ; and this makes them to adore ſuch ; one of them was ſeen as is reported to cure a Squaw that was dangerouſly ſick, by taking a ſnakes skin and winding it about her arm the which ſoon became a living ſnake crawling round about her armes and body ; another cauſed the ſick patient, for healing, to paſs bare footed through many burning coals ; thoſe that cannot cure them, they call Squantams powwons : but if the patient live, he is had in great admiration, and then they cry, Much winnit Abbamocho, that is, very good

Divell: for Squantam is a bad Divel, and Abbamocho is their good Divell. It hath been a thing very frequent, before the English came, for the Divell to appear unto them in a bodily shape, sometimes very ugly and terrible, and sometimes like a white boy, and chiefly in the most hideous woods and swamps: they report that sometimes he hath come into their wigwams, and carryed away divers of them alive: and since we came hither, they tell us of a very terrible beast for shape and bigness, that came into a wigwam toward the North-east parts, remote from any English plantations, and took away six men at a time, who were never seen afterward. The English at their first coming did assay and endeavour to bring them to the knowledge of God: and in particular the reverend, grave, and godly Mr. *John Wilson*, who visited their sick, and instructed others as they were capable to understand him. But yet very little was done that way, till in process of time they by continuall coming to the English, became better able to understand them; and now of late yeers the reverend Mr. *Eliot* hath been more then ordinary laborious to study their language, instructing them in their own Wigwams, and Catechising their Children. As also the reverend Mr. *Mayhewe*, one who was tutored up in *N. Eng.* and called to office by the Church of Christ, gathered at a small Island called *Martins Vineyard*: this man hath taken good pains with them: but the particulars of our godly Ministers labours, together with the good hand of our God upon their indeavours, being already published, no further need be spoken.

Also Mr. William Leverity *Pastor of* Sandwich *Church, is very* serious *therein, and with good* success.

CHAP.

CHAP. XI.

Of the gratious goodness of the Lord Christ, in planting his Gospel in the purity of it, in Virginia : *and of the first Church gathered there according to the rule of the Gospel.*

ABout the yeer the Lord was pleased to put it into the heart of some godly people in *Virginia*, to send to *N. E.* for some of the Ministers of Christ, to be helpfull unto them in instructing them in the truth, as it is in Jesus. The godly Mr. *Philip Bennit* coming hither, made our reverend Elders acquainted with their desires, who were very studious to take all opportunities for inlarging the kingdome of Christ : and upon serious consideration, the reverend Mr. *Knowls* of *Watertowne*, and Mr. *Tompson* of *Braintree* were sent unto them, who ariving there in safety, preached openly unto the people for some good space of time, and also from house to house exhorted the people dayly, that with full purpose of heart they would cleave unto the Lord; the harvest they had was plentifull for the little space of time they were there, till being opposed by the Governour and some other malignant spirits, they were forced to returne to *N. E.* again. It were much to be desired, that all people would take notice of the hand of God against this people, after the rejection of these Ministers of Christ : and indeed it was none other but the thrusting Christ from them ; and now attend to the following story, all you Cavaliers and malignant party the world throughout, take notice of the wonderworking providence of Christ toward his Churches, and punishing hand of his toward the contemners of his Gospel. Behold ye dispisers, and wonder. Oh poor *Virginia*, dost thou send away the Ministers of Christ with threatning speeches ? No sooner is this done, but the barbarous, inhumane, insolent, and bloody *Indians* are let loose upon them, who contrive the cutting them off by whole Families, closely carying their wicked counsells till they had effected their desires, their bloody designe taking place for the space of 200 miles

up the River : the manner of the English Plantations there being very scattering, quite contrary to *N. E.* people, who for the most part desire society. The manner of the *Indians* proceeding was thus, they divided themselves into severall companies, and beset the English houses a little before break of day, waiting for the first person that should open the doore and come forth, whom they cruelly murdered, beating out their brains, and then forthwith entred the house and slew all they found within, sometimes firing the houses, and leaving the living children miserably to be consumed with their dead Parents in the fearfull flames; some people fleeing from this barbarous massacre, as they passed by a fired house, heard a pitifull out-cry of a poor Child, crying, I burn, I burn : although they could willingly have made haste away, yet the miserable out-cry of this poor babe caused them to hast to the house, and rescue it forth the flames, that was even almost ready to scorch it : this cruell and bloody work of theirs put period to the lives of five or six hundred of these people, who had not long before a plentifull proffer of the mercies of Christ in the glad tidings of peace published by the mouth of his Ministers, who came unto them for that end : but chusing rather the fellowship of their drunken companions, and a Preist of their own profession, who could hardly continue so long sober as till he could read them the reliques of mans invention in a common prayer book; but assuredly had not the Lord pittied the little number of his people among this crooked generation, they had been consumed at once for this is further remarkable in this massacre, when it came toward the place where Christ had placed his little flock, it was discovered & prevented from further proceeding, and the Lord by this means did so allay their spirits of malignity toward his people, they gathered in a Church in presence of the very governour himself, and called to office one Mr. *Harrison*, who could not long continue among them, by reason of their fresh renewed malignity, who had formerly an evill eye toward them, and could no better refraine from oppressing them, then *Pharoah* after he had rest from the plagues under which he was. After the departure of Mr. *Harrison*, one Mr. *Duren* became an help unto them; but he and his people also were forced to remove many hundred miles up into the country, where they

now remain; but assuredly the Lord hath more scourges in store, for such as force the people to such sufferings: and therefore let this Church of Christ continue in the way of his truth according to the rules of his Gospel; and without doubt the Lord will preserve and continue them, let the adversaries of his Truth be never so potent. As also about this time, the Lord was pleased to gather a people together in the Isle of *Bermoodas*, whose hearts being guided by the rule of the word, they gathered into a Church of Christ according to the rules of the Gospel, being provided with able persons, indued with gifts from the Lord to administer unto them the holy things of God; and after they began to be opposed, their reverend elder Mr. *Goulding* came into these parts, and from hence he went to *England*: but this little flock of Christ not long after being banished from thence, went to one of the Southern Islands, where they endured much hardship; and which the Churches of Christ in these parts understanding, about six or eight of them contributing toward their want, gathered about 800 *l.* to supply their necessity: the which they shipped in a small vessell hired for that end, and sent by the hands of two brethren both corne and other necessaries: they arriving in safety by the blessing of God upon their labours, were well welcomed by their brethren, who abundantly blessed the Lord for them, and with godly and gratious expression returned a thankfull acknowledgement of the present good hand of the Lord Christ, in providing for them: so that as this book began with the wonderworking providence of *Sions* Saviour, in providing so wonderfull gratiously for his Churches the World throughout; so it here endeth with the same; and it were to be desired, that the Churches of Christ in *Europe* would gather up the wonderfull providences of the Lord toward them also, and more especially those in our native Country: for assuredly it would make much for the magnifying of his glorious works in this day of his power: and although the malignant and antichristian party may say, they can shew the like wonders (as *Jannes* and *Jambres* that with-stood *Moses*) yet were the worke of Christ for his poor Churches, within these few yeers, gathered together by some able instrument whom the Lord might be pleased to stir up for that end, and laid open the view of all, they would be forced

Mr. Nathaniel White, *Mr.* Patrick Copeland, *Mr.* William Goulding.

forced to confess, this is the very finger of God, and no doubt but they would be a great strengthening to the faith of those, who are appointed of the Lord for the overthrow of Antichrist (the Lord helping) for assuredly, the time of his having mercy upon *Sion* is come.

CHAP. XII.

Of the time of the fall of Antichrist, and the increase of the Gentile Churches, even to the provoking of the twelve Tribes to submit to the kingdom of Christ.

IT hath been the longing expectation of many, to see that notable and wonderfull worke of the Lord Christ, in casting down that man of sin who hath held the whole world (of those that profess any Christ) under his Lordly power, while the true professors of Christ have hardly had any appearance to the eye of the world; first, take notice the Lord hath an assured set time for the accomplishment of this work, which is set down in his
Rev. 17.14. word, although more darkly to be understood; wherefore the reverend Ministers of Christ, for these many yeers have studied and laboured for the finding it out, and that holy man of God Mr. *John Cotton*, among many other, hath diligently searched for the Lords mind herein, and hath declared some sudden blow to be given to this blood-thirsty monster: but the Lord Christ hath unseparably joyned the time, meanes, and manner of this work together, and therefore all men that expect the day, must attend the means: for such hath been and is the absurdity of many, that they make semblance of a very zealous affection to see the glorious work of our Lord Christ herein, and yet themselves uphold, or at least side with those that uphold some part of Antichrists kingdome: and therefore the lordly Prelacy may pray for his fall till their lungs are spent, and their throats grow dry. But while they have a seeming shew (and hardly that) to oppose his doctrines, they themselves in the mean time, make use of his power to advance themselves to honour: as also in these dayes there are divers desperate, blasphemous, and erronious persons

ſons, whoſe conſciences and their own ſelf-will are unſeparable companions; theſe are very hot in their own apprehenſions to proſecute the work; but in the mean time, they not only batter down the truths of Chriſt, and his own Ordinances and Inſtitutions, but alſo ſet up that part of Antichriſts kingdom, which hath formerly had a great blow already, even his deceiveable and damnable doctrines: for as one badg of the beaſt is to be full of blaſphemies, ſo are they, and theſe take unto themſelves ſeven ſpirits worſe then the former, making the latter end worſe then the beginning, as this ſtory may teſtifie: and ſome ſtories in our native country much more. But to come to the time of Antichriſts fall, and all that expect it may depend upon the certainty of it: yea it may be boldly ſaid that the time is come, and all may ſee the dawning of the day: you that long ſo much for it, come forth and fight: who can expect a victory without a battel? the lordly Prelates that boaſted ſo much of theſe great atcheivements in this work, are fled into holes and corners: *Familiſts*, *Seekers*, *Antinomians* and *Anabaptiſts*, they are ſo ill armed, that they think it beſt ſleeping in a whole skin, fearing that if the day of battell once go on, they ſhall fall among Antichriſts Armies: and therefore cry out like cowards, If you will let me alone, and I will let you alone: but aſſuredly the Lord Chriſt hath ſaid, *He that is not with us, is againſt us*: there is no room in his Army for toleratoriſts. But ſome will ſay, We will never believe the day is come, till our eyes behold *Babylon* begirt with Souldiers. I pray be not too haſty; hath not the Lord ſaid, *Come out of her my people?* &c. ſurely there is a little ſpace left for this, and now is the time, ſeeing the Lord hath ſet up his ſtanderd of reſort: now, *Come forth of her, and be not partakers of her ſins*: now is the time, when the Lord hath aſſembled his Saints together; now the Lord will come and not tarry. As it was neceſſary that there ſhould be a *Moſes* and *Aaron*, before the Lord would deliver his people and deſtroy *Pharaoh*, leſt they ſhould be wildred indeed in the Wilderneſs; ſo now it was needfull, that the Churches of Chriſt ſhould firſt obtain their purity, and the civill government its power to defend them, before Antichriſt come to his finall ruine: and becauſe you ſhall be ſure the day is come indeed, behold the Lord Chriſt marſhal-

ſhalling of his invincible Army to the battell : ſome ſuppoſe this onely to be myſticall, and not literall at all : aſſuredly the ſpirituall fight is chiefly to be attended, and the other not neglected, having a neer dependancy one upon the other, eſpecially at this time ; the Miniſters of Chriſt who have caſt off all lording power over one another, are created field-Officers, whoſe Office is * extravagant in this Army, chiefly to encourage the fighting Souldiers, and to lead them on upon the enemy in the moſt advantagious places, and bring on freſh ſupplies in all places of danger, to put the ſword of the ſpirit in their Souldiers hands : but Chriſt (who is their general) muſt onely enable them to uſe it aright: to give every Souldier in charge that they watch over one another, to ſee that none meddle with the execrable things of Antichriſt, and this to be performed in every Regiment throughout the Army: and not one to exerciſe dominion over the other by way of ſuperiority : for Chriſt hath appointed a parity in all his Regiments, *&c.* let them beware that none go apart with rebellious *Korah.* And further, behold, Kings, Rulers, or Generals of Earths Armies, doth Chriſt make uſe of in this day of battell, the which he hath brought into the field already alſo; who are appointed to defend, uphold, and maintain the whole body of his Armies againſt the inſolent, beaſtly, and bloody cruelty of their inſatiable enemies, and to keep order that none do his fellow-Souldier any wrong, nor that any ſhould raiſe a mutiny in the hoſts. Notwithſtanding all this, if any ſhall ſay, they will not believe the day is come till they ſee them ingage battell with Antichriſt ; Verily, if the Lord be pleaſed to open your eyes, you may ſee the beginning of the fight, and what ſucceſs the Armies of our Lord Chriſt have hitherto had : the Forlorne hopes of Antichriſts Army, were the proud Prelates of *England* : the Forlorne of Chriſts Armies, were theſe *N. E.* people who are the ſubject of this Hiſtory, which encountring each other for ſome ſpace of time, ours being overpowered with multitude, were forced to retreat to a place of greater ſafety, where they waited for a freſh opportunity to ingage with the main battell of Antichriſt, ſo ſoon as the Lord ſhall be pleaſed to give a word of Command. Immediately upon this ſucceſs, the Lord Chriſt was pleaſed to command the right Wing of his Army, to advance againſt the left Wing of Anti-

* *Yea every Officer hath his own proper Regiment.*

chriſt

christ: where in his former forlorn hopes of proud Prelates lay: these by our right Wing had their first pay (for that they had done to our forlorne before) being quite overthrown and cut in peices by the valiant of the Lord in our right Wing, who still remain fighting. Thus far of the battell of Antichrist, and the various success: what the issue will be, is assuredly known in the generall already. *Babylon* is fallen, the God of truth hath said it; then who would not be a Souldier on Christs side, where is such a certainty of victory? nay I can tell you a farther word of encouragement, every true-hearted Souldier that falls by the sword in this fight, shall not lye dead long, but stand upon his feet again, and be made partaker of the triumph of this Victory: and none can be overcome, but by turning his back in fight. And for a word of terrour to the enemy, let them know, Christ will never give over the raising of fresh Forces, till they are overthrown root and branch. And now you antient people of *Israel* look out of your Prison grates, let these Armies of the Lord Christ Jesus provoke you to acknowledge he is certainly come, I and speedily he doth come to put life into your dry bones: here is a people not onely praying but fighting for you, that the great block may be removed out of the way, (which hath hindered hitherto) that they with you may enjoy that glorious resurrection-day, the glorious nuptials of the Lamb: when not only the Bridegroom shall appear to his Churches both of *Jews* and *Gentiles*, (which are his spouse) in a more brighter aray then ever heretofore, but also his Bride shall be clothed by him in the richest garments that ever the Sons of men put on, even the glorious graces of Christ Jesus, in such a glorious splendor to the eyes of man, that they shall see and glorifie the Father of both Bridegroom and Bride.

1. *OH King of Saints, how great's thy work, say we,*
Done and to do, poor Captives to redeem!
Mountaines of mercy makes this work to be
Glorious, that grace by which thy works are seen.
Oh Jesu, thou a Saviour unto thine,
Not works but grace makes us this mercy find.
2. *Of sinners cheife, no better men they be,*
Then by thy work hast made thy work to do:
Thy Captaines strength weak dust appears in thee,
While than art brought such mouldrey mock-man:

Then Christ doth all, I all is done for his
Redeemed ones, his onely work it is.
3. Doth Christ build Churches? who can them deface?
He purchast them none can his right deny:
Not all the world, ten thousand worlds, his grace
Caus'd him once them at greater price to buy.
Nor marvell then if Kings and Kingdomes he
Destroy'd, when they do cause his folke to flee.
4. Christ is come down possession for to take
Of his deer purchase; who can hinder him?
Not all the Armies earthly men can make:
Millions of spirits, although Divels grim:
Can Pope or Turke with all their mortall power,
Stay Christ from his inheritance one hour?
5. All Nations band your selves together now,
You shall fall down as dust from bellows blown:
How easie can our King your power bow?
Though higher you in mens accompt were grown.
As drop in bucket shall those waters be,
Whereon that Whore doth sit in high degree.
6. Christs wrath is kindled, who can stand before
His anger; that so long hath been provoked?
In moment perish shall all him before,
Who touch'd Mount Sinai, and it soundly smoaked.
New-England Churches you are Christs you say,
So sure are all that walk in Christs way.
7. No such need fear fury of men or Divels,
Why Christ among you takes his dayly walk:
He made you gold, you keeps from rusting evils,
And hid you here from strife of tongues proud talke.
Amongst his he for their defence doth bide,
They need no more that have Christ on their side.
8. Man be not proud of this thy exaltation:
For thou wast dung and dogs filth, when Christ wrought
In thee his work, and set thee in this station
To stand, from him thy strength is dayly brought,
Yet in him thou shalt go triumphant on:
Not thou but Christ triumphs his foes upon.
9. You people whom he by the hand did lead
From Egypt land through Seas with watry wall:

Apply your selves his Scriptures for to read:
In reading do for eyes enlightned call,
And you shall see Christ once being come is now
Again at hand your stubborn hearts to bow.

10. *Though scattered you, Earths Kingdoms are throughout,*
In bondage brought, cheife by those make some shew
Of Jewish rights, they Christ with you cast out:
Christ will their Cords for you in sunder hew.
Through unbeliefe you were to bondage brought:
Believe that Christ for you great work hath wrought.

11. *He will your heart not member circumcise:*
Oh search and see, this is your Jesus sure,
Refuse him not, would God you were so wise:
None but this King can ought your hope procure.
Once doting on an Earthly Kingdom you
Mist of your Christ; be sure be wiser now.

12. *The day's at hand he will you wiser make*
To know Earths Kingdoms are too scant and base
For such a price, as Christ paid for your sake:
Kings you shall be, but in a higher place;
Yet for your freedom Nations great shall fall,
That without fear of foes, him serve you shall.

13. *You are the men that Christ will cause subdue*
Those Turkish Troops, that joyned Jews *have been:*
His Gentile *Churches cast down* Babels *crue:*
Then you that brood of Mahumetts *shall win,*
Destroy his seed 'mongst Persians, Turkes *and* Moores,
And for poor Christians ope the Prison doors.

14. *Your Nation prov'd too scant for his possession,*
Whose pretious blood was made a price for sin:
And Nations all who were in like transgression;
Some of the whole Christ to his Crown will win,
And now makes way for this his work indeed,
That through the world his Kingdom may proceed.

15. *Now Nations all I pray you look about,*
Christ comes you neer, his power I pray embrace:
In's word him seek; he's found without all doubt:
He doth beseech with teares, Oh seek his face:
Yet time there is, the Battel's but begun;
Christ call thy folke that they to thee may run.

16. *Place them in thy strong Armies newly gather'd,*
Thy Churches Lord increase and fill withall:
Those blessed ones are given thee by thy Father,
The wickeds Rod off from their backs recall:
Breake off their yokes, that they with freedom may
Tell of thy workes, and praise thee every day.
17. *Lord Christ go on with thy great wonders working*
Down headlong cast all Antichristian power:
Unmaske those men that lye in corners lurking,
Whose damned doctrines dayly states advance.
For why thy Folke for this are dayly longing,
That Nations may come in thy Churches thronging.
18. *What greater joy can come thy Saints among,*
Then to behold their Christ exalted high?
Thy Spirits joy with ravishment stirs strong
Thy Folke, while they thy Kingdomes glory eye.
Angels rejoyce because their waiting is
In Saints assembly, where thy name they blist.
19. *Thy workes are not in* Israels *Land confined,*
From East to West thy wondrous works are known:
To Nations all thou hast thy grace assigned,
Thy spirits breathings through the World are blown.
All Languages and tongues do tell thy praise,
Dead hear thy voyce, them thou dost living raise.
20. *Oh blessed dayes of Son of Man now seen,*
You that have long'd so sore them to behold,
March forth in's might, and stoutly stand between
The mighties sword and Christs dear flocke infold.
Undanted close and clash with them; for why?
'Gainst Christ they are, and he with thee stands by.
21. *No Captive thou, nor Death can on thee seize,*
Fight, stand, and live in Christ thou dayly dost:
He long ago did lead as Captives these,
And ever lives to save thee where thou goest.
His Father still, and Spirit shall with thee
Abide, and crowne thy Head with lasting glee.

For thy words sake, and according to thine own heart, hast thou done all these great things, to make thy servant know them, 2 *Sam.* 7. 21.

FINIS.

AMERICA
Painted to the Life.

THE

HISTORY

OF THE

Spaniards Proceedings in AMERICA, their Conquests of the *INDIANS*, and of their Civil Wars among themselves.

FROM

COLUMBUS his first Discovery, to these later Times.

BY

FERDINANDO GORGES, Esq;

Ovid. *Auri sacra fames quid non*—

London, Printed by *T. J.* for *Nath. Brook* at the *Angel* in *Cornhil*. 1659.

THE PREFACE.

HAving already taken a view of the ſeveral Countreys in America, and deſcribed their Situations, the Nature and Conſtitution of their Climates, their degrees of Longitude and Latitude, and what ſorts of Animals, Fruits, and other Commodities are moſt peculiar to each particular Countrey, I have thought it moſt neceſſary, for the better compleating of this Work, to adjoyn a Compendious Hiſtory of the Spaniards proceedings in thoſe parts, from the firſt diſcovery of them by Chriſtophorus Columbus, until they were totally ſubdued by the Spaniſh Armies; as alſo of the Civil Wars among themſelves. A Story it is of ſo much Wonder and variety, as by few beſides, if any at all, can be parallell'd; for if we conſider what vaſt and mighty Kingdoms were conquered, by what ſmall Parties of Spaniards, in how ſhort a time, and with how little ado, it might be counted almoſt a Prodigie; but that in reſpect of Guns and thoſe terrible Arms which the Spaniards uſed againſt them, a ſight unwonted to thoſe ruder Nations, it may be concluded that they were vanquiſhed as much by Amazement as by Force. Had the Commanders that came afterwards, been men of as much prudence and moderation as at firſt the Diſcoverers were, the King of Spain had certainly won him much more Repute in the Conqueſt of thoſe People; and what was got by Arms, might perhaps with more advantage have been gained by Civility; but ſo greedy of Wealth, and addicted to rapine were the Governors of Provinces themſelves, ſo little did they execute thoſe Acts of Grace, which were granted to the Indians by the King, and Councel for the Indian Affairs, ſo far did they indulge to the barbarous licenſe of the Souldiers, that whoſoever ſhall read the hiſtorical, admirable, and true Account of their cruel Maſſacres and Slaughters of above Twenty mil-

tions of innocent people, in a Treatise, Entituled, The Tears of the Indians, *to be sold by him that prints this Volume, I say, whosoever shall read that bloody Treatise, the very name of a* Spaniard *will be hateful to him. In these their tragical Proceedings they were sometimes paid in their own coyn, stragling Parties of them being oft times met by the Indians, and cruelly massacred: and no wonder they behaved themselves in that manner among the Americans, since so much cruelty and perfidiousness was exercised among one another, as will be seen in those Civil Broyls mentioned in this following History, in the Examples of* Pizarrus, Almagrus, *and others, which afford us a seasonable Document, how often those men that give themselves up wholly to Ambition and Avarice, and the amassing together of wealth, though by never so unjust ways or exorbitant courses, run suddenly headlong unto their own destruction. We have here a no less remarkable Instance of the strange period of Families, and the fate of Empires in the subversion of the* Peruvian *and* Mexican *Monarchies, foretold by many dire and wonderful Portents, and by a famous Prophecy of a Bearded Nation that should come among them, then in what of old befell the* Assyrian *and the* Persian; *and questionless had we the ancient Stories of these* American *Kingdoms, with the Series of all their Inca's and Kings, we should meet with Transactions no less rare and observable, then those which other Nations produce. Much of the Nature and Customs of those People is indeed delivered in those Histories we have extant of them, from the choicest of which this ensuing is deduced; nor do I despair, Courteous Reader, of thy favorable reception of it.*

Ferdinando Gorges.

A TRUE

A TRUE RELATION OF

All the *Spaniards* Proceedings in *America*, from *Columbus* his first Discovery, till these Times.

By *Ferdinando Gorges* Esquire.

CHristopher *Columbus* had no sooner made known to *Isabella* Queen of *Castile*, his Design of Discovering those unknown Regions in the Western part of the World, now called *America* (which immediately before had been slighted, both by King *Henry* the Seventh of *England*, and by *Alphonsus* the Fifth, King of *Portugal*; but the Queen fully satisfied of the great probability of so beneficial an Undertaking, immediately imparted the business to King *Ferdinando* her Husband, and so effectually prevailed with him, that *Columbus* and his brother *Bartholomao* set forth with great expedition, with one Liburnick and two Caravels, well furnisht with men, and great store of Provisions. They set sayl in the Year 1492. from the Port of *Cadiz*, steering their course to *Gomera*, one of the *Canary Islands*, where having stayed a few days to supply themselves with water and all other kinde of Necessaries, they went on in their intended Voyage: After they had sayled about thirty days without discovering any Land, the Saylors began openly to exclaim against *Columbus*, calling him *Genoese Impostor*, and saying that he had betrayed them; but he pacifying them with much ado, and still giving them very great hopes, they waited with expectation yet a few days more, but no Land appearing, they renewed their murmures, and peremptorily demanded that they might return; whereupon, perceiving by his observation of the Heavens, the Air, and the Clouds, that they could not now be far

of

off from Land, he promised them that if within three days they did not discover Land, he would not prosecute his Design any farther, but return homeward; but it fell out happily according to his expectation and foresight, that ere the time prefixed was expired, a little Island discovered it self to their view, to the great joy of them all: Here *Columbus* landed with a few of his men, to take possession of the New World in behalf of the Catholick King *Ferdinand* and *Isabel*, and having made but a short stay there, (the place being of no great concernment) he sayled from thence, and discovered divers other Islands, and among the rest *Cuba*, which from King *Ferdinand* he named *Fernandina*; thence he put in at the Island of *Haitys*, now called *Hispaniola*, where he and his Company were kindly received by *Guacanarillus* the Cacique of that place (for so a Prince or Supream Governor is called in that Countrey, *Idiom*) and obtained leave of him to build a fair Brick-House, where *Columbus* left thirty eight of his men, the first Colony of Spaniards that was planted in the *West-Indies*, and with the rest of his Company he returned into *Spain*, bringing with him a great quantity of Gold, several sorts of Fruits peculiar to that Countrey, together with about six of the Native Indians. But before I proceed to the maner of his Reception, I cannot well pretermit the mentioning of that famous Oracle received by tradition among the Indians, which the Caciques and the Bohitii, *i. e.* the Governors and the Priests related to *Columbus* and the Spaniards that were with him, which was to this effect:

Garionexius the father of *Guacanarillus*, and another Cacique with him, having a great desire to know the event of things to come, determined among themselves to enquire of their *Zemes*, *i. e.* their gods, what the Fates had decreed should happen after their deaths, and that they might the more confidently hope for an Answer to this their request, they, according to their usual maner in such like solemn Addresses to their gods, abstained for five days from all kinde of meat and drink, spending all that time in deep mourning and lamentation: After all these Ceremonies were performed, they received this Answer from their *Zemes*, *That although the fate of future things*

things had been always kept most secret among the Arcana of the Gods, who thought fit to lock them up from the knowledge of mortal men, nevertheless being moved by the greatness of their zeal and piety, they consented to satisfie this their humble petition; whereupon they revealed unto them, *That after a few years there should a certain people arrive in that Island out of a strange Nation (clothed all over with garments, having long promiss Beards, and being girt about with bright Swords which were able to cut a man in two by the middle at one blow) who would dash in pieces the ancient images of their gods, abolish all their sacred rites and ceremonies, and either kill their children, or inslaving them, seduce them unto all maner of lewdness.*

They were astonished at the hearing of this so frightful an Oracle, and that they might deliver the sense of it to posterity, they composed a certain mournful kinde of Song or Elegy, (which they call *Arieto*) causing it to be sung in a sad and heavy tone, on all their solemn days of meeting; and all these things came afterwards to pass, according as their *Zemes* had foretold, and their Priests sung, as in the following History will be manifested.

As soon as *Columbus* arrived at the Court of *Spain*, he was honorably received by the King and Queen, and advanced to very great dignities, being created Chief Prafect or Admiral of the Seas, and had the tenth part of all the Kings Revenues out of the *Indies* allowed him, his brother *Bartholmaus* being made Governor of the Island of *Hispaniola*; but having acquainted their Majesties with the whole progress of Affairs, that had been acted in the former Voyage, these Islands he had already been in, being a happy beginning to far larger Discoveries, he promised to open a way to the finding out of other more large and fertile Countreys, the King caused a Navy to be instantly prepared, consisting of three Liburnicks and fourteen Caravels, man'd with above fifteen hundred men, the most part Artificers and Handicrafts men; also there were sent a great number of Sheep, Swine, Goats, and other Cattel of both sexes, for the propagating of their kinde in those Countreys, together with all sorts of Grain, Pulse, and Fruits; there likewise went along with them divers Priests and Monks,

to convert the Indians to the Christian Religion.

Columbus now being made the Kings Admiral, and furnished in great abundance with all things necessary for such a Voyage, set out the second of *September* in the Year 1493. from the Port of *Cadiz*, with much more alacrity then in the former Voyage, and passing by the *Canary Islands*, somewhat more to the left then he did the last time, the same Island offered it self to view where he took first possession of the *Indies*, but *Columbus* would not stay to land there, but made directly towards *Hispaniola*, where he much desired to be; but there, when he arrived, he found things altogether in another kinde of state then what he left them in; the Spaniards whom he left hebinde him in the Island, being every man murthered by the natives: whereupon the Admiral sent forthwith to *Guacanarillus* the Cacique, to know what should be the cause that his men were thus slain? To which the Cacique returned this Answer: That he was no sooner departed out of the Island when he went last for *Spain*, but the Spaniards that remained there after him, began to oppress the Inhabitants, to ravish their Wives, and to act all kinde of enormities among them, and that at the same time another powerful Cacique (as there were many in the Island) finding these bearded men about to build themselves new habitations, and settle themselves so near his Territories, and fearing lest in time they might come to subdue the whole Island, took his advantage, and utterly slew them all; but that for his own part, when he saw the house of the Spaniards on fire, he according to his duty, ran with all speed to their succour, but that his Forces being inferior to those of the other Cacique, did little or nothing avail: In fine, said *Guacanarillus*, so forward I was to rescue your men, that I came not off without being sorely wounded, as you see, and saying so, he shewed his thigh bound about with a silken Scarf: But all things were utterly false and feigned by *Guacanarillus*, on purpose to excuse himself, as *Columbus* afterwards understood; for certain Spaniards being sent a while after to look upon his thigh, there appeared no sign of any Wound or Sore, so that it is conjectured, that those men were slain by the counsel and means of *Guacanarillus*, yet not without provocation, by reason of

of the outrages committed by them upon the Indians : Many there were that perſwaded *Columbus* to revenge this injury, but he fearing leſt by doing ſo, he might incur a greater detriment from the Indians, thought it beſt to diſſemble his reſentment, and reſerve his revenge to a better opportunity.

In the mean time he began that Colony, which to honor the memory of the Queen of *Caſtile*, was called *Iſabella*, next at *Cibavi*, which is that part of the Iſland whence they dig their Gold; he cauſed a ſtrong Fort to be built, fit to repel the greateſt power the Indians ſhould be able to gather into a Body, and leaving his bother *Bartholomeus* Governor of the Iſland, he himſelf went with three Caravels to ſeek out new Lands, and diſcovered the ſouth Coaſt of *Cuba*, the Iſland of *Jamaica*, the *Caribes*, and other Iſlands; after which, returning back to *Hiſpaniola*, he anchored in a commodiovs Port, which he called *The Port of St. Nicholas*, intending an Expedition againſt the *Caribes*, but before he could put his Deſign in execution, he was taken very dangerouſly ſick, inſomuch as he was forced for his health ſake, to cauſe himſelf to be brought back to the Colony at *Iſabella*, where he found ſome of his men dead, others ſick, others breaking out into ſedition and tumult, ſlighting the Commands of his brother *Bartholomæus* : Moreover, divers Caciques of the Countrey, by reaſon of the rapines, murthers, and other horrid outrages committed among them by the Spaciards, began to rebel and take up arms; and to adde unto all theſe troubles and inconveniences, the people left the ground untilled, and whatſoever there was already growing in the fields that might be profitable for mans uſe, they deſtroyed and waſted it, that they might leave nothing but a bare and barren ſoyl to be enjoyed; and ſome weary of their lives, by reaſon of the barbarous uſage of the Spaniards, voluntarily ſtarved themſelves to death.

Columbus ſeeing it abſolutely neceſſary to apply timely remedies to ſuch growing evils, behaved himſelf with great prudence and integrity, puniſhing with death all the chief authors of ſedition and inteſtine Broils, and all thoſe Spaniards that were found guilty of any kinde of outrage or miſdemeanor

nor toward the Natives, and indeavour'd to reconcile the Caciques to him by all means possible: But the odium of the Spaniards grew so great against the Admiral, by reason of severity towards them, and because he would not countenance them in their cruelties and rapines, that they studied his ruin, and many writ unto the King all the hainous things they could devise against him and his brother. As soon as he was recover'd, he thought it convenient to make another voyage back into *Spain*, to certifie their Majesties of the state of affairs.

About this time it hapned that such dreadful tempestuous winds arose in this Island from the East, that never had the like been seen or heard of by the eldest of the Natives, with such a furious violence came this *Huracan* (for so they call it in those parts) that heaven seem'd to meet together, involving the day with an obscurity equal to that of the darkest night, trees were torn up by the root, rocks rent asunder from the hills, would tumble with great force upon the plains, and whole houses shattered to pieces, the fruits of the earth laid waste, and a great number of people destroy'd, and the greatest part of the Cattel; also the Ships of the Spaniards were miserably torn and batter'd, whereof three that lay at Anchor, having their Anchors broke and their tackling torn, were overturn'd and sunk, and all the men in them drown'd. Various were the conjectures of men, what should be the cause of this so general a calamity, & what such strange accidents might portend, the Indians stuck not to impute the cause to the execrable wickedness of the Spaniards committed among them, but what ever the cause were, it may very well be conjectur'd, that they portended these horrid massacres which soon after ensued. About five years after, there hapned two other whirlwinds, the last of which was more terrible and destructive then that above mention'd, insomuch that the Island was depopulated and wasted, that the Spaniards were like to have been famish't, had not Ships come seasonably from *Spain*, with plenty of all provisions for their supply.

The Admiral preparing (as is above mention'd) to return into *Spain*, being astonish't and confounded at these prodigious winds, and the destruction that was caused by them, made the

the more haste to be gone, and commanded that his Ships should be repair'd with speed: As soon as he arrived at Court, he presented the King with a great quantity of Gold and other precious things, and made a narrative to him of all Transactions of the Prodigies that had happened; of the Spaniards behavior towards the Indians, and of his execution of justice upon the most hainous offenders, clearing himself of all those crimes that were maliciously and falsly objected against him.

The King having had sufficient experience of *Columbus* his fidelity, exprest a gracious and favorable resentment of his good services, and sent him forth upon a new Expedition with a Navy of twelve Caravels, well armed and provided of all things necessary, two of these Vessels, *Columbus*, staying himself a while behinde, sent away immediately toward *Hispaniola* to his brother, which sayling with a prosperous Gale, put in at the western part of the Island, where at that time resided one *Roldanus Ximenes*, whom from an obscure person, *Columbus* had raised to be *Juridicial Prator*; this man having drawn to his party a great number of Spaniards, revolted from the Præfect, that he might with more license give himself to exercise all maner of rapine and extortion; and among others, he sollicited those men that arrived in these two Ships, setting as a bait before their eyes, the consideration of such vast riches as were in the Island, telling them how easie it was to overrun all the habitations of the Barbarians, and quickly to become masters of all their wealth; with which hopes the men being absolutely overcome, joyned themselves and their whole fortunes with him, and so taking all the Provisions they brought along with them in their Ships for their own use, they went roving about the Island, with promiscuous license robbing, killing, and committing all maner of spoil and havock.

Upon this *Garionexius*, one of the Caciques, seeing all his Territories harrassed with fire and sword by those that were called *Christians*, he joyned his Forces with another Cacique, called *Marabonesus*, and resolved to defend himself from their cruelty and robberies. The Forces of the Indians being thus, came pouring down from the mountains upon those places where the Spaniards had their stations, and wheresoever they

caught

caught any of them, they cut them into small pieces, glutting their fury and revenge upon them.

While these tumults were in *Hispaniola*, the Admiral set forth with the rest of the Navy from the Port of *St. Lucar* the eighth of *May*, 1498. directing his course to *Madera*, one of the *Azores Islands* belonging to the Portugals, from thence sending six Caravels before him to *Hispaniola*, he with the other three steered his course nearer the Equinoctial line, towards *Cape Veride*, or the *Gorgades Islands*, where he met with many inconveniences by reason of the calms, and the immoderate heat of the season; at length having reached *India*, he lighted upon *Cubagna* in the *Parian Bay*, this Island he called the *Island of Pearls*, upon this occasion, when he came into the Bay with his Ships, seeing some Indians fishing out of a Wherry, he sent some of his men in a little Schiph, to know what they were, and what countreys they inhabited; the Spaniards seeing the Boat full of Oysters, thought to have eaten some of them, but having opened them, they found them full of Pearls, of which having brought back word to the Admiral, he rejoyced that he had discovered so rich an Island, and approaching nearer land, he sayled into the mouth of the River *Camana*, and being earnestly desired by the Indians to come ashore, he was courteously entertained by the Cacique of that place, and in stead of Knives, Looking-glasses, Bells, and such other Toys which he distributed among the Natives, he received an inestimable quantity of Pearls: Having stayed here a while, and wonderfully contented his Spaniards with the riches they gained here, he returned to his ships, and set sayl for *Hispaniola*, where, when he came, he found all things in that combustion as before hath been mentioned: at first he sought to compose things in a fair way, writing to *Ximenes* the Captain of this Rebellion, to exhort him to return to the obedience of the Prefect; but *Ximenes* contemning the perswasions and advice of the Admiral, persisted in his sedition, and withal writ Letters to the King, wherein he impeached the Prefect of tyranny, ambition, and immoderate severity, alledging that that was the cause of his defection from him; moreover, he accused the Admiral of endeavouring to usurp the sole Empire of those Islands.

Co-

Columbus on the other ſide informed the King by Letters of the abominable actions, and riotous carriage of this *Roldanus*, and how that he and his followers lived continually like thieves and robbers, filling the Iſland with rapes, murthers, and all maner of villany; that he had traiterouſly ſeduced unto his party, all thoſe men which were in the two Caravels that he ſent to *Bartholomæus* out of *Spain*, and that notwithſtanding his fair admonitions to the contrary, he perſiſted in his apoſtacy and rebellion.

While theſe Accuſations on both ſides were ſent into *Spain*, the Admiral ſent his brother *Bartholomæus* with 80 Foot, and ſome Horſe againſt thoſe Caciques that were in open hoſtility; they on the contrary had ſix thouſand, but when they joyned battel, they were routed by the Spaniſh Horſe, and betook themſelves by flight to the mountains and thick woods; ſeveral Skirmiſhes there were afterwards, but at length *Garionexius*, and four other Caciques were taken, and ſubmitted themſelves to the Admiral; and being afterwards convinced that he was not Authour or Countenancer of thoſe Injuries which they had lately received from a party of Spaniards, they promiſed friendſhip to the Admiral, and obedience to the King of *Spain*, and thereupon were peaceably diſmiſſed to their own Dominions.

While the Admiral and his brother were thus buſied in reducing the Rebel-Caciques to obedience, the Letters, both of the Admiral and *Roldano*, arrived at the Court of *Spain*, whereby the King and Queen perceiving the diſturbed eſtate of affairs in *Hiſpaniola*, were very much troubled; by this time the fame of theſe rich countreys was ſo univerſally ſpread, that nothing was more talked among the Nobles of *Spain*, then the vaſt riches of the other World, thinking that the very Rivers had run with Gold, which ſo inflamed their hearts with avarice, that every one deſired to have a Government in ſome of theſe places, but none durſt openly pretend to ſuch an advancement, in regard of the great credit and eſteem which the Admiral had with the King and Queen, thinking it more fit to proceed another way; therefore they ſuggeſted all the diſadvantagious things they could deviſe to impair the Repu-

tations of *Columbus* and his brother, giving out that they had not brought in that quantity of Gold, which they might very well have done in all that time, that they sought their own enrichment more then the Kings interest, and that there was shrewd suspicion they intended to usurp the sole Empire of those places themselves: These reports were so frequently banded to and fro, that they soon came to the Kings ears, and there were not wanting those whose office it was to foment the Kings jealousie against the two brothers, insomuch that the King resolved at length to send a new Prefect or Governor, to enquire into the truth of these things, and the true cause of the dissensions between the Admiral and *Roldanus*; and to this end *Franciscus Bombadilla*, being invested with full power and authority by the King, set forth from *Cadiz* in the Year 1499. with a Navy of four Caravels: The Admiral and *Bartholomeus* hearing of the New Prefect, went to meet him, intending to give him such an honorable Reception as befitted a person intrusted with the highest authority from the King, but in stead of the sincere and friendly salutations wherewith they welcom'd him to the shore, they received but a very course return of thanks, being immediately cast into prison, and to aggravate their sorrow the more, immediately sent away apart from one another in two Caravels into *Spain*: As soon as they were brought on shore, word was presently carried to the King of the arrival of these two Illustrious Prisoners, being bound in chains, and in a poor and miserable equipage, whereupon the King moved with compassion at the sadness of their condition, sent forthwith to *Cadiz*, and commanded they should be taken out of prison, and being attended and habited according to their qualities, that they should be brought into his presence; where, as soon as they were admitted, and favourable audience given them, they declared the whole truth of affairs, and accordingly condign punishment was decreed to be inflicted upon those that were guilty.

After that the new Governor *Bombadilla* had sent the two brothers prisoners into *Spain*, *Roldanus* and the other Rebels of his faction, returned to obedience under his command, and then all of them with one consent fell to pillaging and oppressing

ſing of the miſerable Natives, forcing them to work in the Gold Mines, and inflicting unreaſonable tasks upon them, and all to glut their inſatiable avarice with gold: But King *Ferdinando* hearing of theſe violent Proceedings, abrogated *Bombadilla*'s power, and ſent in his room *Nicolaus Olanda*, inveſted with the Title and Authority of Viceroy, who ſetting forth from the Port of *St. Lucar* with a Navy of thirty ſhips, partly Brigantines, and partly Liburnicks, or Gally-foiſts, arrived in the Iſland in forty days ſayl. *Bombadilla* ſeeing that ſo potent a man, and backt with ſo full authority from the King, was come to ſucceed him, reſolves to relinquiſh the Iſland, together with his Government, and to return into *Spain* in thoſe very ſhips which brought over the Viceroy & his Company, carrying along with him an ineſtimable Maſs of Gold; and along with him there went *Roldanus Ximenes*, and divers other Military Officers, with about four hundred Spaniards, all of them enriched with ſtore of Gold, eſpecially the great Ones; but divine Juſtice ſuffered not the cruelty and avarice of theſe men to go long unrewarded, for they had not ſayled very far ere ſuch a mighty tempeſt aroſe, as ſhattered their Navy to pieces, twenty four ſhips being ſunk, and moſt part of the men drowned, among whom were *Bombadilla* and *Roldanus Ximenes*, and here periſhed all thoſe maſsie pieces of Gold, both what was ſet apart for the King and Queen, and what they had ſcraped together for their own uſe. The Indians as ſoon as they were informed of this news, rejoyced exceedingly at the deſtruction of theſe men who had uſed them injuriouſly; and thus ended all the quarrels and heart-burnings between theſe men and the *Columbuſſes*.

By this time the rumor of the great plenty of Pearls diſcovered by the Admiral in the Iſlands of *Cumana* and *Cumagna*, being blazed abroad in many places of *Spain*, ſtirred up the mindes of a great many to go and ſee thoſe places, whereupon the King made an expreſs Edict, wherein he forbade all Mariners or Maſters of Ships, to go within fifty leagues of thoſe places that were found out by *Columbus*, upon very great Penalties, without ſpecial Order or Commiſsion from his Majeſty, in the mean time giving free Licenſe to whoſoever would,

to seek out New Countreys or Islands not yet discovered: To which intent one *Alphonsus Ninnus* went out with one ship and about thirty four Spaniards, divers of whom had been with the Admiral when he discovered *Cubagna*, these men as soon as they had reacht the *Indies*, neglecting the Kings command, resolved out of a covetous desire of riches, to sayl into the *Parian Bay*, and to touch upon the coasts of *Amaracapana*, *Cumana*, and all those places already found out by the Admiral, where *Alphonsus* going on shore, was civilly treated by the People, maintaining commerce with them, he gained a great quantity of Pearls, and returned rich into *Spain*; but in their way homeward their arose a great contention between the Captain and his soldiers about the division of the Pearls: as soon as they came within sight of *Spain*, they avoided the Port of *Sivel*, for fear of that punishment which the King had decreed to inflict upon them, for touching upon those coasts which had been discovered by *Columbus*, and therefore they directed their course toward *Gallicia*: No sooner was *Alphonsus* come on shore, but some of his Sea-men accused him to the Governor of the place, not onely of contempt of the Kings Edict, in sayling about those shores already mentioned, but also defrauding the King of the fifth part of his due, having converted an incredible Mass of Pearls to his own private use; whereupon the Governor caused *Alphonsus* to be apprehended and clapt up into prison, where, after he had consumed the greatest part of his Pearls, he was sent in chains to King *Ferdinando*.

But to return to the Admiral *Columbus*, he having remained three years in the Court, in high favour and esteem with the King, at length at his earnest supplication, the King commanded three Brigantines to be made ready for him, that he might go Inquest of other new Lands, to which end he directing his course toward the West, discovered the Island of *Guanaxia*, near the Continent where that great Province is which the Natives call *Ignera*, the Spaniards, *Caput Fondurense*; in this Island he went on shore, and was presented by the Inhabitants, with the chiefest of the fowl, and choicest fruits of the countrey; here he found no shew or appearance of Gold, either by the Vestments, Ornaments, or any other Utensils of the

the Natives, but very rich Mines were found, of which they took not the leaſt notice, nor made any eſteem: from hence the Admiral ſayling along the Coaſt, reached *Veragua*, and putting in at the Iſlands *Zorobari*, not far from the Continent, he learned from the Inhabitants, that all the Province of *Veragua* abounded with Gold: From thence paſsing along the ſhore, he went as far as the Bay of Uraba, where going on ſhore, he had notice in ſome places of the Southern Ocean.

While he ſayled about theſe new Coaſts, he loſt two Caravels, and thoſe two that remained had taken much water, ſo that he gave command to ſteer back again, firſt recovering the Iſland of *Cuba*, afterwards *Jamaica*; having loſt divers of his men, who were utterly ſpent with exceſsive labor and toyl, and all that were left alive were very weak and ſickly; at the ſame time *Franciſcus Poreſius* the Governor of a Ship, with his brother, and a great part of the ſoldiers, gathered head, and banded together againſt the Admiral, and having gained ſome ſmall veſſels of the Indians, they withdrew themſelves to *Hiſpaniola*. The Iſlanders perceiving the Chriſtians to be at variance among themſelves, and ſeeing that the greateſt part of their ſtrength was drawn away from them by *Poreſius*, they not onely denied to furniſh them with any kinde of proviſion, but took counſel among themſelves to kill them. The Admiral being very much perplexed in minde, to ſee himſelf and his men driven to theſe ſtreights, and the Indians were neither to be moved by intreaties, nor by reaſon of the weakneſs of his men, could be compelled by force to afford them any ſuccour, he bethought himſelf of this artifice; Being near unto a cottage or two of the Barbarians, he inviting them forth one time to confer with him about a buſineſs of concernment to them, admoniſh't them, that if they did not ſpeedily ſupply him and his men with neceſſary proviſions, a grievous Plague would ſuddenly fall upon them from heaven, which would utterly deſtroy them, and for an infallible ſign and token of what he ſaid, within two days they ſhould ſee the Moon look blood red, which happening at the very day and hour that he had foretold (for the Moon was then in the Eclips, as he eaſily foreſaw) they being overcome with fear, plentifully afforded the

beſt

best Provisions they had, as long as they stayed in the Island, intreating pardon for their former incivility.

About this time *Franciscus Poresius* having wrestled a good while with the tempestuous waves, and striven in vain with those little Wherries, to reach his intended Port, was beaten back upon the coast of *Jamaica*; notice being taken of his coming, the Admiral and his brother brought their Forces into the field, and gave him battel, in which both *Poresius* and his brother were taken prisoners. This was the first Fight the Spaniards ever fought among themselves in *India*.

The Admiral was not more encouraged with this Victory, then troubled to see himself destitute of all means to get out of the Island where he was, all his Ships being perished and sunk; but at last he resolved to try some expedient or other to procure a Ship or two out of *Hispaniola*, which was thus effected: He knowing that the Indians knew all the secret passages by rocks and shelves so well, that they could easily pass over with their small fisher-boats, he sends ten of them with *Didacus Menez* his servant that waited on him, promising them great rewards to carry him thither safe, which they dexterously performed, and speedily returning themselves, brought back word, that they had left him on his way to *Dominica*, for which news, he gave them liberal rewards.

Didacus arriving at *Dominica*, he delivered his masters letters to the Governour, who immediately commanded that a Caravel should be made ready for him compleatly furnished; and with the money which he received from the Admirall, he purchased another: in these two Caravels, as soon as they arrived at *Jamaica*, the Admirall and his company, were transported over to *Hispaniola*, where after he had reposed himself a while, he with his brother *Bartholomeus* returned again into *Spain*, and gave the King a true and full account of what other Lands they had discovered, and of all other material passages that had hapned besides.

But the Admiral *Columbus* having had a secret malady growing upon him through the hardship and toyl of his long and laborious Travels, fell dangerously sick soon after his return, and in a short while finished the course of a most honored and renowned

renowned Life; his Death happened about the beginning of *May*, in the year 1506, his body, according to his Will, being conveyed to *Sevil* and layd in the Monastery of the *Certosine Fryers*: he left a son behinde him called *Didacus Columbus*, who was matched unto *Maria* the daughter of *Ferdinando* of *Toledo*, Great Commendatary of *Lyons*. He was born in *Cucureum* a City belonging to the Territory of the *Genoeses*, his Ancestors sprang from *Placentia* a city of *Liguria*, and were of the noble stock of the *Pilistrelli*: he was of a just stature, of an agile body, and well knit limbs, a sound judgement, and a high fancy, his eyes piercing and vivacious, his hair yellowish, and his mouth somewhat wide, he was inclining to passion and choler, when any occasion was given, but an exact observer of justice, and from his childehood very much adicted to the art of Navigation.

About this time the Indians dwelling about the river *Cumana* not able to indure the tyranny and barbarous usage of the Spaniards, who forced them daily with stripes and blows to fish for Pearls for them, took their advantage and set upon the Spaniards one morning, making a great Slaughter of them, sparing neither Fryers, nor any sort of Ecclesiastical person; some notwithstanding by the help of a small Vessell which they found upon the river *Cumana*, escaped to *Dominica*, and brought the news to the Governor, who forthwith sent *Didacus Olampus* against the Indians; he by a stratagem feigning that he came from *Spain*, and putting most of his men under deck, that he might seem to have but a few, enticed a great number of Indians into his ship, and as soon as he had them in his power, gave a sign to those that lay in ambush, to rush out upon them; the greatest part of them they slew, and those whom they took prisoners, he caused to be hanged upon the Saylyard for a terror to others, then landing his men at *Cumana* he assaulted the Natives, proceeding against them with all maner of cruelty, & almost to an utter extirpation; those miserable people that were, being constrained to make humble supplications for Peace, which being granted, the Indians at his command, built four and twenty houses of mats and rushes upon the River bank with their own hands: This Town was called

led *Toletum*, and being much frequented from *Cubagna*, the fishing of Pearls began to be restored there again.

Not long after, certain Dominican Fryers arriving in those parts, built two Monasteries, one in *Cumana*, the other in *Amaracapana*, propagating the Christian Religion among them; and thenceforth the Indians in those parts began to live peaceably and quietly with the Spaniards.

While these vicissitudes were agitated in *Cumana*, *Bartholomeus de las Casas*, a Priest and Doctor of the Law, hearing of the plenty and abundant fertility of *Cubagna*, and the rich fishing for Pearl there, and moved with the fame of the Spaniards cruel demeanor towards those People, repairs to the Court of *Spain* to *Charls*, who, *Ferdinando* his Grand-father being dead, was chosen King, declaring unto him how miserably the Natives were injured, and how cruelly dealt with by the Spaniards, and that thereby they were constrained to rebel, and to destroy what ever of the Spaniards they could met with in those parts, and therefore desired that the Administration of that Province might be assigned to him, promising that in a short time he would compose all those disturbances, and that he would exercise a moderate and just Empire over the Indians, and above all, that he would very much augment the Kings Revenues. Dr. *Ludovicus Zappata*, and others that were of the Councel for the Indian affairs, judging him a vain man, of no fame or authority, unfit for such a Design, and withal unskilful of the affairs of those countreys, and maners of the people, earnestly opposed themselves against his undertaking; but he being countenanced and favoured by divers Dutch Noblemen, and backt with the authority of Count *Nassau*, who was chief of the Emperors Bed-chamber, and having possessed men with a great opinoin of his zeal and sanctity, easily obtained what he desired, choosing 300 countrey men whom he intended to imploy in the fishing for Pearl, that he might not need to put the Indians unto too much toil; and moreover, he besought his Majesty to honour them with some Knightly badge, especially the Red, such as was that of the Knights of *Calatrava*, that they might undertake this Expedition with the more alacrity. *Casar* moved with the zeal and promises of the Do-

the Doctour, granted him whatsoever he desired, and commanded that ships should be made ready, and all necessaries provided.

Setting sayl from *Sevil*, he came in a short while to *Cumana*, where finding *Didacus Ocampus*, he shewed him the Kings patent, which when he saw to be of little availment with *Ocampus*, and that he himselfe was had in scorn and derision by him, he resolved to go to *Dominica* to complain of his contumacy to the Governor, and because he was kept out of *Toletum* by *Ocampus*, he built himself in haste a woodden house, where he intended to leave his new Knights in garison till his return, not long after also *Ocampus* went thence with the greatest part of the souldiers.

The Caciques of *Cumana* perceiving that most of the Spanish souldiers were departed the Island, those whom *Casaus* had left in garrison being but inconsiderable in number, the rest wandring here and there about their own pleasures and inordinate courses, they made a cruel massacre of all that they found in *Amaracapana*, and all the sea coast westward; the Fryers were murthered while they were celebrating Divine Service, the Doctors house was besieged, and almost all his new Knights miserably destroyed with poisoned arrows, they killed the hens and the dogs that belonged to the Spaniards, nor spared they the very Indians that had been in any office among them, and had it not been for want of Vessels to transport themselves over, they had utterly destroyed all that were in *Cubagna*.

The news hereof being immediately carried to *Dominica*, the Governor sent over four hundred soldiers under the command of *Jacobus Castellio*, who quickly reduced them to obedience, and proceeded very severely against those he took: soon after *Toletum* was repaired, and seventy houses of brick built in *Cubagna*.

The trade of Pearl-fishing being renewed, and beginning again to flourish, *Ludovicus Lampugnanus* a kinsman of that *Lampugnanus* that slew *Galeatius Maria Forza* Duke of *Millain*, came into those parts with full authority from *Cæsar* to fish all along the coast of *Cubagna* as far as he pleased, and

 had

had prepared a kinde of Drag-net, which into what part of the sea soever it was cast, would take up all the Shell fish that were in that part, but the Spaniards that had possessed the place, opposed him with might and main : when he saw that his Patent from the Emperor availed him little, and being unwilling to return again into *Spain*, either for shame, or by reason of his Debts, he fell mad for vexation, and pining away, he died within a few years.

About this time great complaints were made by the Spaniards in *America* to the Emperor, who was also King of *Spain*, concerning the contumacy of the Indians, and their aversness unto Christian Religion ; whereupon a Decree came forth unto them from the King and his Councel, That unless they would relinquish their superstitious Errours, and imbrace the Christian Religion, living after the maners and customs of the Spaniards, they should be adjudged to perpetual servitude. This Decree was sent by *Didacus Niquesa* and *Alphonsus Hoieda*, the first being constituted Governor of *Veragua*, the last of *Carthago* ; their Commission being first to admonish the Indians to submit themselves to a quiet compliance with them, but if they refused, then to prosecute them with fire and sword, and all maner of severity. These two Governors setting sayl from *Cadiz*, soon arrived at *Hispaniola*, where *Hoieda* having bought ships, and raised about four hundred men, he hastened with these to *Carthago*, giving order to *Martinus Ancisus* chief Juridicial Prætor of that Province, to follow with the rest of the men and ammunition, as a Reserve. The Kings Proclamation being divulged, they thought that was enough, and not minding the preaching of the Gospel, or any thing of the Indians good, they onely were inrent upon the riffling of them, and making slaves of whomsoever they caught delinquent, although this kinde of usage was intended onely by the Law for the *Caribes*, and those who were eaters of mans flesh, but they promiscuously exercised their tyranny in all parts of *India*, and towards all sorts, insomuch that they had perished, had not certain Dominican Monks moved with charity toward them, procured their liberty ; for they sent *Rodericus Minaia* to *Rome* to make a relation of these abuses to Pope

Pope *Paul* the Third, who having given a full hearing to these complaints, immediately sent his Bull, wherein he commanded, that the Indians should be restored to their liberty; which *Rodericus* carrying into *Spain*, acquainted the King with the whole maner of the proceedings, shewing that these people ought to be brought to the Christian Faith by good example, and not by cruelty and tyranny: *Cæsar* hereupon sent *Figueroa* into *India*, to make a diligent Enquiry into these things, who bringing him a true and faithful account of all matters, *Cæsar* forthwith sent a strict command, that the Indians should be restored to their liberty, laying strict penalties upon those that should thenceforth use them as slaves.

In the year 1544 *Licentiat Ceratus* was sent Governor from the Emperor into *Hispaniola*, bringing along with him this Edict which he published, as much to the joy of the Indians, as to the grief of the Spaniards in *Hispaniola*, *Cuba*, *Jamaica*, *St. Johns Island*, and all over that coast which is vulgarly called *Terra Firma*, from *Nombre de Dios* to the *Parian Bay*; but in *Mexico* there were so many rich men, whose chief fortunes consisted in their slaves, that the Edict was opposed with great obstinacy, insomuch that great combustions had been stirred up there, had it not been for the singular prudence of the Viceroy *Antonius Mendoza*, who forbore to proclaim the Edict, until another Express came from *Cæsar* to confirm it, and peremptorily to command obedience unto it.

While *Hoieda* was making War with the Indians about *New Carthage*, *Niquesa* came thither with a Navy of one Liburnick, seven Caravels, and two Galiots, he came from making War with another Nation of the Indians, about twelve mile from *Carthage*, where he thought to have found a great quantity of gold, but the Cacique being prepared for him, beat him back with a great deal of loss; which to revenge, *Hoieda* and he joyning their Forces together, went back into the countrey, and set upon the Indians in the night time when they were least aware; and having made great havock of them, they returned back to *Carthage* with very small booty, the riches of this place falling extreamly short of their expectation.

Niquesa being returned back to his own Province, *Hoieda*

made an inroad into that part, which lies upon *Urabian Bay*, about two hundred miles from *Carthage*, where his Spaniards, as they were romaging about for gold, were shot by the Indians with poisoned arrows; also, a Cacique whose wife was taken prisoner, went with several of his friends into the presence of the Governour, and feigning to have business with him, went up to him, and stabbed him with a poisoned dart, but was afterwards himself, his wife, and his associates slain by the Souldiers that ran in to the Governours help; not long after the Souldiers beginning to mutiny for want of necessary provisions, the Governour went to *Hispaniola*, promising to return unto them suddenly, with a supply of necessaries, and leaving in his room *Franciscus Pizarrus*, (this is that *Pizarrus*, who afterwards, together with *Didacus Almagrus* subdued the rich kingdom of *Perne Attaliba*, the King being taken and slain;) but *Hoieda* being arrived at *Hispaniola*, what with the pain of his wound, and the failing of those Supplies he expected towards his return, gave over both his Province, and all hopes of life, and entred into the order of *Franciscans*, in which habit he died within a short while.

Hoieda's return being in vain expected for the space of two moneths, and famine beginning to oppress them more and more, *Pizarrus*, with seventy Spaniards, who were all that were left of three hundred, set sail from thence with a purpose to go to *Hispaniola*, but a mighty tempest arising, one of their two Galeots was cast away, with all the men that were in it, which was half their company, the Rudder of the Ship being broken and torn away by a fish of an unwonted bigness.

Pizarrus with the company that was left, was cast upon the Island that was called *Fortis*, where when he thought to have gone a shore, making signs of peace to the Inhabitants, he was prohibited from landing.

While in this calamitous condition they despaired of all relief, seeing nothing round about them but destruction, at last they light upon *Ancisus*, who with one Liburnick, and one Galleot, was bringing Supplies to *Hoieda*, by him they were furnished with provisions, and set on shore at *Comagra*, but *Ancisus*

cisus returning to *Uraba*, was shipwrackt upon a rock, and his men had much ado to save themselves; but the Ship and all the goods being lost, they resolve to go up into the Country and try their fortune, where being set upon by the Indians, they were forced to fly back to the shore, yet having intelligence that on the other side of the *Urabian Bay*, there was great plenty of corn, fruits, and all kinde of sustenance, there went over about a hundred men in two small vessels. The Indians perceiving that they intended to take up their habitation there, made all the opposition they could to drive them out of the country; the battel was sharp on both sides, but in the end *Ancisus* gave them a total defeat, and the Spaniards taking possession of the Indian cottages, sufficiently refresht themselves with the bread, fruits, and roots of the country, they found also two thousand five hundred pound of fine gold, which *Comaccus* the Cacique of that country had hidden, with great store of riches besides; In the dividing of this booty there fell out a great contention between *Ancisus*, and one *Vascus Nunez Valboa*, a violent and seditious man, who alleadged that the Prætour had in this division sought his own interest more then became a just and impartial Judge, during this contest *Rodericus Colmenares*, having been carrying Supplies to those at *Uraba*, and finding but small footsteps of the Colony planted there by *Hoieda*, he lighted by chance upon this place, being welcom'd with great joy, by reason of the provisions he brought with him.

Ancisus having made a vow to consecrate a Temple in this place to the Virgin *Mary*, he to that end, set apart the Caciques house, and planted here a Colony, which was called *Antiqua Darienis*.

In this place, after many various hazards and chances, *Niquesa* also arrived, for as he was sailing from *New-Carthage* towards his own Province, a tempest arose, which so dispersst this little Fleet, that the two Gallies utterly lost sight of the Caravel where the Governour was, so that having sought after him for a long while in vain, they at last constituted *Lupus Olandus* Commander in Chief, till such time as they could meet with *Niquesa*, who going with his men on land, they remained

mained there a while, ransacking the cottages of the Indians, who were fled unto the mountains, but they had not been long here, ere a little Schiph arrived with three Sea-men, who brought news that *Niquesa* was cast upon an Island called *Zorobara*, where he had been above two moneths destitute of all company, wandring through the solitary woods, and feeding on nothing but wilde apples and roots; *Olandus* immediately sent a Gally for him, wherein he returned back again to his Army, and took upon him his command again, accusing *Olandus* of treachery, for that he had neglected so long to seek after him, and resolving suddenly to be gone from thence, notwithstanding the intreaties of his Souldiers, who expected to reap the harvest of Maize which they sowed, he caused a new Caravel to be built, with which, and his two Gallies, he set sail, and came to a place which *Columbus* had called *Porto Bello*, from thence being driven back to his Ships by the natives, with the loss of many of his men, he came next to a place called *Promontorium Marmoris*, where, promising to himself a more happy course of affairs, *In the Name of God* (saith he to his men) *let us go on land*, and from thenceforth that place took the name of *Nombre de Dios*: here he remained a while in great want and misery, and much infested by the Indians, at length the dissentions growing higher and higher daily between *Ancisus* and *Valboa*, some siding with one party, some with the other, the Souldiers that had served under *Alphonsus Hoieda*, sent *Colmenares* to *Veragua*, to intreat *Niquesa* to come to *Antiqua*, and take the government upon him, and to decide those differences until some one should come by special order from the King. *Colmenares* missing him at *Veragua*, found him out at last at *Nombre de Dios*, weak, sickly, half pined, and almost naked; and having acquainted him with the causes for which the Antiquensians had sent for him, *Niquesa*, with seventy five Spaniards, which were all that were left of all his army, set sail with *Colmenares* for *Antiqua*, but by the way casting forth many threatning speeches against both *Ancisus* and *Valboa*, he no sooner came on shore, but his words were brought in question, by those that overheard them, before the Councel of *Antiqua*, whereupon a general

neral indignation being conceived against him, he was immediately expelled from the Colony with his seventy five men. *Niquesa* departing with much shame and sorrow, thought to have gone directly to *Dominica*, and there to have impeached *Ancisus* and *Valboa* before the Councel of that place, but by the way putting in for fresh water not far from the *Zorobarensian* Islands, he was set upon by the *Barbarians*, and slain, together with his whole Company, and, as some say, devoured; the River near unto which this destruction happened, was from thence named *Rio de los Perdidos.*

After *Niquesa*'s departure, the old contention burst forth again more violent then ever: *Valboa* perceiving himself Superiour in power to *Ancisus*, clapt him up in prison, but after a while set him free again, and seeing him make preparations to be gone, he endeavoured to detain him, by offering to continue unto him the dignity of chief Juridicial Prætour, but he disdainfully refused it, and hastned away into *Spain*, carrying a Libel with him, full of complaints against *Valboa*, which he exhibited at the Councel for the *Indian* affairs; whereupon a sharp sentence was given against him, but *Valboa* contracting an intimate friendship with *Panchiacus* one of the powerfullest Caciques of the Country, whom he had caused to be Baptized, and named *Charles*, obtained of him a discovery of the South-Sea; for *Panchiacus* had before presented *Valboa* with a mighty mass of gold, and seeing a great contention among the Spaniards about it, I will bring ye, said he, O Christians, where ye shall have your fill of this base Mettal, after which ye have such an insatiable thirst, and having so said, he brought them to those Provinces that lie upon the South-Sea: there *Valboa* having gained infinite riches, called the Country *Castella Aurea*, or *Golden Castile*, in which is scituate the famous City *Panama.* Returning back to *Antiqua Darienis* he was magnificently received by those of the Colony, who came out to meet him with great Pomp and Solemnity, in regard of this rich discovery he had made. Letters were immediately dispatcht to the King, wherein *Valboa* acquainted his Majesty with the manner of his discovery of the South-Sea, sending him withal, as an assurance of these things, twenty

five

five Pearls of a vast bigness, and three thousand Ducates of Gold, desiring also for himself the Government of this new Province, and that one thousand men might be sent him, for the subduing of the people, and obtaining the intire possession of the place.

The King received these Letters and the present, with much satisfaction, caused forthwith the sentence that was against *Valboa* to be abbrogated, grants his request of being chief Governour of the place, and sends him a Supply of one thousand men, and assigns the Goverment of *Antiqua Dariensis* to *Petrus Aria*, giving him in charge to deal mildly with the Indians, and to offer them peace, before he assaulted them with arms.

Petrus Arias coming to *Antiqua* with fifteen hundred men, was received by *Valboa* with great expressions of joy and friendship, and having begun to plant a Colony, and to build houses in *Tumanama*, he sent *Joannes Costa* with two Caravels, and four hundred men to *Comagra*, to seek for Gold, this man used all manner of cruelty toward the Indians, to make them confess where their Gold was, not sparing the subjects of *Panchiacus* who had been so great a friend to the Spaniards, which so incenst him against them, that raising all the power he could, he set upon them with great violence, and slew a great number of them, the Indians often crying out, Impious and perfidious Christians, unworthy to live upon the earth. The Captain was forced to make haste away with those men that were left, and brought what booty he could save to *Antiqua*; Afterwards *Bartholomaus Urtadus* was sent to *Achle Fernandus Valesius*, to *Caribana*, the last of whom was put to flight by the Indians, who so hated the Spaniards, that those of them who were eaters of mans flesh, notwithstanding loathed to touch the carcases of those Spaniards that were slain, those whom they took alive, they would binde them hand and foot, and thrusting Gold into their mouths, would cry, *Eat, Christians, eat.*

Petrus Arias, his designs meeting so often with improsperous ends, were openly derided and scofft at by *Valboa*, which was the occasion of a very great enmity between them, to reconcile

concile these differences, *Gobatus* the Governors brother, who was Bishop of the place, procured a Marriage between *Valboa* and the Daughter of his brother *Arias*; which Match every one thought would have established a firm Friendship between them.

As soon as the Nuptial Ceremonies were ended, *Valboa*, with the consent of *Arias* his father in Law, departed from *Antiqua* to his own Province upon the south Sea, whereof he was made Governor by the Kings special appointment, taking along with him half the men whom *Arias* brought out of *Spain*, but certain malicious persons who envied his Advancement and good Success, possessed the Governor of *Antiqua* with a great deal of prejudice and ill will towards him, by their scandalous and forged Reports, alledging, that he had his friends and agents among the soldiery to feel their tempers, and to endeavor to bring them to his devotion; hereupon *Arias* dispatched Letters to *Valboa*, willing him to come away unto him with all speed, to consult with him about businesses of importance.

Valboa, who was intent upon building of Ships for the Discovery of new Coasts, no sooner received these Letters, but away he hastened to *Antiqua* with fifty men; as soon as he arrived, little dreaming of any thing designed against him, he is cast into prison, and soon after being brought to his Tryal, divers hainous accusations were brought in against him, as his unjust proceedings towards *Ancisus*, his cruelty to the Indians, and divers other particulars. In reference to all which, although he stiffly stood upon his Justification, alledging many powerful Arguments for the clearing of himself, but in the end the Governor denied to give him any further Hearing, and passing the Sentence of Death upon him, caused him to be beheaded, with five other Spaniards besides.

The news of *Valboa*'s Death being carried into *Spain*, the Councel for the Indian Affairs was much offended at it, because of the many good services he had done for the State, in the discovery of the south sea. This consideration aggravated in those things which the Antiquensians writ to the King against

Arias, moved the Councel to casheer him from his Government. And these were the most remarkable Passages that happened in the first Discovery of these parts, in which there are some other considerable places besides those above-mentioned, as *St. Martha*, *Caput Veli*, *Valentiola*, which in the year 1528. was pawned to the Velzares German Merchants, who sent thither as Governor, *Ambrosius Alfingerus*, he having out of avarice exercised many examples of cruelty and tyranny, was at length slain by the Indians, and in his room *Georgius Alfingerus* was sent, who being one night surprized unawares by the Spaniards, was barbarously murthered by them, and his body thrown into a Wood: but the perpetratours of this horrid murther were afterwards by *Cæsars* command, put to death in a most severe and exquisite maner.

Notwithstanding that by this time the Spaniards had had for a long time the possession of the American Islands yet they still met with some notable disturbances both from the French Pyrates, who not onely set upon their ships as they returned from the *Indies*, (*Petrus Anzulles* being one time among the rest, slain by them in a great Sea-fight as he was coming from *Nombre de Dios* with three ships richly loaden) but also overrun the *Canary Islands*, and pillaged *Havana* a Colony of the Island of *Cuba*, and from their own slaves in *Hispaniola*; for most of the Indians of that Island being destroyed and consumed with hard labour and ill usage, they were forced to purchase Negros out of *Guinny*, a Province conquered by the King of *Portugal*, these also being used with all kinde of severity and harshness by the Spaniards, as the Indians formerly were, sought by all means possible to shake off that intolerable yoke of servitude in which they lived; and to this end certain of them watching their opportunity, slipt out of their Masters power, and began to wander up and down the Island in a desperate maner, divers others also by degrees flocking unto them from all parts of the Island, they at length grew to such a head, that they became a terrour to the Spanish Colonies, executing their rage and vengeance upon all that came into their power, insomuch as the place was for a time almost de-

deserted by the Spaniards, by reason of the great number of people that fled out of it: the number of these slaves was reported to be about eight thousand; but after a long time of disorder and confusion, they were brought within bounds by the prudence and care of *Ceratus*, who was then Governor, not without a vast deal of trouble and expence.

After the Discovery and Conquest of the American Islands, a gap was immediately opened, as hath been before mentioned, to the finding out of the Continent, by *Niquesa*, *Valboa*, *Arias* and others; but in a short while after other vast Provinces of the Continent came to be discovered and subdued by others, as shall be hereafter shewed.

In the Year of our Lord 1540. *Didacus Gottierez*, a Citizen of *Mantua Carpetanorum*, vulgarly called *Madrid*, was by *Cæsars* special Authority sent Governour of the Province of *New Carthage*, and putting in at *Nombre de Dios*, he went thence to *Nicaragua*, where one *Rodericus Conteras* commanded, desiring a supply of men to guard him to his own Province; but there arising some differences and jars between *Conteras* and *Gottierez*, he was forced to linger thereabout for the space of two years without effecting any thing, at length they being reconciled by the mediation of the Bishop, *Gottierez* obtained his desire, and went on in his intended journey: having been a while in his Province, and failing of those provisions which he daily expected from *Nicaragua*, he desired the Caciques of that Countrey to furnish him with Maize for a few days, until he heard from *Nicaragua*, but the Caciques though they seemed outwardly ready to assist him, yet they sent in their Maize but very sparingly; whereupon all his soldiers being streightned for want of Victuals, agreed together with one consent to leave him, and lighting upon certain Vessels that came from *Nombre de Dios*, they went aboard them, and returned back to *Nicaragua*.

The Governor being thus deserted of his soldiers, and having no company left him but one kinsman, four servants, and a Waterman, was also going back himself with his small retinue, in a little Galliot that was left him, but just as he was

about putting off from shore, one *Barientus* arrived with men and provision from *Nicaragua*, this put a stop to his Voyage: moreover, having received a quantity of Gold from some of the Caciques, he sent *Alphonsus Pisanus* his Nephew, with a great part of it to *Nombre de Dios*, giving him in charge to raise a certain number of men with it, and to bring them over to him. *Alphonsus* with this mony raised about thirty men, and brought them, but these being not enough, he sent the vessel back again for more: with these the Governour went about thirty miles up the river, as far as the confines of the river *Sueris*, here he was met by the Caciques of *Suera* and *Chiuppa*, who presented him with gold, and divers sorts of fruits, but his greedy expectation of gold not being fully satisfied, he cast them into chains, and used them very rigorously, making them lie upon the ground at his beds feet; likewise he caused a great fire to be made in the sight of one of them, named *Camachires*, threatning him, that unless within four days space he filled a great Chest which he had there by him, six times over with gold, he would burn him alive; the Cacique thus terrified, promised he would, and remaining himself in durance, sent his servants for it: in the mean time it chanced through the carelesness of his keeper, that he made an escape, at which the Governour was mightily inraged, insomuch that that his continual vexation brought a desperate fit of sickness upon him: the other Cacique that remained in custody bore his afflictions, and the Menaces he often received, with so much fortitude and constancy of minde, that the Governour was confounded at it. Amidst these various vicissitudes of fortune, *Gottierez* frustrate of his expectations, and urged with the want of necessaries, his Souldiers being ready to run from him, and impatient of his Nephews long absence, whom he sent with the Gallyfoist to *Nombre de Dios*, in a desperate and destracted humour, designed to go up farther into the Country, distributing the little Corn he had left among his Souldiers, and sending away his sick and infirm to the Sea, and one of his servants with them, who was to wait the coming of *Alphonsus*, and to send him after, directing his journey by certain marks that were to be set up.

After

After a few days journy coming into a wood, the Spaniards were set upon by a gross Body of the Indians, in which fight the Governour *Gotierez* himself was the first that was slain, and almost all the rest killed, or put to flight: Not long after this fight, *Alphonsus Pisanus* being returned, overtook those few that were escaped, who joyning with him, weak and sickly as they were, made a shift to crawl to the Sea side.

In this battel were about four thousand Indians, and forty Spaniards, whereof thirty four were slain, but many more of the enemies, and it is thought that if there had been but three or four horsemen, they would not have dared to have set upon them, so afraid were the Indians of this fierce beast.

About this time, *Ferdinandus Sottus* was sent Governour into *Florida*, which was first discovered by *Joannes Pontius* of *Lions*, as soon as he came to his Province, he went roving up and down in quest of gold, but not finding any, he took fifteen Caciques, threatning them that if they did not within eight days bring him to the place where the gold was, he would cause them to be burnt alive; they out of fear promised him, that they would within that time bring him where he should have great plenty of gold; but twelve days being expired, and no footsteps of gold appearing, the Governour in a great rage, caused their hands to be cut off, and sent them away.

Not long after being very intent upon the finding out of a rich Mine which he had heard of, and neglecting the care of his Colony, he fell sick of a bloody-flux, and the fifth day after he began to be sick, died.

Now as to the affairs of *New Spain*: *Didacus Velasquez* the Governour of *Cuba*, had sent *Ferdinandus Cortesius* to take possession of that Province, having been lately discovered by *Grisalva* his Nephew. *Cortesius* having subdued a great part of this continent, refused at length to give an account to *Velasquez* of the progress of his affairs, but sent a relation immediately to the Emperor with divers rich presents. *Velasquez* hearing of his refractorinesse toward him, passeth sentence of Treason against him, abbrogates his Authority, and sends *Pamphilus Nervaez* against him, giving him in charge to bring him either

either alive or dead, but *Pamphilus* being circumvented by *Cortesius* his fair words, was at length brought to those streights that he lost his whole army, and was taken himself in the City *Cempoala*, where making strong resistance, he lost one of his eyes; after a long and tedious restraint, having with much ado obtained his liberty, he made an expedition into the Province that lies upon the river of *Palms*, in which most unfortunate Voyage, all his Ships were by a strong tempest that arose, shattered to pieces against the rocks, and of six hundred men whom he carried along with him, scarcely ten escaped.

Cortesius, while he went himself against *Pamphilus Nervaez*, left *Petrus Alvaradus* with fifteen hundred men, to keep the City of *Mexico*, into which he had been admitted, with the consent and invitation of King *Montezuma*; there happening about this time a Solemn Festival among the Indians, which was performed with great Pomp and Solemnity: *Alvaradus* and his Souldiers seeing the Citizens attired in very rich habiliments, and shining with Gold and Jewels, they rusht upon them in the midst of their Solemnity, promiscuously wounded and killed them being unarmed, and rifled them of all their rich ornaments; whereat the Indians greatly inraged, combining together, and unanimously rising up against them, made a great slaughter among them, and drove them out of the City. The news hereof coming to *Cortesius* as he returned from the Conquest of *Nervaez*, caused him to make the greater haste toward the City, where the Inhabitants having slain *Montezuma*, because he was inclined to the Spanish party, had set up another King named *Qualtimoc*. *Cortesius* being strengthned with a new supply of Spaniards, besides a great number of Indians that sided with him, besiged *Mexico*, and within three moneths took the City, but the Natives threw all the gold and silver, both that which was in the Publick Treasury of *Montezuma*, and what they had of their own into the lake, upon which the City stood; the Spaniards frustrate of their expectation, grew mad with anger, and put them to all the miseries they could devise, to extort from them where they had hid their gold; but notwith-

withſtanding all their fury, the Indians choſe rather to die, and to ſuffer the greateſt pains they could inflict, then to confeſs; *Corteſius* alſo cauſed the King and his chief Secretary to be apprehended and put to the torture, but they conſtantly endured them without confeſſing; the Secretary lamentably ſcreeking in the midſt of his extream ſufferings, gave up the Ghoſt, and *Corteſius* ſeeing the King with invincible conſtancy reſolved rather to hold out even till death, then to diſcloſe any thing, cauſed the torments to be removed, but within a ſhort while, after that he had carried him about with him in chains through divers Provinces, as a ſpectacle of deriſion, he cauſed him to be ſtrangled. Thus all *Nova Hiſpania* was ſubdued by *Corteſius*.

The Province of *Jucatana*, which lieth about thirteen hundred miles Weſtward of *Nombre de Dios*, and three hundred miles beyond the Province of *Fondura*, was firſt diſcovered by *Franciſcus Fernandes* of *Corduba*, who came off with very ill ſucceſs, loſing moſt of his men, and being himſelf wounded in two and twenty places, ſo that he was forced to return back to *Cuba*, without effecting any thing.

Not long after *Franciſcus Montegius*, hearing that *Jucatana* was a rich and gainful Province, went Governour thither out of *Nova Hiſpania*, and as ſoon as he was come thither with about five hundred men, divers of the Caciques of the Country met together to viſit him, and feigning very great friendſhip, ſtaid with him for ſome time, till one of them watching his opportunity, ſnatch't a ſword from an *Æthiopian*'s ſide, who was his Squire, with which he ran with full aim at the Governour, and had run him through, had not he put by the point with great dexterity, whereupon they were all forced to make a ſudden eſcape away: The Governour dividing his army into ſeveral Companies, ſent them to invade each of the Territories with fire and ſword, and after nine years war totally ſubdued them, aſſigning to each of his Captains that had Command in this war, his portion of Land.

A certain Cacique of this Country, by name *Alquinotep*, who had been moſt intimate with *Montegius*, and had been

been Baptized, being one time very sad, and being demanded by the Governour, the reason of his sadness, answered, that about fourty years ago there had been so great a mortality among them, that it was feared the raging pestilence would have swept away all the people of the Country, and that a little while before their coming among them, they had lost above one hundred and fifty thousand men, in two great battels with the *Mexicans*, but that both these calamities were nothing to the miseries they suffered, through the cruelty and avarice of him and his men.

Petrus Alvaradus, of whom mention hath already been made in the affairs of *Mexico*, went afterwards and conquered the Province of *Guatimala*, in which he built a City of the same name, where for a while he injoyed with great tranquility the riches he had acquired; but hearing that *Franciscus Pizarrus* and *Didacus Almagrus*, were gone into the kingdom of *Peru*, and had there found incredible wealth, he made suit to the King by friends, that he might have power granted him of reducing to obedience, and planting Colonies in those parts which were not already possest, which having obtained, he made his way far into the Country, over steep and craggy mountains, unto the Province of *Quiton*.

The news hereof being brought to *Franciscus Pizarrus*, he sent *Didacus Almagrus* with one hundred and fifty men against him, who fac't him about the river *Liribamba*, but *Almagrus* durst not venture to engage, seeing himself much inferiour in number, nor was it long ere *Licentiat Caldera* mediated a peace between them upon this condition, that *Alvaradus* should receive one hundred thousand Ducats in gold to deliver up his forces to *Pizarrus* and *Almagrus*, and depart out of the Kingdom of *Peru*; which he did accordingly, and returned to *Guatimala*, much satisfied with this success.

About this time *Fr. Marcus de Mizza*, a Dominican Fryar, and certain others of that order, having travelled through divers Countreys above a thousand miles Westward, brought word of a very rich Province, called *Sibolla*, abounding with gold and divers of precious stones. This news came in the first place

place to *Antonius Mendoza*, Viceroy of *Nova Hispania*, and *Ferdinandus Cortesius* Chief General of the Army: the Viceroy presently sends for *Petrus Alvaradus*, and commands him forth upon this Expedition.

Alvaradus readily obeys, but as he was taking his journey, he heard by the way that the Indians of the Province of *Xaliscus* were up in rebellion, whereupon he hastned with all his Forces to the aid of *Lopez de Zunica*, who had commanded in that Province, so they went both to besiege a great hill, which the enemy had posseſt and fortified; from which they threw down trees and stones of a vast magnitude, wherewith a great number of Spaniards that were at the foot of the hill, were crushed to death, among whom was *Alvaradus* himself.

The wife of *Alvaradus* took his death with vehement impatience, and imporence, breaking out into blasphemous speeches and murmuring against Heaven, for taking her husband so soon out of this life, tearing her hair, and groveling upon the ground; yet notwithstanding her excessive mourning, she omitted not to assemble the Chief Magistrates of the City to procure her self to be made Governess in her husbands stead: she had not been long advanced to this new dignity, ere her house, among infinite others, was utterly overturned by a most violent tempest, and impetuous Inundation of waters, which brought a mighty desolation upon the Country, in which she her self also perished. In the morning after this whirlwind was allayed, many were found in the fields, very much hurt, some bruised, some having their arms, others their thighs broken, onely a little Girl was taken up unhurt, which *Alvaradus* had begotten of an Indian woman.

The Viceroy hearing of *Alvaradus* death, sent *Franciscus Velasquez*, upon the forenamed Expedition, but instead of the vast riches he promised to himself, he found nothing but heaps of snow, a barren soil, and sharp hunger, wherefore marching up fifteen hundred miles farther into the Country, he had many Skirmishes with the people, little or nothing to his advantage; at last seeing no profit to be reaped in those parts, he returned back to *Mexico*, poor and indigent, cursing those

Fryars, whose empty brags had made him undertake so vast and toilsom a Journey to no effect.

Franciscus Pizarrus and *Didacus Almagrus*, having, as hath been already related, planted a Colony in the kingdom of *Peru*, had their habitation at *Panama*, but hearing of a Province toward the South, more abundantly wealthy then any of those they had yet been in, they left *Fernandus Luquez* a Priest, to order their affairs at *Panama*, and setting forth from thence themselves with a good considerable Fleet, they sailed about the space of three hundred miles Southward. *Pizarrus* went first a shore with his men, and was received by the Indians with a sharp incounter, wherein he lost many men, and was himself carried wounded out of the battel, and so being discouraged at his ill beginning, returned back to *Panama*. *Almagrus* going a great way farther up the river of Saint *John*, was kindly treated by the Natives of those parts, and presented with three thousand Ducats in gold, but in his way back, he lighted upon the same place where his companion received the overthrow, and he himself also met with the like entertainment, so that after a great slaughter of his men, and the loss of one of his eyes, he also was forced to return to *Panama*. As soon as he was come back, he acquainted *Pizarrus* with the new discovery he had made, they agreed together to prepare a new Fleet, and to attempt the subduing of it, but being beaten back to their Ships with great loss, they retired to a certain Island called *Insula Galli*, from whence *Almagrus* is sent back for a fresh supply of men and Provision to *Panama*; at which time *Petrus Flumineus* (vulgarly *De los Rios*) was made Governour of the Province. In the mean while *Pizarrus* with those few that were left, (for a great many urged by their hunger and ill success, had deserted him) after they had remained in this Island a good while in expectation of *Almagrus* his return, in lamentable want and distress, they consulted among themselves what was the best course to take, and at last they resolv'd to sail along the coast, to see if they could meet with any happier region, then they had yet met with: By this time *Almagrus* comes back, bringing along with him provisions,

visions, but men he could none, because of the general fame of their improsperous voyage; having about the space of five hundred miles, they went a shore at *Chira* a Province of *Peru*, whence having taken some store of cattel, and certain Indian Boys, who were to be taught the Spanish tongue, they sailed back to *Tumbesia*, being informed of the vast riches of that place, but because of the multitude of Indians that were upon the shore, no body durst venture to land, till one *Petrus* a Native of the Island of *Creet*, offered of his own accord to run the hazard, and with a two-handed sword which he commonly used, he went a shore, and was honourably received by the Chief Ruler of the place, who brought him to a Castle, in which there was a Temple consecrated to the Sun, wherein he beheld such incredible riches, that he was infinitely surprized, and astonished thereat, and being dismist, with the offer of several rich presents, he went and related to his companions what he had seen.

The news of the vast wealth of *Chira* and *Tumbesia* filling them with abundance of joy, *Almagrus* and *Fernandus Luquez* agreed to send over *Pizarrus* into *Spain*, to procure authority from *Cæsar*, for the subduing of *Tumbesia*; he makes his address to the Councel for the Indian affairs, where he gives a full relation of all things, and defrauding his companions, demands the Government of *Tumbesia* for himself onely, without making mention of either of them, which was presently granted, whereupon he takes shipping at Saint *Lucar de Barrameda*, accompanied with *Martino de Alcautara*, and his three Brothers *Ferdinandus*, *Gonzallus*, and *Joannes Pizarrus*.

His associates perceiving that he had negotiated for himself onely, and had excluded them out of the Society, were much incensed against him, so that high discontents arose among them, but *Pizarrus* being sensible that *Almagrus* was much more wealthy then himself, and that he should stand in need of his money to help him on in his designs, made means to be reconciled unto him, by the mediation of Doctor *Gama*; the conditions being agreed upon, these two entred into a streight

League of amity among themselves, excluding their third companion *Fernandus Luquez*, out of their society.

These affairs being thus setled, *Pizarrus* proceeds upon his design, ordering *Almagrus* to follow him very speedily with a considerable supply: the first place he arrived at was *Colonchia*, a Port of the Province of *Guancavilichia*, thence he passed over into the Island of *Cuna*, where at first he was civilly treated by the Chief Ruler of the place, but when he heard of the Robberies, Rapes, and Insolencies of the Christians, he came against them to expel them out of the Island; but being put to the worst, and losing many of his men, he fled into the woods. *Pizarrus* having obtained this victory, he returned back to the Continent, where having overcome the King of that Country, he sackt the City of *Tumbesia*, and spoiled the Temple of the Sun of all its rich Ornaments.

Cassiamalca, one of the Provinces of the Kingdom of *Peru*, was governed by a very Potent King named *Attaliba*, who hearing that this Bearded Nation, (for so the Spaniards were called by the Indians) was approaching near his Territories, sent to them to depart out of the Kingdom, because the evil fame of their horrible miscarriages and cruelties, had long since come to his knowledge, but *Pizarrus* sent Ambassadours to him, his brother *Ferdinandus*, and *Vincentius de valle Viridi*, a Fryar of the Dominican Order, to offer him Friendship and Alliance in the name of the Emperor and the Pope, and to desire a special day of Audience from him, to declare unto him, what they had in Command from their Master the Emperor. A day being appointed, the King in great state and magnificence, was carried upon mens shoulders to his Royal Throne, where being placed, *Vincentius* with a Cross in one hand, and a Breviary in the other, addrest his speech to the King, telling him, That he came thither at the Emperors Command, and by the Authority of the Pope, who being Christs Vicar upon earth, had assigned all those new discovered lands to the Emperor, to the end that he might send pious and learned men among them, to preach the Gospel, and thereupon he produced a Bible, and out of it made a large discourse, declaring

ring to him all the chief heads of Christian Religion, and exhorting him to renounce his false gods, and embrace that truth which he preached to him.

The King replied, That for the friendship of the Emperor he willingly accepted it, but his Religion he would not renounce, let them that would believe in Christ that died; for his part, he would believe in the Sun that never died; In fine, he asked the Fryar how he came to know these Mysteries, which he spake of? *Vincentius* answered, that the Book he offered him (reaching him the Bible) taught him these things; this Book, said *Attaliba*, looking earnestly upon it, utters nothing at all to me; and in saying so, he threw it violently to the ground with disdain; whereupon the Fryar with a loud voice, began to stir up the Spaniards to the slaughter of the Indians, crying out, Slay these dogs, that so contumaciously despise the Law of God.

Pizarrus having all things in a readiness, gave signal of battel, and what with the great Guns which he caused to be discharged, what with the trampling of horses, and other unusual noises, he struck such a terrour into the Indians, that he routed them with ease, and made a miserable havock of them, *Attaliba* himself being taken prisoner; and all this without any other harm on the Spaniards side, except a wound which *Pizarrus* received on the hand from one of his own men, striking at an Indian. In all the time of the fight *Vincentius*, the Fryar, never ceased stirring up the Souldiers.

Attaliba impatient of his Imprisonment, promised *Pizarrus* if he would set him free, to fill the Hall where they were, with Gold and Silver vessels, as high as he could reach with his hand, and to that end dispatched his Officers to *Cuscon*, and all other parts of his Kingdom, to procure the said sum, which (though not within the time limited) was at length brought, & accordingly, exceeded two millions: a fifth part was designed for the Kings Exchequer, which was sent into *Spain*, by *Ferdinandus Pizarrus* the Brother of *Franciscus*, with a Narration of all their proceedings, the rest was divided among the Souldiery; at the same time also *Didacus Almagrus* arrived,

rived, and had his share among the rest.

These things being thus ordered, *Pizarrus*, *Almagrus*, and the rest of the Chief Commanders, held a consultation among themselves, how they should dispose of *Attabaliba*, some (who were the most honest) gave their suffrage, that he ought to be set free; others, that it was best to send him into *Spain* to *Casar*, but the greater part of votes carried it, that he should be put to death. Some say that *Philippillus*, one of those youths, whom they had taken a little before upon the coast of *Tumbesia*, to teach them the Spanish tongue, falling in love with one of *Attaliba*'s Concubines, and having promised her Marriage after the death of *Attaliba*, to fulfil his desires the sooner, plotted against his life, accusing him of holding secret correspondence with the Natives, to stir them up to rebellion against the Spaniards; but this is thought to have been onely a feigned pretence to put the better colour upon their perfidiousness in putting him to death contrary to conditions: the truth of the business is, that *Pizarrus* from the time he first took him, had designed to remove him out of the way, which he performed, telling *Attaliba*, after he had made a pithy Oration, to expostulate the case with him, with tears in his eyes, that now the sentence could not be revoked, and in saying so, he delivered him to certain *Numidians*, whom he kept for those purposes, to be strangled. The father of *Attabaliba* was called *Guaivacava*, his elder brother *Guascares*, whom *Attabaliba* a little before the arrival of the Spaniards, had overcome in war, taken him prisoner, and caused him to be put to death, he had many wives, whereof the chiefest was his sister named *Pagha*, by whom he had divers children.

After King *Attabaliba* was strangled, *Pizarrus* marching from *Cassiamalca* to *Cuscon*, the chief City of *Peru*, was encountred with an Army, by *Quisquiz Attabaliba*'s Chief General, who came to revenge the Kings death; but *Almagrus* coming up timely to *Pizarrus* his succour, *Quisquiz* was utterly overthrown, *Cuscon* sacked, and the Temple of the Sun pillaged; *Almagrus* being left Governor of this new subdued

dued Province, *Pizarrus* went and planted a new Colony upon the bank of the river *Lima*, and called it *Civita de Reges*, *i. e.* the City of Kings, and from thence he went to *Trigillium*, about which time *Ferdinandus Pizarrus*, who had been sent into *Spain*, came back with divers Letters Patents from *Cæsar*, in one of which his brother *Franciscus* was honoured with the title of Marquess.

About the same time also *Almagrus* received letters out of *Spain*, by which he received intelligence that he was designed Marshal of the Kingdom of *Peru*, and his Empire was inlarged three hundred miles beyond the bounds of that Province which was subdued by *Pizarrus*; whereupon he considered *Cuscon*, as under his jurisdiction, and without the bounds of *Pizarrus* his Province, and therefore he carried all things there according to his own will and pleasure, of which *Pizarrus* having notice, set himself with the utmost of his power to oppose his proceedings, but because he could do nothing by open might, he outwardly carried himself fair toward, but secretly contrived his ruine, which by degrees he brought to pass; the Indians giving out, that *Chile* which was indeed a barren and desart Province, was the most rich and fruitful place that had been yet discovered by the Spaniards; he never left urging *Almagrus*, to take upon him that expedition, (pretending the honorableness and advantagiousness of it,) till with much ado he overcame him with his perswasions.

In the mean while *Mangus* the brother of *Attabaliba*, and who after *Attabaliba*'s death had been crowned by *Franciscus Pizarrus*, in his brothers stead, secretly meditating a rebellion, was taken prisoner by *Ferdinandus*, and put in chains, but afterwards upon a great sum of Gold given, and his serious promise, to be ever after true and faithful, he was released by *Joannes Pizarrus*, but as soon as ever he was at liberty, he immediately with a great Army sets upon *Cuscon*, which being surprized unawares, was presently taken, together with the Castle, in which *Joannes Pizarrus* with a great number of Spaniards, was slain; after which it being recovered by

by the Spaniards, he, with above a hundred thousand men, besieged it again, took it with a great slaughter of the Spaniards, and burnt it to the ground,

Franciscus Pizarrus now Marquess, hearing of *Mangus* his rebellion sent *Didacus Pizarrus*, against him with a small power of men, who being so infinitely over numbred, were every one slain: the like success had also *Morgorius*, and after him *Gonzallus Tapia*, and likewise after him *Gaeta*, there escaping not so much as one man to bring tidings of the rest.

The Marquess being troubled that he heard no news of any of his Troops, sent *Franciscus Godoius* with fourty horse, with express order to see what was become of them, and to bring him word, who being set upon in a narrow passage, lost all his men, and onely himself escaping with much ado, he brought word to *Lima* of all the former ill successes.

The Marquess forthwith sending *Petrus Lerma*, before with fifty horse, and a company of Indians, his allies, followed after himself; after a sharp ingagement he put them to flight with the loss of few men, onely *Petrus Lerma* had his teeth beaten out, but the enemy recovering a strong fortified hill, the Marquess not able by reason of his former losses to prosecute them, sent into *Trugillium*, *Panama*, *Nacaragua*, and into *Nova Hispania* to *Cortesius*, for fresh supplies of men; he also called away *Alphonsus Alvaradus* out of the Province of *Chiachiapoios*, which he was subduing, whom he made *Generalissimo* of all the Forces.

Alvaradus, together with *Gomezius Tordia*, who was sent a Reserve, dispossessed the Indians of their Mountain, and incountring *Tizoia*, the General of *Mangus Inga*, who came with fifty thousand men against them, they utterly routed his Army, and put them to flight.

By this time *Almagrus* being returned from his *Chilensian* Expedition, *Mangus Inga* fearing he could not be able to withstand the joynt Forces of two such potent enemies, betook himself to the woods, and inaccessible places, where he remained with four thousand men, secure from the pursuit of the Spaniards. *Almagrus* seeing it in vain to follow him, advanced

vanced up to the City *Cuſcon*, and demanded poſſeſſion of it, as being Governor of that Province, but was kept out for a good while by *Ferdinandus Pizarrus* in behalf of his brother, till at laſt by the help of ſome friends of his, he was ſecretly admitted into the City by night, which he was no ſooner poſſeſt of, but he ſeized upon *Ferdinandus Pizarrus*, and his brother *Gonzallus*, and clapt them up in priſon ſeverally; whereupon *Franciſcus Pizarrus* ſent *Alvaradus* againſt him, but *Almagrus* ſurprizing him unawares at *Abancaia*, took him priſoner with a great many of his men; he and *Gonzallus* were put together in the ſame place, who corrupting their guards with mony, made both of them an eſcape, and came to *Cividad de los Reyes*, to *Franciſcus Pizarrus*, who with a body of five hundred men, prepared to go againſt *Almagrus*. When *Joannes Guzmannus*, *Didacus Mercatus* his Procuratour, and divers Monks of the Order of *S. Maria di Mercè*, preſaging the evils that would enſue through this diviſion, between *Pizarrus* and *Almagrus*, mediated a peace between them, and appointed *Mala* the place of meeting, where conditions were to be ſigned; the Marqueſs haſtens to *Mala*, ordering his brother *Gonzallus* to follow preſently after, with the whole Army, and by the way as *Almagrus* was to have come, he placed an ambuſh of Muſquetteers to have ſurprized him unawares, but that not taking effect. *Almagrus* by the admoniſhment of ſome friends, went back inraged in all haſt to *Cuſcon*, whereupon the Marqueſs for fear of ſome evil conſequence that might happen to his brother *Ferdinandus Pizarrus*, whom *Almagrus* had yet in his power, ſent *Didacus Alvaradus* after him, to pacifie him, to urge that the ambuſh laid againſt him, was utterly without the Marqueſs's conſent or knowledge, and to make firm proteſtations of peace and amity. *Almagrus* though warned by his friends not to give any credit to the fair promiſes and oathes of *Pizarrus*, yet overcome at laſt by the earneſt perſwaſions and importunity of *Alvaradus*, he yeilds to a new reconciliation, and ſets free *Ferdinandus Pizarrus*, the Marqueſs's brother. The Marqueſs no ſooner had his ends, but he ſends to *Almagrus* to depart from *Cuſcon*, pre-

tending new authority from *Cæsar*, and *Almagrus* standing upon his tearms, and refusing to obey, unless he saw his Commission, he sent his two brothers, *Ferdinandus* whom he made Juridicial Prætor, and *Gonzallus*, whom he constituted General of his Army, together with *Joannes Tellus*, *Fr. Chlavensis*, *Mercadillius*, and *Alphonsus Peresius*, and others of his chief Commanders against him, who after divers skirmishes and battels, with various success on both sides, at last utterly routed his party, and *Almagrus* himself being taken prisoner, *Ferdinandus* after several things laid to his charge, passed sentence of death upon him, and notwithstanding his own earnest supplication for his life, and the intercession of most of the principal men, caused him to be hanged in prison, and his quarters to be cut asunder, in the open Market-place of the City. This was the unfortunate end of *Didacus Almagrus*, who left a Son behinde him of the same name, whom he begot of an Indian Concubine at *Panama*.

This severity of *Ferdinandus* toward *Almagrus*, who had in times past so highly merited of his brother the Marquess, by whose appointment it was more then suspected to have been done, displeased a great many, especially *Didacus Alvaradus* who went into *Spain* on purpose to impeach *Franciscus*, and his two brothers, unto the King and Councel, but while he was hot in the prosecution of the business, he fell sick at *Vallodolid* and died, as it was thought, by poison.

Ferdinandus Pizarrus having setled at *Cuscon*, and returning to his brother, they both consulted about the making of new discoveries, and to that end they sent *Petrus Valdivia* to the *Province* of *Chile*, *Gonzallus Pizarrus* to *Colians*, and afterwards to the coast of *Cassia*, otherwise called *Canella*, from whence he returned in a broken condition. *Petrus Vergara* was sent to the *Bracamorians* where he did little good, the people remaining unconquered to this day, besides other Expeditions to *Trugillium*, *Chaichiapoza* & other places, in all which were innumerable examples of cruelty and tyranny committed, almost to the utter devastation of the whole kingdom of *Peru*.

These

These things being thus transacted, the Marquess thought fit to send his brother *Ferdinandus* into *Spain* with the usual tribute of the fifth part to the King, and a declaration of the manner of Process against *Almagrus*. *Ferdinandus* though dissuaded by several friends, who rightly foresaw how ill the business of *Almagrus* would be resented, yet confident of his own merits and good services, he persisted in his resolution; but as he arrived in *Spain*, protected, as he vainly imagined, by the vast quantity of Gold he brought along with him, he was immediately by the Kings command committed prisoner to the Tower of *Medina Campi*, vulgarly called *Motta*, nor was it heard what became of him afterwards.

Soon after the death of *Almagrus*, his friends and followers, whereof there were a great many in all parts of the province, began to have secret consultations with young *Didacus Almagrus*, how to revenge his Fathers death: the Marquess being warned of this conspiracy, but making slight of it, and thinking it would come to nothing, eleven of the conspirators, whereof *Joannes Rada* was the chief, came armed into the Market-place, crying, Long live the King, and may all Tyrants die, and in saying so, they rushed into his house, where meeting first with *Franciscus Chlavensis* the Captain of his guard, they cut a deep gash into his head, of which he presently died, and after some opposition, both the Marquess himself, and his eldest brother *Martinus de Alcantara* were slain, valiantly defending themselves; this gave an alarm to all their followers and friends, but the conspirators being by this time increased in number, and grown to a great head, easily overcame them. Young *Didacus* assumes the Government to himself, advances those of his own party, and casts out of office all of the contrary faction, and makes *Rada* General of his Forces, after this he hasteneth to *Cuscon*, and takes possession of it: here *Garcias Alvaradus* plots against his life, having a little before slain *Christophorus Sorellus* in a contention between them, but the ambush which he laid for *Didacus* as he was to have come to the feast, to which he invited him, being countermined by another ambush, which *Didacus*

 caused

caused to be laid for him, he was surprized and slain.

The news of these disorders and civil broils, the death of *Almagrus*, and the slaughter of *Pizarrus*, coming to the ears of *Cæsar*, he dispatched away *Licentiate Vacca de Castro* into *Peru*, to make a strict Inquisition into these matters, with authority to punish severely those that should be found to be the Authors of them: He came first through the great Province of *Venalcazar* to the City of *Quiton*, thence to *Trugillium*, which he committed to the custody of *Mora* his Legat, from thence he came to *Lima*, where the Kings Letters Patents being produced, he was with general acclamation saluted Governor; here he levied Forces, both Horse and Foot, to go against *Didacus Almagrus*, who had slighted the authority of *Gomezius Tordoia*, appointed Governor of *Cuscon*: Having in vain sollicited him by letters to submit, he resolved by force to bring him to obedience, the battel being doubtful for a long time on both sides, at length the victory fell to *Vacca*, the *Pizarrists* being driven so swift for their lives, some flying to *Guamangua*, some to other places: of those that were taken Prisoners, *Vacca* caused a great many, especially the Captains and chief ringleaders, to be hung up for an example, and terror to others, *Didacus* himself with four others, shifted away secretly out of the battel, he got into *Cuscon*, where for a while he lived private and obscure, till being discovered by *Rodericus Salazar*, Prætor of the City, (one whom he had greatly advanced, and heaped many favors on) he was delivered up to *Vacca*, who caused him to be beheaded, by whose death all stirs and commotions were allayed, and the Province restored to peace. During these transactions at *Peru*, the Councel for the Indian affairs, ratified and confirmed by *Cæsars* authority, the former Edict for the restoring of the Indians to their liberty, which was to be put in execution by *Blascus Nunez*, who was sent over with the Title of Viceroy of *Peru*, with four assistants, *Didacus Cepeda*, *Petrus Ortizius*, *Jo. Alvarez* and Doctor *Liso*; he put this Edict in execution with great severity, calling to account those whom he thought ready to sail into *Spain*, with vast sums of Gold and Silver, and would

would know by what Arts they had so excessively inriched themselves; this he did the rather as suspecting that they had sold those Indian slaves that fell to their share, contrary to the foresaid Edict, which he caused to be proclaimed, with great ceremony in all places where he came, depriving them of their slaves, because they used them with too much cruelty, condemning others to the Gallows for standing out contumaciously against the Edict, especially one *Petrus* a Monk of *S. Mary's* Order, he caused to be strangled, for enveighing bitterly against it.

These severe proceedings stirred up a general hatred of the people toward him, which was augmented by his casting of *Vacca de Castro* into prison, and after that his stabbing of *Gulielmus Suarez* the Kings Procurator at *Lima*, which was occasioned from some high words that passed between them; which fact, *Licentiate Carvaial* the Procurators brother, swore he would never rest, till he had revenged; and from that time all the discontented party, which till then had but muttered, meditated on open rebellion, which immediately after broke violently out. *Gonzallus Pizarrus* brother to the late Marquess being pitched upon, as supream head of the faction, divers also of the Viceroys own commanders, as *Petrus de Puellis*, and *Gonzallus Diaz*, who were sent for from the *Guanucus* and *Piura* to aide him, within a while deserted him, and fled to the enemy with all their men, after whom *Alphonsus de Monte Majore*, being sent with fifty horse to fetch them back, was betrayed by his own company, and delivered to the fugitives, who instead of being fetched back by him, forced him to go along with them.

By these accidents the Viceroy seeing himself reduced to very great streights, determined to sail to *Trugillium* with the assistants, *Alphonsus Richelmus* the Kings Treasurer, and *Alphonsus Rationarius* the Quæstor, and to send his brother *Vela Nunez* thither with most of the Forces by Land, the assistants stiffly withstood this design, alledging, that that was the place of residence assigned him, and that his departure thence would adde courage to the enemy, withal they strictly charged the

the Townsmen, that nothing should be removed to the Ships, but the Viceroy obstinately persisting in his resolution, there streight arose a tumult upon it, which in an hours space grew to that height, that the Viceroy was besieged in his own house, and at length the walls being scaled by *Antonius Roblez*, he is taken and committed to *Laurentius Aldena* a Trubune, and the tumults still increasing, a great consultation is held among the Assistants and others, what should be done with him; some voted that he should be put to death, others that he should be expelled out of the city; but in fine it was resolved on, by meanes of the Assistants who were most favourable to him, that he should be sent back into *Spain* to the Emperour, to determine of him as he thought fit, and that that would be the likeliest means to quiet *Pizarrus* and his party: whereupon he and his brother are committed to *Licentiate Alvarez*, and shipped for *Spain*, with their treasure, which was one hundred thousand Duckats; but *Alvarez* putting in at *Tumbesia*, there set the Viceroy at liberty, who streight began to levie new Forces, which *Pizarrus* hearing of, advanced within two miles of *Lima*, and demanded possession of the city. The Senate was divided, some contending for his reception; others, whereof *Capeda* was the chief, stiffly opposing it, but at last it was clearly carried on his side, and he was admitted in with general consent as Governour, soon after which he dissolved the Senate, borrowed forty thousand Duckats out of the Royal Exchequer to pay his souldiers with, sent *Ferdinandus Machicaus* to *Panama*, who was difficultly admitted by *Joannes Guzmannus* agent there for the Viceroy, and Doctor *Tœiada* into *Spain*, to certifie the Emperour of the state of things.

Pizarrus receiving several complaints of *Machicaus*, from the Citizens of *Panama*, he abrogated his authority, and sent *Petrus Inoiosa* in his room, who putting in at the Port of *Bonaventure*, seized upon *Vela Nunez* with twenty thousand Duckats who was raising Forces for his brother the Viceroy, and sent him to *Lima* to *Pizarrus* the Governour, who laying several crimes to his charge, caused him to be beheaded. By the ta-

taking of *Nunez*, the Governors son was also set free, who had been for a good while in possession. From *Bonaventure Inoiosa* sets sayl for *Panama* where he was kept out for a good while by *Joannes Lanesius*, who was raising soldiers for the Viceroy, but afterwards by a stratagem he possessed himself of the City, where as soon as he was setled, he sent *Petrus Gabrera* to take possession of *Nombre de Dios*, from whence he was suddenly beaten out by *Michael Verdugus*, and forced with all his men to fly back to *Panama*, nor did *Verdugus* injoy his Conquest long, for the townsmen complaining of the rudeness and insolence of his souldiers to Doctor *Rivera* then Governour of the Province, who being assisted by *Inoiosa* in person, soon drove him out of the City.

In the mean while, *Pizarrus* hearing that *Didacus Contenus* was in arms for the Viceroy, sent his Camp-master General *Franciscus Carvaialis* against him, who ingaging with him at *Potosita*, utterly routed his Forces, and put *Contenus* to flight.

About this time the Viceroy resolved to put it to the utmost tryal, with the help of *Sebastian Venalcazar* makes up four hundred men, and with a hasty march comes to *Quiton*, pitching his camp about three miles from the City, where the enemy also lay ready to receive him: the Viceroy inferiour in number, is routed in the first onset, and he himself thrown off his horse, not being able to recover himself by reason of the cumbersomness of his armour, lying groveling upon the ground in this posture, he came by some accident or other to be discovered to *Licentiate Carvaialis* who overjoyed at this opportunity to revenge the death of his brother the *Procurator*, sent a servant of his to cut off his head, which he caused to be brought to *Quiton*, and shewed about in great derision; but *Pizarrus* using his Viceroy with much moderation, commanded that the Viceroys body should be honourably buried, dismissed *Venalcazar* with civility to his own province, and having staid a while at *Quiton* to order affaires, sendeth *Manuel Statius* to the province of *Guaiaquil*, *Lupus Asan* to *Porto Vetere*, *Alphonsus Mercadillium* to *Sansa*, *Didacus Mora* to *Trugillium*, and constituting *Petrus de Pu*[illegible] Governour

of

of *Quiton*; he went thence to *Cividad de los Reyes*, where he was received in triumph.

The King and Councel taking into consideration the frequent commotions and civil dissentions in the *Indies*, thought fit to send over *Petrus Gasca* a crafty and politick man, to compose and settle affairs in those parts; he arriving at *Panama*, treats with *Inoiosa*, perswading him to deliver up the Navy, and at the same time dispatcheth away Letters to *Pizarrus*, exhorting him to lay down arms, and promising in *Cæsars* name, pardon for all things past.

Pizarrus assembling in Councel all the principal men about him, desired their advice what were best to do. The result of their debate was to send *Hieronymus Loaisa* into *Spain*, to acquaint his Imperial Majestie with the present state of things, and to frame a Letter to *Gasca*, to excuse themselves that they could not admit him into the Province of *Peru*, nor obey the message they had lately received from him; this Letter they sent by special Embassadours, signed and subscribed with the hands of sixty four Provincials: at the same time they gave secretly in charge to *Inoiosas* and *Laurentius Aldana*, to send back *Gasca* with ten thousand Duckats into *Spain*, or if they thought it more convenient to kill him; this *Aldana* being one of those that came with the Letters, discovered to the President *Gasca*, warning him to take heed of the ambush that was laid for him.

It was long before *Inoiosa* could be induced to deliver up the Navy to *Gasca*, but at last by many strong arguments he was perswaded to resign it, whereupon he was himself made Admiral for *Gasca*, as he had been before for *Pizarrus*.

The President causing the Emperours Orders to be published at *Trugillium*, *Arequipa* and divers other places with the news of the defection of the Navy, many considerable persons fell off from *Pizarrus* to his party, among which were *Didacus Mora* Governour of *Trugillium*, *Rodericus Lalazer*, who had slain *Petrus de Puellis* in his bed, succeeded Governour in *Quiton*, *Franciscus Ulmeus* of *Guaiaquil* having in like manner slain *Emanuel Statius*, *Centenus* also who had been all

all this while lurking in the mountaines hearing of *Gasca's* success, came forth and joyned himself with *Didacus Alvarez*, thus with joynt forces having also supply from elswhere, they set upon the City of *Cuscon* and took it by assault, they took *Antonius Robles* who had commanded and caused them to be beheaded: from thence *Centenus* marched to *Potosia* against *Alphonsus Mendoza*, and *Joannes Silveira*, who having intelligence of the approach of *Centenus*, and thinking themselves too weak to cope with him, went and met him of their own accord, and joyned their Forces with his: at the same time also *Joannes Roias* and *Alphonsus Maldonatus* deserted *Pizarrus* his party, and shortly after *Sottus* his Camp-master General, and *Martinus Ulmeus*, and (which perplexed him most of all) *Licentiate Carvaialis*.

The Governour *Pizarrus* seeing himself thus reduced into miserable extremities, and deserted almost by all his freinds, went from *Lima* to *Arequipa*, where sending for *Joannes Casta*, he called a Councel to advise what course was best to take; some thought it was best, to abandon that Province, since his affairs there were so desperate, and to seek a new one, and to that end they pitched upon the Province of *Chele*, but *Pizarrus* thought best to march against *Centenus* who was intercepting the narrow passage to the *Tiguacencian-lake*; battel being joyned *Centenus* his army is totally routed, and he himself forced to flie.

In the mean time President *Gasca* set sayl from *Panama*, and comming to *Tumbesia*, he sends for *Mercadillius Salazar*, *Sebastian Venalcazar*, *Didacus Mopa*, and others out of their several Provinces, to come to his assistance, making up in all an Army of about fifteen hundred men, whereof *Inoiosa* was made General: no sooner was the signal of battel given, but *Cepeda* also revolted to *Gasca*, which so disheartned *Pizarrus* his men, that with small adoe they were utterly vanquished, and *Pizarrus* himself seeing no remedie yeilded himself up to *Villa Vicentius* a Sergeant Major of the other party, by whom he was delivered into the power of the President, who judging him guilty of high Treason, caused him to be put to death

the next day, his body being conveyed to *Lima* and there buried, a little after Campmaster General *Carvajalis* was hanged, drawn, and quartered. *Joannes Costa* also, *Joannes de Torre*, and eleven other Collonells were hanged, divers common souldiers condemned to the Gallys, others banished into the Province of *Chila*. President *Gasca* having removed by death *Pizarrus*, and all the chief heads of this Rebellion, took possession of *Cuscon*, consulted with *Hieronymus Loaisa*, Archbishop of *Lima*, and *Petrus Lopez* his Secretary, about the division of Lands, setled upon *Inoiosa* one hundred thousand Duckars yearly, upon *Valdivia* little less, who died shortly after, as it is thought by poison, but the common souldiers who were high with hopes, by reason of the great paines and hardship they had undergone, seeing themselves neglected and unrewarded, began amain to grumble and repine, and did not stick to cast forth oftimes seditious and scoffing expressions to his face, so that making several new orders and Edicts tending to the setlement and composing of affairs in that place, he committed the chief care and execution of them to the Archbishop of *Lima*, he collects together the greatest mass of treasure he was able, and leaving *Peru* he takes shipping for *Panama*; he had not been there above two days, but *Rodericus Conteras* and his brother (the sons of that *Rodericus* before mentioned, Governour of *Nicaragua*) broke into *Panama* on a sudden with about eighty souldiers, flew to the Presidents Treasure, and seized upon forty thousand Duckats in Gold, and presently dividing their Company, *Roderick* took his course toward *Nombre de Dios*, his brother toward the river *Chiagro*, but they were not farr out of the town, ere the Townsmen followed amain after them, and having with ease discomfited that Company that was going toward *Chiagro*, they presently after overtook *Rodericus*, who being also vanquished, fled with some few others into the neighboring woods and was never heard on afterwards, his brother, some say, was found dead among the heaps of slaughtered carcases.

Not long after, President *Gasca* setting sayl for *Spain*, he arrived at *Valladolid*, where hearing that the Emperour was

in *Germany* making war against the Protestants, he went thither after him, and made an ample narration of all transactions that had happened since his first going over into *Peru*, whereupon he was advanced to the dignitie of Bishop of *Palentia*.

Of all the Provinces and Kingdomes of *America* subdued by the *Spaniards*, none was won with greater difficulty, or more effusion of blood. The first that atempted it with ill success, was *Joannes Pontius* of *Lyons*, after him *Ferdinandus Sottus* with infinite cruelty, and little better issue then the former, yet others after them were not deterred from venturing, among whom were *Julianus Samanus* and *Petrus Ahumada*, at lengh with very much adoe it was reduced into the power of the *Spaniards*, but neither *Charls* the fifth nor his son *Philip*, were pleased to send a Governour into that *Island*, which perhaps gave occasion to *Charls* the ninth of *France* to set out a great Fleet thither, of which *Joannes Ribaldus* was made Admiral, who landing there about the year one thousand five hundred forty and five, took possession of the Castle of *Carlina*; but a fleet of the *Spaniards* arriving there, not long after, surprized the Castle on a sudden, and put all the French that were in the Castle, both men and women, to the sword, and after that several sharp skirmishes were between them, with various success on both sides, till at length by the treacherie and perfidiousnes of *Vallemandus* a Spanish Commander, the French were utterly vanquished and miserably massacred.

Thus you have a brief History of all the most remarkeable actions of the Spaniards in *America*, both as touching their conquests of the Natives and their civil wars among themselves, from the first arrival of *Columbus* in those parts, till about the year one thousand five hundred and fifty, since which those parts of the world have afforded no considerable matter to be taken notice of, but have remained in the quiet possession of the Spaniards, saving that within these few

years in the beginning of the wars between the late Lord Protector of *England*, and the King of *Spain*, *St. Domingo* was attempted by the English, but their success hath been more happy against them since that time in other parts.

FINIS.

The Post-script.

THe Reader is desired to take further notice, for his greater light of this History, that there is already Printed a Treatise, Entituled, *The Tears of the Indians*, being an Historical and true Relation of the cruel Slaughters and Massacres of above Twenty millions of poor innocent Heathens, who having onely the light of Nature, not knowing their Saviour Jesus Christ, were sacrificed to the political interest and avarice of the Spaniards: Written in Spanish by *Casaus*, an Eyewriter of those Designs, Englished by *J. Phillips*, to be sold by *Nath. Brook* at the *Angel* in *Cornhil*. 1656? v Biblio. p477.

THE

THE GENERAL TABLE.

A

Attabaliba

B

Ca-

C

la,

D

Tho.

G

Gon-

H

 Herrera,

I

King-

K

L

Macanillo,

M

Mulli

Ovei-

Piscanus

S

Ships

T

V

W

Wan

X

Y

Z

Mr Wally

Books lately printed, and in the Press now printing.

THe Scales of Commerce and Trade : by *T. Wilsford.*

2. Gometry demonstrated by Lines and Numbers; from thence, Astronomy, Cosmography, and Navigation proved and delineated by the Doctrine of Plain and Spherical Triangles; by *T. Wilsford.*

3. The English Annals, from the Invasion made by *Julius Cæsar*, to these times: by *T. Wilsford.*

4. The Fool transformed : A Comedy.

5. The History of *Lewis* the eleventh King of *France* : A Trage-Comedy.

6. The Chaste Woman against her will; A Comedy.

7. The Tooth drawer : A Comedy.

8. Honour in the end : A Comedy.

9. Tell-Tale : A Comedy.

10. The History of *Donquixiot*, or the Knight of the ill-favoured face : A Comedy.

11. The fair Spanish Captive : A Trage-Comedy.

12. Sir *Kenelm Digby*, and other persons of Honour, their rare and incomparable secrets of Physick, Chyrurgery, Cookery, Preserving, Conserving, Candying, distilling of Waters, extraction of Oils, compounding of the costliest Perfumes, with other admirable Inventions, and select Experiments, as they offered themselves to their Observations; whether here, or in forregin Countries.

13. The Accomplisht Cook, the Mystery of the whole Art of Cookery revealed in a more easie and perfect Method, than hath been publisht in any Language : expert and ready wayes for the dressing of flesh, fowl, and fish, the raising of Pastes, the best directions for all manner of Kick-shaws, and the most poinant Sauces, with the termes of Carving and Sewing : the Bills of fare, an exact account of all dishes for the season, with other *A la mode* curiosities, together with the lively illustrations of such necessary figures, as are referred to practice : approved by the many years experience, and careful industry of *Robert May*,

May, in the time of his attendance on several persons of Honor.

14. The exquisite Letters of Mr. *Robert Roveday*, the late admired Translater of the Volumes of the famed Romance *Cleopatra*, for the prepetuating his Memory, Published by his dear Brother Mr. *A. L.*

15. The so long expected Work, the *New World of England Words*, or a General *Dictionary*, containing the Terms, Etymologies, Definitions, and perfect Interpretations of the proper significations of hard *English* words, throughout the Arts and Sciences, Liberal, or Mechanick; as also other subjects that are useful, or appertain to the Language of our Nation; to which is added the signification of proper Names, Mythology, and Poetical Fictions, Historical Relations, Georgraphical Descriptions of the Countries and Cities of the World; especially of these three Nations, wherein their chiefest Antiquities, Battels, & other most memorable Passages are mentioned: A Work very necessary for Strangers, as well as our own Country-men, for all persons that would rightly understand what they discourse write, or read. Collected and published by *E.P.* for the greater honour of those learned Gentleman and Artists that have been assistant in the most Practical Sciences, their Names are prefixed before the Book

16. The way to blisse, in three Books, being a learned Treatise of the Philosophers Stone, made publick by *Elias Ashmole* Esq;

17. Wit restored in several Select Poems, not formerly publisht, By Sir *John Mennis*, Mr. *Smith*, and others.

18. The Modern Assurancer, the Clerks Directory, containing the practick part of the Law, in the exact Forms and Draughts of all manner of Presidents for Bargains and Sales, Grants, Feoffements, Bonds, Bills, Conditions, Covenants, Jointures, Indentures; to lead the use of Fines and Recoveries, with good Proviso's, and Covenants to stand seized, Charter parties for Ships, Leases, Releases, Surrenders, *&c.* And all other Instruments and Assurances now in use, intended for all young Students and Practicers of the Law, by *John Hern.*

19. *Moor's* Arithmatick, the second Edition much refined, and diligently cleared from the former mistakes of the Press. A Work containing the whole Art of Arithmatick, as well in

Num-

Numbers, as Species. Together with many Additions by the Author, to come forth at *Michaelmas* Term.

Likewise,

20. *Exercitatio Elleiptica Nova*, or a New Mathematical Contemplation on the Oval Figure, called an Elleipsis; together with the two first Books of *Mydorgius* his Conicks Analiz'd & made so plain, that the Doctrine of the Conical Section may be easily understood: a Work much desired, and never before publisht in the English Tongue; by *Jonas Moor*, Surveyor General of the great Level of the *Fennes*.

21. Naps upon Parnassus. A sleepy Muse nipt and pincht, though not awakened. Such voluntary and Jovial Copies of Verses as were lately received form some of the WITS of the Universities, in a Frolick; dedicated to *Gondibert's* Mistress, by Captain *Jones* and others. Whereunto is added for Demonstration of the Authors prosaick Excellencies, his Epistle to one of the Universities, with the Answer; together with two Satyrical Characters of his own, of a Temporizer, and an Antiquary; with marginal Notes by a friend to the Reader.

22. The Compleat Midwife's Practice, in the high and weighty Concernments of Mankind: the second Edition corrected, with a Full Supply of such most useful and admirable Secrets which Mr. *Nicholas Culpeper* in his brief Treatise, and other English writers in the Art of Midwifry, have hitherto wilfully passed by, kept close to themselves, or wholly omitted: By *T. Chamberlaine*. M. P.

24. The School of Physick, or the General Experimental Practice of the whole Art, so reduced, either into Aphorismes, or choice end tried Receipts, *&c.* By *Nich. Culpeper*, Publisht with the acknowledgement and approbation of his late Wife, Mistresse *Alice Culpeper*.

25. History and Policie Re-viewed, in the Heroick Transactions of his most Serene Highness, *Oliver*, late Lord Protector; from his Cradle, to his Tomb: declaring his steps to Princely Perfection, drawn in Lively Parallels to his Ascents of the Great Patriarch *Moses*, in thirty Degrees to the height of Honour.

26. *J. Cleveland* Rievived: Poems, Orations, Epistles, and other of his Genuine incomparable Pieces, never before Publisht.

F I N I S.